

# Rexroth IndraDrive Cs Drive Systems with HCS01

**Project Planning Manual**  
**R911322210**

Edition 05



|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>Title</b>                    | Rexroth IndraDrive Cs<br>Drive Systems with HCS01  |
| <b>Type of Documentation</b>    | Project Planning Manual  |
| <b>Document Typecode</b>        | DOK-INDRV*-HCS01*****-PR05-EN-P  |
| <b>Internal File Reference</b>  | RS-898e3e765ff4d61d0a6846a000329fdd-6-en-US-4  |
| <b>Purpose of Documentation</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overview of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system</li> <li>• Description of the allowed combinations of Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system components</li> <li>• Selection of the system components of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system</li> <li>• Specification applying to all components (ambient and operating conditions)</li> <li>• Application description of system characteristics</li> </ul> |

**Record of Revision**

| <b>Edition</b> | <b>Release Date</b> | <b>Notes</b>               |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 05             | 2016-03             | See index entry "Editions" |
| 04             | 2015-12             | Not published in English   |
| 03             | 2013-12             | -                          |
| 02             | 2012-07             | -                          |
| 01             | 2009-08             | -                          |

**Copyright** © Bosch Rexroth AG 2016

This document, as well as the data, specifications and other information set forth in it, are the exclusive property of Bosch Rexroth AG. It may not be reproduced or given to third parties without its consent.

**Liability** The specified data is intended for product description purposes only and shall not be deemed to be a guaranteed characteristic unless expressly stipulated in the contract. All rights are reserved with respect to the content of this documentation and the availability of the product.

**Published by** Bosch Rexroth AG  
Bgm.-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2 ■ 97816 Lohr a. Main, Germany  
Phone +49 9352 18 0 ■ Fax +49 9352 18 8400  
<http://www.boschrexroth.com/>

# Table of Contents

|   | Page      |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1 System presentation.....</b>   | <b>9</b>  |
| 1.1 Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range.....  | 9         |
| 1.1.1 Overview – Rexroth IndraDrive Cs.....                                   | 9         |
| 1.1.2 Target applications.....  | 10        |
| 1.1.3 Features.....   | 11        |
| Functional features.....  | 11        |
| Performance features.....   | 13        |
| Combination of HCS01 and MSM/MSK.....   | 14        |
| Interfaces.....   | 14        |
| Supported encoder systems.....  | 15        |
| 1.2 System configuration.....   | 16        |
| 1.2.1 System structure.....   | 16        |
| 1.2.2 System components.....  | 17        |
| HCS01 drive controllers.....  | 17        |
| Type code.....  | 17        |
| HAP01 control panel.....  | 20        |
| Firmware.....   | 21        |
| 1.2.3 About this documentation.....   | 22        |
| Purpose.....  | 22        |
| Editions.....   | 22        |
| Documentations.....   | 25        |
| Drive systems, system components.....   | 25        |
| Motors.....   | 25        |
| Cables.....   | 25        |
| Firmware.....   | 26        |
| Your feedback.....  | 27        |
| <b>2 Important directions for use.....</b>                                    | <b>29</b> |
| 2.1 Appropriate use.....  | 29        |
| 2.1.1 Introduction.....   | 29        |
| 2.1.2 Areas of use and application.....                                       | 29        |
| 2.2 Inappropriate use.....  | 30        |
| <b>3 Safety instructions for electric drives and controls.....</b>            | <b>31</b> |
| 3.1 Definitions of terms.....   | 31        |
| 3.2 General information.....  | 32        |
| 3.2.1 Using the Safety instructions and passing them on to others.....        | 32        |
| 3.2.2 Requirements for safe use.....  | 32        |
| 3.2.3 Hazards by improper use.....  | 33        |
| 3.3 Instructions with regard to specific dangers.....                         | 34        |
| 3.3.1 Protection against contact with electrical parts and housings.....      | 34        |
| 3.3.2 Protective extra-low voltage as protection against electric shock ..... | 35        |
| 3.3.3 Protection against dangerous movements.....                             | 36        |

## Table of Contents

|          | Page   |
|----------|--|
| 3.3.4    | Protection against electromagnetic and magnetic fields during operation and mounting..... 37 |
| 3.3.5    | Protection against contact with hot parts..... 37  |
| 3.3.6    | Protection during handling and mounting..... 38  |
| 3.3.7    | Battery safety..... 38   |
| 3.3.8    | Protection against pressurized systems..... 39   |
| 3.4      | Explanation of signal words and the Safety alert symbol..... 40                              |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Combining the individual components..... 41</b>   |
| 4.1      | Documentations..... 41   |
| 4.2      | Brief description of individual components..... 41   |
| 4.2.1    | HCS01 - brief description and design..... 41   |
| 4.3      | Configuring the drive system..... 41   |
| 4.3.1    | Converter..... 41  |
| 4.3.2    | Functional equipment..... 43   |
| 4.3.3    | Firmware..... 44   |
|          | Firmware and device types..... 44  |
|          | Firmware types..... 44   |
|          | Firmware variants..... 46  |
|          | MPx-xxVRS..... 46  |
| 4.3.4    | Motors..... 47   |
|          | IndraDyn..... 47   |
|          | Third-Party Motors..... 48   |
|          | General Information on Third-Party Motors..... 48  |
|          | Requirements on Third-Party Motors..... 49   |
|          | Requirements on the Encoder of the Third-Party Motor..... 52                                 |
|          | Notes on Selection and Commissioning..... 52   |
| 4.3.5    | Cables..... 53   |
|          | Motor power cables..... 53   |
|          | Selection..... 53  |
|          | Allowed cable lengths..... 53  |
|          | Encoder cables..... 54   |
|          | MSM motors..... 54   |
|          | MSK Motors..... 54   |
| 4.4      | Installation conditions..... 54  |
| 4.4.1    | Ambient and operating conditions..... 54   |
| 4.4.2    | Control cabinet design and cooling..... 56   |
| 4.4.3    | UL ratings..... 58   |
| 4.4.4    | Compatibility with foreign matters..... 59   |
| 4.5      | Mechanical project planning..... 59  |
| 4.5.1    | Drive controller..... 59   |
|          | Dimensional Drawings..... 59   |
|          | Dimensions, mass, insulation, sound pressure level..... 63                                   |
|          | Temperatures, cooling, power dissipation, distances..... 64                                  |
|          | Mounting Positions of Components..... 67   |
| 4.6      | Electrical project planning..... 68  |
| 4.6.1    | Overall connection diagram..... 68   |

## Table of Contents

|          | Page  |
|----------|---|
| 4.6.2    | Project planning of control voltage..... 69   |
|          | Control voltage for drive systems..... 69   |
|          | Sizing the control voltage supply..... 69   |
|          | Determining the power requirements..... 69  |
|          | Requirements on the 24V power supply unit..... 73                                   |
|          | Installing the 24V supply..... 73   |
| 4.6.3    | Mains connection..... 75  |
|          | Residual-current-operated circuit breakers (RCD, RCCB) as additional fusing..... 75 |
|          | General information..... 75   |
|          | Cause of leakage currents..... 76   |
|          | Possibilities of use..... 76  |
|          | Using residual-current-operated circuit breakers at HCS drive controllers..... 77   |
|          | Mains types..... 78   |
|          | TN-S mains type..... 78   |
|          | TN-C mains type..... 79   |
|          | IT mains type..... 79   |
|          | TT system..... 80   |
|          | Mains with grounded outer conductor (Corner-grounded delta mains)..... 81           |
|          | Mains connection type..... 81   |
|          | Mains connected load and mains current ..... 85                                     |
|          | Technical data of the components..... 85  |
|          | Calculating the mains-side phase current ..... 85                                   |
|          | Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses ..... 87                             |
|          | Dimensioning and selecting the mains transformer..... 95                            |
|          | Dimensioning the mains filter..... 95   |
|          | Selecting the mains filter..... 98  |
|          | Determining the Mains Choke..... 102  |
|          | Dimensioning the mains contactor..... 102   |
|          | Combining transformer, mains filter and mains choke..... 103                        |
|          | Control Circuit for the Mains Connection..... 104                                   |
| 4.6.4    | DC bus coupling..... 105  |
|          | Requirements for DC bus coupling..... 105   |
|          | Central supply and DC bus coupling..... 105   |
|          | Group supply and DC bus coupling..... 106   |
|          | Implementing the DC bus coupling..... 108   |
|          | DC Bus Capacitor Unit..... 111  |
|          | Module bus and parameterization..... 112  |
|          | Bb relay contact..... 112   |
| 4.7      | Acceptance tests and approvals..... 114   |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage..... 117</b>        |
| 5.1      | Condition as supplied..... 117  |
| 5.1.1    | Factory testing..... 117  |
|          | Voltage testing and insulation resistance testing..... 117                          |
| 5.1.2    | Customer testing..... 117   |
| 5.2      | Identification..... 118   |

## Table of Contents

|          | Page  |
|----------|---|
| 5.2.1    | Type Plates..... 118  |
|          | Arrangement..... 118  |
|          | Design..... 118   |
| 5.2.2    | Scope of supply..... 119  |
| 5.3      | Transporting the components..... 120  |
| 5.4      | Storing the components..... 120   |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Mounting and installation..... 121</b>   |
| 6.1      | Mounting HCS01 Devices in the Control Cabinet..... 121                              |
| 6.2      | Electrical connection..... 123  |
| 6.2.1    | Overall connection diagram..... 123   |
| 6.2.2    | Connection points..... 124  |
|          | Arrangement of the HCS01 connection points..... 124                                 |
| 6.2.3    | On-board connection points..... 127   |
|          | Connection of Equipment Grounding Conductor..... 127                                |
|          | X3, mains connection..... 129   |
|          | Important notes..... 129  |
|          | X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0003...W0013-x-02, -W0005-x-03, -W0008-x-03..... 130 |
|          | X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0018-x-02, -W0018-x-03, -W0028-x-03..... 130         |
|          | X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0054-x-03..... 131                                   |
|          | X4, motor encoder connection..... 132   |
|          | X5, Motor Connection..... 134   |
|          | Important Notes..... 134  |
|          | X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0003...W0013-x-02, -W0005-x-03, -W0008-x-03..... 135 |
|          | X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0018-x-02, -W0018-x-03, -W0028-x-03..... 136         |
|          | X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0054-x-03..... 137                                   |
|          | X6, Motor Temperature Monitoring and Motor Holding Brake ..... 138                  |
|          | X9, integrated/external braking resistor..... 141                                   |
|          | X13, 24V Supply (Control Voltage)..... 143  |
|          | X24 P2, X25 P1, communication..... 144  |
|          | X26, Engineering interface..... 146   |
|          | X31, Digital Inputs, Digital Output..... 147  |
|          | X32, analog input..... 148  |
|          | X47, Bb relay contact, module bus..... 149  |
|          | X77, L+ L-, DC Bus Connection..... 151  |
|          | Shield connection..... 155  |
|          | Shield connection plates..... 155   |
|          | Analog inputs/outputs: Shield connection..... 157                                   |
|          | Ground connection..... 158  |
| 6.2.4    | Optional connection points..... 159   |
|          | X8, Optional Encoder (Option EC)..... 159   |
|          | X8, Encoder Emulation (Option EM)..... 159  |
|          | X22 P2, X23 P1, Multi-Ethernet (ET option)..... 161                                 |
|          | X26, Engineering interface..... 161   |
|          | X30, PROFIBUS PB..... 162   |
|          | X37, Digital Inputs/Outputs (DA Option)..... 165                                    |

## Table of Contents

|   | Page       |
|---|------------|
| X38, analog inputs/outputs (DA option).....   | 166        |
| X41, Safe Motion safety technology.....   | 167        |
| X42, X43, Safe Motion safety technology (communication).....  | 168        |
| X49, optional safety technology L3 or L4.....   | 169        |
| X61, CANopen (CN Option).....   | 170        |
| 6.2.5 EMC measures for design and installation.....   | 171        |
| Rules for designing installations with drive controllers in compliance with EMC.....                        | 171        |
| EMC-optimal installation in system and control cabinet.....   | 172        |
| General information.....  | 172        |
| Division into areas (zones).....  | 172        |
| Control cabinet design according to interference areas - exemplary arrangements.....                        | 173        |
| Design and installation in area A - control cabinet area free from interference.....                        | 175        |
| Design and installation in area B - control cabinet area prone to interference.....                         | 177        |
| Design and installation in area C - control cabinet area highly prone to interference.....                  | 177        |
| Ground connections.....   | 178        |
| Installing signal lines and signal cables.....  | 179        |
| General interference suppression measures for relays, contactors, switches, chokes and inductive loads..... | 180        |
| <b>7 Technical data of the components.....</b>  | <b>181</b> |
| 7.1 Control section.....  | 181        |
| 7.1.1 EC - standard encoder evaluation.....   | 181        |
| Supported encoder systems.....  | 181        |
| Encoder type.....   | 181        |
| IndraDyn S MSM motors (5V supply voltage).....  | 181        |
| IndraDyn S MSK/QSK motors S1/M1, S2/M2, S3/M3, S5/M5 (12 V supply voltage).....                             | 183        |
| HIPERFACE® (12 V supply voltage).....   | 184        |
| EnDat 2.1 according to Heidenhain standard (5 V supply voltage).....  | 185        |
| 1V <sub>pp</sub> according to Heidenhain standard (5 V supply voltage).....                                 | 186        |
| 1V <sub>pp</sub> (12 V supply voltage).....   | 187        |
| TTL (5 V supply voltage).....   | 188        |
| TTL (12 V supply voltage).....  | 189        |
| SSI (5 V supply voltage).....   | 190        |
| SSI (12 V supply voltage).....  | 191        |
| Combined encoder for SSI (5 V supply voltage).....  | 192        |
| Resolver without encoder data memory.....   | 193        |
| Hall sensor box SHL02.1 (12 V supply voltage).....  | 194        |
| Power supply.....   | 195        |
| 5 V power supply.....   | 195        |
| 12 V power supply.....  | 195        |
| Resolver power supply.....  | 195        |
| Encoder cable length.....   | 197        |
| Technical data of EC encoder evaluation.....  | 199        |
| Signal assignment to the actual position value.....   | 201        |
| 7.1.2 EM - encoder emulation.....   | 203        |
| Cables.....   | 203        |

## Table of Contents

|  | Page |
|--|------|
| Incremental encoder emulation.....                 | 203  |
| Connection.....                                    | 203  |
| Electrical data.....                               | 204  |
| Absolute encoder emulation (SSI format).....       | 205  |
| Connection.....                                    | 205  |
| Electrical data.....                               | 205  |
| Pulse diagram.....                                 | 206  |
| 7.1.3 ET - Multi-Ethernet.....                     | 207  |
| Display elements.....                              | 207  |
| Port LED.....                                      | 208  |
| EtherNet/IP.....                                   | 208  |
| EtherCAT.....                                      | 208  |
| sercos III.....                                    | 208  |
| PROFINET IO.....                                   | 209  |
| Diagnostic LED.....                                | 210  |
| EtherNet/IP.....                                   | 210  |
| EtherCAT.....                                      | 211  |
| sercos III.....                                    | 212  |
| PROFINET IO.....                                   | 213  |
| 7.1.4 PB - PROFIBUS.....                           | 214  |
| 7.1.5 CN - CANopen.....                            | 215  |
| 7.1.6 Sx - Safe Motion, Safe Motion Bus.....       | 216  |
| Display elements.....                              | 216  |
| 7.1.7 Digital inputs/outputs.....                  | 218  |
| General Information.....                           | 218  |
| Digital inputs.....                                | 218  |
| Digital Inputs Type A (Standard).....              | 218  |
| Digital inputs type B (probe).....                 | 219  |
| Digital inputs (safety technology L options).....  | 220  |
| Digital inputs (safety technology S options).....  | 221  |
| Digital outputs.....                               | 222  |
| Digital Outputs (Standard).....                    | 222  |
| Digital Outputs (Safety Technology L Options)..... | 223  |
| Digital outputs (safety technology S options)..... | 224  |
| 7.1.8 Analog Voltage Input.....                    | 226  |
| 7.1.9 Analog current input.....                    | 227  |
| 7.1.10 Analog Output.....                          | 228  |
| 7.1.11 Relay contacts.....                         | 229  |
| Relay Contact Type 2.....                          | 229  |
| 7.2 Control panel.....                             | 230  |
| 7.2.1 Design.....                                  | 230  |
| Standard control panel HAP01.1N.....               | 230  |
| ADVANCED Control Panel HAP01.1A.....               | 231  |
| 7.3 Power section.....                             | 232  |
| 7.3.1 Control voltage.....                         | 232  |
| 7.3.2 Mains voltage.....                           | 233  |



## Table of Contents

|          | Page  |
|----------|---|
| 7.3.3    | DC bus..... 240   |
| 7.3.4    | Integrated braking resistor..... 242  |
| 7.3.5    | Inverter..... 243   |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Cables, accessories, additional components..... 249</b>                      |
| 8.1      | Overview..... 249   |
| 8.1.1    | Cables..... 249   |
| 8.1.2    | Accessories..... 249  |
| 8.1.3    | Additional Components..... 250  |
| 8.2      | Accessories..... 251  |
| 8.2.1    | Mounting and connection accessories (HAS09)..... 251                            |
|          | Use..... 251  |
|          | Assignment..... 251   |
|          | Product insert..... 252   |
|          | Module bus cable shield connection..... 256                                     |
| 8.2.2    | DC Bus Connector (RLS0778/K06)..... 258   |
| 8.2.3    | Battery box SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX..... 259                                     |
| 8.2.4    | Battery and refresh resistor (SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY)..... 261                  |
| 8.2.5    | SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX battery box..... 266                                     |
| 8.2.6    | Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0 (RKG0041)..... 268  |
|          | Use..... 268  |
|          | Properties..... 269   |
|          | Project planning..... 270   |
|          | Installation..... 271   |
|          | Replacement of devices..... 273   |
| 8.2.7    | D-Sub Connector for Encoder Cable and Battery Connection (RGS0001/K01)..... 274 |
| 8.2.8    | Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5 (RKG0065)..... 278  |
| 8.2.9    | RKB0011, Multi-Ethernet Cable..... 279  |
| 8.2.10   | RKB0013, Multi-Ethernet Cable..... 280  |
| 8.2.11   | Hall Sensor Adapter Box (SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN)..... 281                            |
| 8.2.12   | Snap-on ferrite (HAS05.1-015)..... 287  |
| 8.3      | Additional components..... 290  |
| 8.3.1    | Transformers..... 290   |
|          | General information..... 290  |
|          | Autotransformers for drive controllers..... 290                                 |
|          | Types..... 290  |
|          | Selected transformers..... 291  |
| 8.3.2    | Mains Filters NFD / NFE..... 292  |
|          | Type Code NFE / NFD..... 292  |
|          | NFE02.1 - Mains Filter, Single-Phase..... 292                                   |
|          | NFD03.1 - Mains Filter, Three-Phase..... 292                                    |
|          | Mechanical Data NFE / NFD..... 293  |
|          | NFE02.1..... 293  |
|          | NFD03.1..... 294  |
|          | Electrical Data NFE / NFD..... 295  |
| 8.3.3    | Mains chokes..... 297   |



## Table of Contents

|   | Page       |
|---|------------|
| Type code.....  | 297        |
| Type plate.....   | 298        |
| HNL01.1E - mains chokes, feeding .....                    | 299        |
| Technical data.....                                       | 299        |
| 8.3.4 External braking resistors HLR.....                 | 301        |
| Types.....  | 301        |
| Data.....   | 301        |
| HLR01.2N-01K0-N28R0, ...-N68R0 dimensions.....            | 303        |
| HLR01.2N-0K06-N100R, ...-N180R dimensions.....            | 305        |
| Assignment HLR01.2 to HCS01.....                          | 306        |
| Installation.....   | 306        |
| 8.3.5 DC bus capacitor units HLC.....                     | 309        |
| Type code.....  | 309        |
| Technical data.....                                       | 309        |
| Connection.....   | 310        |
| Operation.....  | 311        |
| <b>9 Environmental protection and disposal .....</b>      | <b>313</b> |
| 9.1 Environmental protection.....                         | 313        |
| 9.2 Disposal.....   | 313        |
| <b>10 Service and support.....</b>                        | <b>315</b> |
| <b>11 Appendix.....</b>                                   | <b>317</b> |
| 11.1 Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses ..... | 317        |
| 11.2 Determining the Leakage Capacitance.....             | 325        |
| 11.3 Leakage Capacitances.....                            | 326        |
| 11.3.1 Leakage Capacitance of Motors.....                 | 326        |
| 11.3.2 Leakage Capacitance of Power Cables .....          | 328        |
| <b>Index.....</b>   | <b>331</b> |

# 1 System presentation

## 1.1 Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range






### 1.1.1 Overview – Rexroth IndraDrive Cs

| Rexroth IndraDrive Cs   |   |
|---|---|
| HCS01 converter   | MSM, MS2N, MSK, MCL motors; third-party motors                                      |
|  |  |

Tab. 1-1: Components of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range

## System presentation

## 1.1.2 Target applications

|   |  |
|---|--|
|   | <b>General automation, handling, assembly</b><br>Automated assembly and handling systems, palletizing systems, pick-and-place systems, logistics ... |
|   | <b>Machine tools</b><br>Compact machines (e.g., for wood machining), secondary and servo drives ...  |
|   | <b>Food and packaging industry</b><br>Filling and closing, palletizing, erecting cartons, closing cartons, labeling ...                              |
|   | <b>Printing machines</b><br>Label printing, labeling, digital printing, positioning, servo drives ...  |
|  | <b>Semiconductor industry</b><br>Semiconductor/wafer production and handling, metalizing, cleaning, solar cell production ...                        |

Tab. 1-2: Target applications

## 1.1.3 Features

### Functional features

- Compact type of construction
- Degree of protection IP20
- Control panel with programming module function
- Scalable signal processing and firmware
- Multi-encoder interface for all standard encoders (HIPERFACE®, EnDat2.1, EnDat2.2, SSI, TTL, sin/cos, resolver, MSM encoder)
- DC bus connection (at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices)
- Analog input (14 bit,  $\pm 10$  V)
- 8 digital inputs
  - 2 probe inputs
  - 1 combined I/O which can be configured as digital input or as digital output
- Performance-dependent fan control
- Integrated brake current measurement and monitoring
- Winding short circuit at motor output for shutdown as reaction to fatal errors
- Compact MSM motors
- 2 options for buffering the data of MSM encoders
  - Battery box (SUP-E0x-MSM-BATTERYBOX; can be mounted near the motor; one battery box is required for each drive controller)
  - Encoder cables ([RKG0041](#), [RKG0065](#)) with D-Sub connector ([RGS0001/K01](#)) to connect a battery or an uninterruptible power supply
- Hall sensor adapter box SHL03.1 to operate MCL linear motors with digital Hall sensors

## System presentation




## HCS01 - ECONOMY vs. BASIC vs. ADVANCED

| Functional equipment                                     | HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*-...  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  | ...E-S3<br>(ECONOMY)   | ...B-ET<br>(BASIC)   | ...A-CC, ...A-ET<br>(ADVANCED)   |
| Communication  | sercos III / EtherCAT  | Multi-Ethernet<br>(incl. sercos III)   | CC: sercos III master (cross communication)<br>ET: Multi-Ethernet  |
|  |  | Alternative interface <sup>1)</sup><br>(PROFIBUS DP, CANopen) <sup>2)</sup>  | Alternative interface <sup>1)</sup><br>(Multi-Ethernet, PROFIBUS DP, CANopen)  |
| Encoder evaluation                                       | Multi-encoder interface  | Multi-encoder interface  | Multi-encoder interface  |
|  |  | Optional multi-encoder interface <sup>1)</sup>   | Optional multi-encoder interface <sup>1)</sup>   |
| Encoder emulation  | –  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Integrated safety technology                             | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control) | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)<br>S4 (Safe Motion)<br>S5 (Safe Motion)<br>SB (Safe Motion Bus) | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)<br>S4 (Safe Motion)<br>S5 (Safe Motion)<br>SB (Safe Motion Bus) |
| IndraMotion  | –  | MLD-S <sup>3)</sup>  | MLD-S <sup>3)</sup><br>MLD-M <sup>3)</sup>   |
| Freely configurable digital inputs/outputs (incl. probe) | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Analog input   | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Control panel  |  |  |  |
| • With programming module function                       | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| • With slot for microSD memory card                      | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Optional I/O extension digital/analog                    | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Engineering Port   | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |

- 1) **One** additional interface per converter for communication **or** encoder evaluation
- 2) If you use "PROFIBUS DP" or "CANopen" communication, the Multi-Ethernet function is no longer available. However, you can still use the connection points X24 and X25 as Engineering interfaces.
- 3) Firmware version MPx-17 or higher
- Tab. 1-3: *ECONOMY vs. BASIC vs. ADVANCED*

System presentation

Performance features

|                          |                  |   |     |     |      |                      |     |   |         |  |      |
|--------------------------|------------------|---|-----|-----|------|----------------------|-----|---|---------|--|------|
|                          |                  |  <p><b>Size 1</b><br/>(Width: 50 mm; Height: 215 mm)</p> |     |     |      |                      |     |  <p><b>Size 2</b><br/>(Width: 70 mm; Height: 268 mm)</p> |         |  <p><b>Size 3</b><br/>(Width: 130 mm; Height: 268 mm)</p> |      |
| HCS01.1E-W00... →        |                  | 03  | 06  | 09  | 13   | 05                   | 08  | 18-A-02   | 18-A-03 | 28   | 54   |
| Mains connection voltage | V                | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V*   |     |     |      | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V** |     | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V*   |         | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V**   |      |
| Maximum current          | A <sub>rms</sub> | 3,3   | 6,0 | 9,0 | 13,0 | 5,0                  | 8,0 | 18,0  | 18,0    | 28,0   | 54,0 |

\* Single-phase operation allowed; for HCS01.1E-W0013 and HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02 with derating

\*\* Single-phase operation not allowed

Tab. 1-4: Converter HCS01 - Performance Features

## System presentation

## Combination of HCS01 and MSM/MSK

|  | HCS01              |       |       |       |       |                    |       |       |       |       |
|--|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|  | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V |       |       |       |       | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V |       |       |       |       |
|  | W0003              | W0006 | W0009 | W0013 | W0018 | W0005              | W0008 | W0018 | W0028 | W0054 |
| <b>MSM</b><br>MSM019 ... MSM041          | ■                  |       |       |       |       | T                  |       |       | -     | -     |
| <b>MSK</b><br>MSK030 ...<br>MSK070C-0150 | □                  |       |       |       |       | ■                  |       |       |       | □     |
| <b>MSK</b><br>MSK070C-0300<br>... MSK103 | -                  |       |       |       |       | □                  |       |       |       | ■     |

- Optimum combination
- Some allowed combinations are possible
- T Allowed combination (transformer required, as operation of MSM only allowed with a maximum of 3 AC 230 V)
- Combination not allowed

Tab. 1-5: Converter HCS01 and Motors MSM/MSK

**Drive sizing with Rexroth IndraSize**

Rexroth IndraSize is a software for optimum sizing of a drive system consisting of the components Rexroth IndraDrive and IndraDyn.

Rexroth IndraSize is available as a download.

## Interfaces

- Overview**
- Compatible with IndraDrive platform
  - Ethernet-based communication with the following supported protocols:
    - sercos III
    - PROFINET IO
    - EtherNet/IP
    - EtherNet POWERLINK
    - EtherCAT
  - Alternative communication:
    - PROFIBUS DP
    - CANopen
  - Optional safety technology
  - Optional multi-encoder interface
  - Optional encoder emulation
  - Analog input
  - Freely configurable digital inputs/outputs



## Supported encoder systems

### Supported encoder systems

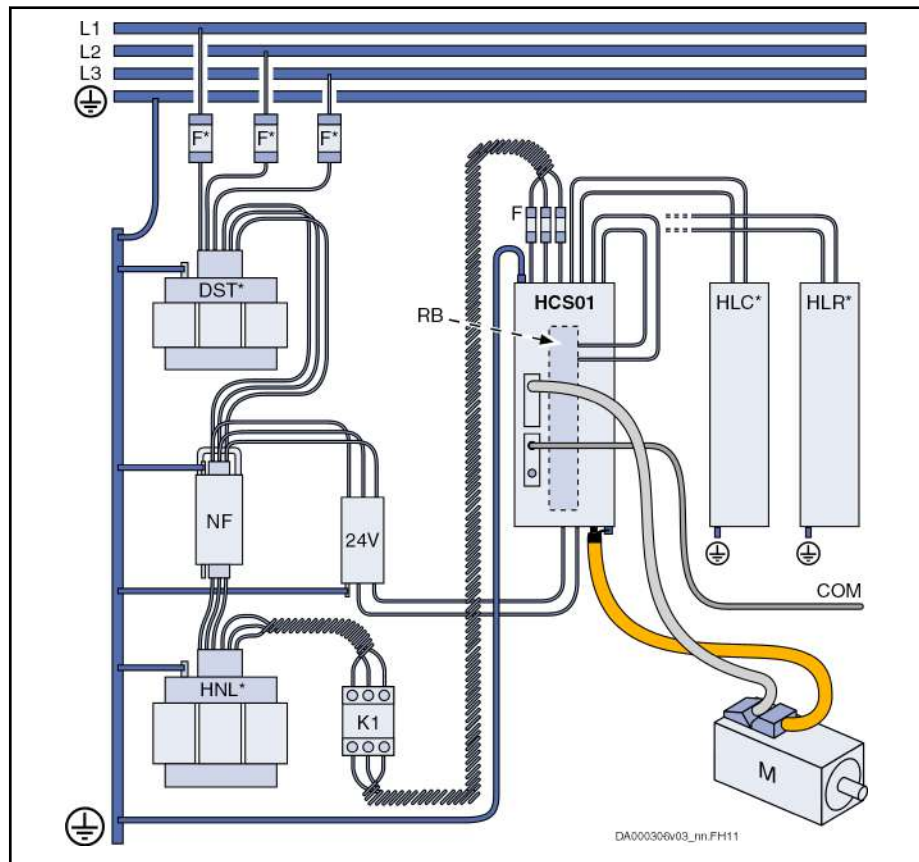
Encoder systems with a supply voltage of **5 and 12 V**:

- MSM motor encoder
- MS2N motor encoder
- MSK motor encoder
- $1V_{pp}$  sin-cos encoder; HIPERFACE®
- $1V_{pp}$  sin-cos encoder; EnDat 2.1; EnDat 2.2
- $1V_{pp}$  sin-cos encoder; with reference track
- 5V TTL square-wave encoder; with reference track
- SSI
- Combined encoder for SSI (combination of SSI and  $1V_{pp}$  sin-cos encoder)
- Resolver (resolvers are **not** supported if optional "Safe Motion" safety technology is also in use)
- Hall sensor box SHL02.1
- Digital Hall sensor in conjunction with Hall sensor adapter box SHL03.1

## System presentation

## 1.2 System configuration

## 1.2.1 System structure



|       |   |
|-------|---|
| *     | Optional  |
| 24V   | Control voltage supply  |
| COM   | Communication   |
| DST   | Autotransformer   |
| F     | Fuses   |
| HCS01 | Converter   |
| HLC   | DC bus capacitor unit (for devices with DC bus connection)        |
| HLR   | External braking resistor   |
| HNL   | Mains choke   |
| NF    | Mains filter  |
| K1    | External mains contactor  |
| M     | Motor   |
| RB    | Integrated braking resistor (at the back of the drive controller) |

Fig. 1-1:

Drive System Rexroth IndraDrive Cs

| Short type designation | 1   | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | 4 |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
|                        | Example:  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                        | ①   | ② |   | ③ | ④ |   | ⑤ |   | ⑥ |   | ⑦ |   | ⑧ |   | ⑨ |   | ⑩ |   | ⑪ |   | ⑫ |   | ⑬ |   | ⑭ |   | ⑮ |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ①                      | <b>Product:</b><br>HCS = HCS  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ②                      | <b>Series:</b><br>01 = 01   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ③                      | <b>Design:</b><br>1 = 1   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ④                      | <b>Power supply unit:</b><br>E = Feeding  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑤                      | <b>Cooling type:</b><br>W = Air, internal   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑥                      | <b>Maximum current <sup>1)</sup>:</b><br>0003 = 3 A<br>0005 = 5 A<br>0006 = 6 A<br>0008 = 8 A<br>0009 = 9 A<br>0013 = 13 A<br>0018 = 18 A<br>0028 = 28 A<br>0054 = 54 A |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑦                      | <b>Degree of protection:</b><br>A = IP20  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑧                      | <b>Mains connection voltage <sup>1)</sup>:</b><br>02 = 3 × AC 110 ... 230 V<br>03 = 3 × AC 200 ... 500 V  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑨                      | <b>Control section design <sup>2)</sup>:</b><br>A = ADVANCED<br>B = BASIC<br>E = ECONOMY  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| ⑩                      | <b>Communication <sup>2)</sup>:</b><br>S3 = sercos 3 / EtherCAT<br>CC = sercos 3 master (cross communication)<br>ET = Multi-Ethernet                                    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |

## System presentation

[illegible]

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1) | See table "Possible combinations of maximum current and mains connection voltage"  |
| 2) | See table "Possible combinations of options"                                       |
| 3) | The L3, S4, S5 and SB interfaces guarantee both the function and the certification |

*Tab. 1-6: Type code HCS01*

**Possible combinations of maximum current and mains connection voltage:**

| Mains connection voltage [V] | Maximum current [A] |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|
|                              | 3                   | 5 | 6 | 8 | 9 | 13 | 18 | 28 | 54 |
| 3 × AC 110 ... 230           | ✓                   | – | ✓ | – | ✓ | ✓  | ✓  | –  | –  |
| 3 × AC 200 ... 500           | –                   | ✓ | – | ✓ | – | –  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |

*Tab. 1-7: Possible combinations of maximum current and mains connection voltage*

Possible combinations of options:

| Control section design | Communication | Interface 2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Interface 3 |    |    |    |    |    |
|------------------------|---------------|-------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-------------|----|----|----|----|----|
|                        |               | CN          | DA | EC | EM | EP | ET | NN | PB | L3          | L4 | NN | S4 | S5 | SB |
| A                      | CC            | ✓           | –  | ✓  | ✓  | –  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓           | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
|                        |               | –           | ✓  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –           | –  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  |
|                        | ET            | –           | –  | ✓  | ✓  | –  | –  | ✓  | –  | ✓           | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
|                        |               | –           | ✓  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –           | –  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  |
| B                      | ET            | ✓           | –  | ✓  | ✓  | –  | –  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓           | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
|                        |               | –           | ✓  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –  | –           | –  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  |
|                        |               | –           | –  | –  | –  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  | ✓           | ✓  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  |
| E                      | S3            | –           | –  | –  | –  | ✓  | –  | ✓  | –  | ✓           | ✓  | ✓  | –  | –  | –  |

Tab. 1-8: Possible combinations of options



The figure illustrates the basic structure of the type code. Our sales representative will assist you with the versions available.



## HAP01 ↔ HCS01 assignment

| Control panel | Drive controller   |
|---------------|--|
| HAP01.1A      | HCS01.1E-W****-***-A-CC (ADVANCED)<br>HCS01.1E-W****-***-A-ET (ADVANCED)<br>HCS01.1E-W****-***-B-ET (BASIC) <sup>1)</sup><br>HCS01.1E-W****-***-E-S3 (ECONOMY) <sup>1)</sup> |
| HAP01.1N      | HCS01.1E-W****-***-B-ET (BASIC)<br>HCS01.1E-W****-***-E-S3 (ECONOMY)   |

1) Requires firmware MPx-20 or higher

Tab. 1-10: HAP01 ↔ HCS01 assignment

- [chapter "Standard control panel HAP01.1N" on page 230](#)
- [chapter "ADVANCED Control Panel HAP01.1A" on page 231](#)

## Firmware

### Firmware types

#### *ECONOMY*

- FWA-INDRV\*-MPE-16VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPE-17VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPE-18VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPE-20VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN


#### *BASIC*

- FWA-INDRV\*-MPE-18VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPB-16VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPB-17VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPB-18VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPB-20VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx

#### *ADVANCED*

- FWA-INDRV\*-MPC-17VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPC-18VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx
- FWA-INDRV\*-MPC-20VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx

See also [chapter "Firmware types" on page 44](#)

 For detailed information, see the Functional Description of the firmware used (index entry "Overview of functions/functional packages").

## System presentation

## 1.2.3 About this documentation

## Purpose

**⚠ WARNING**

Personal injury and property damage caused by improper project planning for applications, machines and installations!

Observe the contents of the documentation relevant to your drive system (see [chapter "Documentations" on page 25](#)).

This documentation contains the following:

- Overview of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system
- Description of the allowed combinations of Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system components
- Selection of the system components of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system
- Specification applying to all components (ambient and operating conditions)
- Application description of system characteristics

## Editions

| Edition | Notes   |
|---------|---|
| 05      | <p>Changes in comparison to previous edition:</p> <p><i>Revised contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Added technical data (inverter power section) for HCS01.1E-W0013</li> <li>• Analog current input (DA option): Updated electrical data</li> </ul>  |
| 04      | <p>Changes in comparison to previous edition:</p> <p><i>New contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• External braking resistors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– HLR01.2N-0K06-N100R-E-003-NNNN</li> <li>– HLR01.2N-0K06-N180R-E-007-NNNN</li> </ul> </li> <li>• SB option (Safe Motion Bus)</li> <li>• EP option (Engineering interface)</li> <li>• SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX-xxxx battery box accessory</li> <li>• Encoder cable for MSM motors with M5 absolute value encoder (<a href="#">RKG0065</a>)</li> </ul> <p><i>Revised contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Updated type code</li> <li>• HCS01.1E-W0018-A02 (inverter data): Frequency-dependent output currents</li> <li>• HAS09.1-001 (module bus cable shield connection) accessory</li> <li>• Updated encoder emulation data</li> <li>• Removed HAP01.1E standard control panel</li> </ul> |



System presentation

| Edition | Notes  |
|---------|--|
| 03      | <p>Changes in comparison to previous edition:</p> <p><i>New contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Safety technology Safe Motion (optional module S4)</li><li>• Analog/digital I/O extension (optional module DA)</li><li>• HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN (snap-on ferrite) accessory</li></ul> <p><i>Revised contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Type code<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– HCS01</li><li>– HLR01</li></ul></li><li>• Revised information on fuses for individual and group supply</li><li>• Dimensioning of line cross sections and fuses:<br/>Revised recommendations for fuses</li><li>• On-board connection point X24/X25</li><li>• Revised data tables of inputs/outputs (digital, analog)</li></ul> |

## System presentation

| Edition | Notes  |
|---------|--|
| 02      | <p>Changes in comparison to previous edition:</p> <p><i>New contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HCS01.1E-W0054-_-03</li> <li>• HCS01.1E-W0018-_-02</li> <li>• Safety technology (L3, L4)</li> <li>• Encoder emulation (EM)</li> <li>• CANopen (CN) communication</li> <li>• SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN Hall sensor adapter box</li> <li>• <a href="#">RKG0041</a> encoder cable</li> <li>• D-Sub connector <a href="#">RGS0001</a>/K01 for encoder cable and battery connection</li> <li>• HLR01.2 braking resistors</li> <li>• HLC01.2 DC bus capacitor units</li> <li>• Transformers</li> <li>• ADVANCED control panel</li> <li>• Third-party motors</li> <li>• Tightening torques of the connection points</li> <li>• EtherCAT display elements</li> </ul> <p><i>Revised contents</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Type code</li> <li>• Technical data</li> <li>• Project planning for control voltage supply</li> <li>• DC bus coupling</li> <li>• Mains filter: Dimensioning and selection</li> <li>• Standard encoder evaluation</li> <li>• Connection diagram for HIPERFACE encoder</li> <li>• HAS09 mounting and connection accessories</li> <li>• SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY accessory</li> <li>• Control cabinet cooling</li> <li>• Overview of documentations</li> </ul> |
| 01      | First edition  |

Tab. 1-11: Editions

## Documentations

### Drive systems, system components

| Title<br>Rexroth IndraDrive ... | Type of documentation   | Document typecode <sup>1)</sup><br>DOK-INDRV*-... | Material number<br>R911... |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Cs drive systems                | Project Planning Manual | HCS01*****-PRxx-EN-P                              | 322210                     |

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

Tab. 1-12: Documentations – drive systems, system components

### Motors

| Title<br>Rexroth IndraDyn ...    | Type of documentation   | Document typecode <sup>1)</sup><br>DOK-MOTOR*-... | Material number<br>R911... |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| A Asynchronous Motors MAD / MAF  | Project Planning Manual | MAD/MAF****-PRxx-EN-P                             | 295781                     |
| H Synchronous Kit Spindle Motors | Project Planning Manual | MBS-H*****-PRxx-EN-P                              | 297895                     |
| L Synchronous Linear Motors      | Project Planning Manual | MLF*****-PRxx-EN-P                                | 293635                     |
| L Ironless Linear Motors MCL     | Project Planning Manual | MCL*****-PRxx-EN-P                                | 330592                     |
| S Synchronous Motors MKE         | Project Planning Manual | MKE*GEN2***-PRxx-EN-P                             | 297663                     |
| S Synchronous Motors MSK         | Project Planning Manual | MSK*****-PRxx-EN-P                                | 296289                     |
| S Synchronous Motors MSM         | Data Sheet              | MSM*****-DAxx-EN-P                                | 329338                     |
| S Synchronous Motors MS2N        | Project Planning Manual | MS2N*****-PRxx-EN-P                               | 347583                     |
| T Synchronous Torque Motors      | Project Planning Manual | MBT*****-PRxx-EN-P                                | 298798                     |

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

Tab. 1-13: Documentations – motors

### Cables

| Title  | Type of documentation | Document typecode <sup>1)</sup><br>DOK-CONNEC-... | Material number<br>R911... |
|--|-----------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Rexroth Connection Cables<br>IndraDrive and IndraDyn | Selection Data        | CABLE*INDRV-CAxx-EN-P                             | 322949                     |

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: CA03 is the third edition of the documentation "Catalog")

Tab. 1-14: Documentations – cables

## System presentation

## Firmware

| Title<br>Rexroth IndraDrive ...                            | Type of documentation | Document typecode <sup>1)</sup><br>DOK-INDRV*-... | Material number<br>R911... |
|--|-----------------------|---|----------------------------|
| MPx-20<br>Functions  | Application Manual    | MP*-20VRS**-APxx-EN-P                             | 345608                     |
| MPx-20<br>Version Notes                                    | Release Notes         | MP*-20VRS**-RNxx-EN-P                             | 345606                     |
| MPx-18<br>Functions  | Application Manual    | MP*-18VRS**-APxx-EN-P                             | 338673                     |
| MPx-18<br>Version Notes                                    | Release Notes         | MP*-18VRS**-RNxx-EN-P                             | 338658                     |
| MPx-17<br>Functions  | Application Manual    | MP*-17VRS**-APxx-EN-P                             | 331236                     |
| MPx-17<br>Version Notes                                    | Release Notes         | MP*-17VRS**-RNxx-EN-P                             | 331588                     |
| MPx-16<br>Functions  | Application Manual    | MP*-16VRS**-APxx-EN-P                             | 326767                     |
| MPx-16<br>Version Notes                                    | Release Notes         | MP*-16VRS**-RNxx-EN-P                             | 329272                     |
| MPx-16 to MPx-18<br>Parameters                             | Reference Book        | GEN1-PARA**-RExx-EN-P                             | 328651                     |
| MPx-16 to MPx-18<br>Diagnostic Messages                    | Reference Book        | GEN1-DIAG**-RExx-EN-P                             | 326738                     |
| Integrated Safety Technology<br>as of MPx-1x               | Application Manual    | SI3-**VRS**-APxx-EN-P                             | 332634                     |
| Integrated Safety Technology<br>as of MPx-1x (Safe Motion) | Application Manual    | SI3*SMO-VRS-APxx-EN-P                             | 338920                     |
| Rexroth IndraMotion MLD<br>Libraries as of MPx-17          | Reference Book        | MLD-SYSLIB2-RExx-EN-P                             | 332627                     |
| Rexroth IndraMotion MLD<br>Libraries as of MPx-18          | Reference Book        | MLD-SYSLIB3-RExx-EN-P                             | 338916                     |
| Rexroth IndraMotion MLD<br>as of MPx-17                    | Application Manual    | MLD2-**VRS*-APxx-EN-P                             | 334351                     |
| Rexroth IndraMotion MLD<br>as of MPx-18                    | Application Manual    | MLD3-**VRS*-APRS-EN-P                             | 338914                     |

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: RE02 is the second edition of a Reference Book)

Tab. 1-15: Documentations – firmware

## Your feedback



---

Your experience is important for our improvement processes of products and documentations.

---

Inform us about mistakes you discovered in this documentation and changes you suggest; we would be grateful for your feedback.

Please send your remarks to:

**Address for your feedback**

Bosch Rexroth AG

Dept. DC-IA/EDY1

Buergermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2

97816 Lohr, Germany

E-mail: [dokusupport@boschrexroth.de](mailto:dokusupport@boschrexroth.de)



## 2 Important directions for use

### 2.1 Appropriate use

#### 2.1.1 Introduction

Rexroth products represent state-of-the-art developments and manufacturing. They are tested prior to delivery to ensure operating safety and reliability.

#### **WARNING**

**Personal injury and property damage caused by incorrect use of the products!**

The products have been designed for use in the industrial environment and may only be used in the appropriate way. If they are not used in the appropriate way, situations resulting in property damage and personal injury can occur.



Rexroth as manufacturer is not liable for any damages resulting from inappropriate use. In such cases, the guarantee and the right to payment of damages resulting from inappropriate use are forfeited. The user alone carries all responsibility of the risks.

Before using Rexroth products, make sure that all the pre-requisites for an appropriate use of the products are satisfied:

- Personnel that in any way, shape or form uses our products must first read and understand the relevant safety instructions and be familiar with their appropriate use.
- If the products take the form of hardware, then they must remain in their original state, in other words, no structural changes are permitted. It is not permitted to decompile software products or alter source codes.
- Do not install damaged or faulty products or put them into operation.
- Make sure that the products have been installed in the manner described in the relevant documentation.

#### 2.1.2 Areas of use and application

Drive controllers made by Rexroth are designed to control electric motors and monitor their operation.

Control and monitoring of the Drive controllers may require additional sensors and actuators.



The drive controllers may only be used with the accessories and parts specified in this documentation. If a component has not been specifically named, then it may neither be mounted nor connected. The same applies to cables and lines.

Operation is only permitted in the specified configurations and combinations of components using the software and firmware as specified in the relevant Functional Descriptions.

Drive controllers have to be programmed before commissioning to ensure that the motor executes the specific functions of an application.

Drive controllers of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs series have been developed for use in single- and multi-axis drive and control tasks.

## Important directions for use

To ensure application-specific use of Drive controllers, device types of different drive power and different interfaces are available.

Typical applications include, for example:

- Handling and mounting systems
- Packaging and food machines
- Printing and paper processing machines
- Machine tools

Drive controllers may only be operated under the assembly and installation conditions described in this documentation, in the specified position of normal use and under the ambient conditions as described (temperature, degree of protection, humidity, EMC, etc.).

## 2.2 Inappropriate use

Using the Drive controllers outside of the operating conditions described in this documentation and outside of the indicated technical data and specifications is defined as "inappropriate use".

Drive controllers may not be used, if ...

- they are subject to operating conditions that do not meet the specified ambient conditions. This includes, for example, operation under water, under extreme temperature fluctuations or extremely high maximum temperatures.
- Furthermore, Drive controllers may not be used in applications which have not been expressly authorized by Rexroth. Please carefully follow the specifications outlined in the general Safety Instructions!



Components of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs system are **products of Category C3** (with restricted distribution) in accordance with IEC 61800-3. This Category comprises EMC limit values for line-based and radiated noise emission. Compliance with this Category (limit values) requires the appropriate measures of interference suppression to be used in the drive system (e.g., mains filters, shielding measures).

These components are not provided for use in a public low-voltage mains supplying residential areas. If these components are used in such a mains, high-frequency interference is to be expected. This can require additional measures of interference suppression.



## 3 Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

### 3.1 Definitions of terms

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Application documentation</b> | Application documentation comprises the entire documentation used to inform the user of the product about the use and safety-relevant features for configuring, integrating, installing, mounting, commissioning, operating, maintaining, repairing and decommissioning the product. The following terms are also used for this kind of documentation: Operating Instructions, Commissioning Manual, Instruction Manual, Project Planning Manual, Application Description, etc.                                   |
| <b>Component</b>                 | A component is a combination of elements with a specified function, which are part of a piece of equipment, device or system. Components of the electric drive and control system are, for example, supply units, drive controllers, mains choke, mains filter, motors, cables, etc.  |
| <b>Control system</b>            | A control system comprises several interconnected control components placed on the market as a single functional unit.  |
| <b>Device</b>                    | A device is a finished product with a defined function, intended for users and placed on the market as an individual piece of merchandise.  |
| <b>Electrical equipment</b>      | Electrical equipment encompasses all devices used to generate, convert, transmit, distribute or apply electrical energy, such as electric motors, transformers, switching devices, cables, lines, power-consuming devices, circuit board assemblies, plug-in units, control cabinets, etc.  |
| <b>Electric drive system</b>     | An electric drive system comprises all components from mains supply to motor shaft; this includes, for example, electric motor(s), motor encoder(s), supply units and drive controllers, as well as auxiliary and additional components, such as mains filter, mains choke and the corresponding lines and cables.  |
| <b>Installation</b>              | An installation consists of several devices or systems interconnected for a defined purpose and on a defined site which, however, are not intended to be placed on the market as a single functional unit.  |
| <b>Machine</b>                   | A machine is the entirety of interconnected parts or units at least one of which is movable. Thus, a machine consists of the appropriate machine drive elements, as well as control and power circuits, which have been assembled for a specific application. A machine is, for example, intended for processing, treatment, movement or packaging of a material. The term "machine" also covers a combination of machines which are arranged and controlled in such a way that they function as a unified whole. |
| <b>Manufacturer</b>              | The manufacturer is an individual or legal entity bearing responsibility for the design and manufacture of a product which is placed on the market in the individual's or legal entity's name. The manufacturer can use finished products, finished parts or finished elements, or contract out work to subcontractors. However, the manufacturer must always have overall control and possess the required authority to take responsibility for the product.   |
| <b>Product</b>                   | Examples of a product: Device, component, part, system, software, firmware, among other things.   |
| <b>Project Planning Manual</b>   | A Project Planning Manual is part of the application documentation used to support the sizing and planning of systems, machines or installations.   |
| <b>Qualified persons</b>         | In terms of this application documentation, qualified persons are those persons who are familiar with the installation, mounting, commissioning and operation of the components of the electric drive and control system, as well as with the hazards this implies, and who possess the qualifications their work   |

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

requires. To comply with these qualifications, it is necessary, among other things,

- to be trained, instructed or authorized to switch electric circuits and devices safely on and off, to ground them and to mark them.
- to be trained or instructed to maintain and use adequate safety equipment.
- to attend a course of instruction in first aid.

**User** A user is a person installing, commissioning or using a product which has been placed on the market.

## 3.2 General information

### 3.2.1 Using the Safety instructions and passing them on to others

Do not attempt to install and operate the components of the electric drive and control system without first reading all documentation provided with the product. Read and understand these safety instructions and all user documentation prior to working with these components. If you do not have the user documentation for the components, contact your responsible Rexroth sales partner. Ask for these documents to be sent immediately to the person or persons responsible for the safe operation of the components.

If the component is resold, rented and/or passed on to others in any other form, these safety instructions must be delivered with the component in the official language of the user's country.

**Improper use of these components, failure to follow the safety instructions in this document or tampering with the product, including disabling of safety devices, could result in property damage, injury, electric shock or even death.**

### 3.2.2 Requirements for safe use

Read the following instructions before initial commissioning of the components of the electric drive and control system in order to eliminate the risk of injury and/or property damage. You must follow these safety instructions.

- Rexroth is not liable for damages resulting from failure to observe the safety instructions.
- Read the operating, maintenance and safety instructions in your language before commissioning. If you find that you cannot completely understand the application documentation in the available language, please ask your supplier to clarify.
- Proper and correct transport, storage, mounting and installation, as well as care in operation and maintenance, are prerequisites for optimal and safe operation of the component.
- Only qualified persons may work with components of the electric drive and control system or within its proximity.
- Only use accessories and spare parts approved by Rexroth.
- Follow the safety regulations and requirements of the country in which the components of the electric drive and control system are operated.
- Only use the components of the electric drive and control system in the manner that is defined as appropriate. See chapter "Appropriate Use".
- The ambient and operating conditions given in the available application documentation must be observed.

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

- Applications for functional safety are only allowed if clearly and explicitly specified in the application documentation "Integrated Safety Technology". If this is not the case, they are excluded. Functional safety is a safety concept in which measures of risk reduction for personal safety depend on electrical, electronic or programmable control systems.
- The information given in the application documentation with regard to the use of the delivered components contains only examples of applications and suggestions.

The machine and installation manufacturers must

- make sure that the delivered components are suited for their individual application and check the information given in this application documentation with regard to the use of the components,
- make sure that their individual application complies with the applicable safety regulations and standards and carry out the required measures, modifications and complements.
- Commissioning of the delivered components is only allowed once it is sure that the machine or installation in which the components are installed complies with the national regulations, safety specifications and standards of the application.
- Operation is only allowed if the national EMC regulations for the application are met.
- The instructions for installation in accordance with EMC requirements can be found in the section on EMC in the respective application documentation.

The machine or installation manufacturer is responsible for compliance with the limit values as prescribed in the national regulations.

- The technical data, connection and installation conditions of the components are specified in the respective application documentations and must be followed at all times.

*National regulations which the user has to comply with*

- European countries: In accordance with European EN standards
- United States of America (USA):
  - National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), as well as local engineering regulations
  - Regulations of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
- Canada: Canadian Standards Association (CSA)
- Other countries:
  - International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
  - International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)

### 3.2.3 Hazards by improper use

- High electrical voltage and high working current! Danger to life or serious injury by electric shock!
- High electrical voltage by incorrect connection! Danger to life or injury by electric shock!
- Dangerous movements! Danger to life, serious injury or property damage by unintended motor movements!

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

- Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids in proximity to electric drive systems!
- Risk of burns by hot housing surfaces!
- Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of batteries!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

### 3.3 Instructions with regard to specific dangers

#### 3.3.1 Protection against contact with electrical parts and housings



This section concerns components of the electric drive and control system with voltages of **more than 50 volts**.

Contact with parts conducting voltages above 50 volts can cause personal danger and electric shock. When operating components of the electric drive and control system, it is unavoidable that some parts of these components conduct dangerous voltage.

**High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious injury!**

- Only qualified persons are allowed to operate, maintain and/or repair the components of the electric drive and control system.
- Follow the general installation and safety regulations when working on power installations.
- Before switching on, the equipment grounding conductor must have been permanently connected to all electric components in accordance with the connection diagram.
- Even for brief measurements or tests, operation is only allowed if the equipment grounding conductor has been permanently connected to the points of the components provided for this purpose.
- Before accessing electrical parts with voltage potentials higher than 50 V, you must disconnect electric components from the mains or from the power supply unit. Secure the electric component from reconnection.
- With electric components, observe the following aspects:  
Always wait **30 minutes** after switching off power to allow live capacitors to discharge before accessing an electric component. Measure the electrical voltage of live parts before beginning to work to make sure that the equipment is safe to touch.
- Install the covers and guards provided for this purpose before switching on.
- Never touch any electrical connection points of the components while power is turned on.
- Do not remove or plug in connectors when the component has been powered.
- Under specific conditions, electric drive systems can be operated at mains protected by residual-current-operated circuit-breakers sensitive to universal current (RCDs/RCMs).

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

- Secure built-in devices from penetrating foreign objects and water, as well as from direct contact, by providing an external housing, for example a control cabinet.

### High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!

- Before switching on and before commissioning, ground or connect the components of the electric drive and control system to the equipment grounding conductor at the grounding points.
- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the components of the electric drive and control system permanently to the main power supply at all times. The leakage current is greater than 3.5 mA.
- Establish an equipment grounding connection with a minimum cross section according to the table below. With an outer conductor cross section smaller than 10 mm<sup>2</sup> (8 AWG), the alternative connection of two equipment grounding conductors is allowed, each having the same cross section as the outer conductors.

| Cross section outer conductor | Minimum cross section equipment grounding conductor |                                  |
|-------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
|                               | Leakage current $\geq 3.5$ mA                       |                                  |
|                               | 1 equipment grounding conductor                     | 2 equipment grounding conductors |
| 1.5 mm <sup>2</sup> (16 AWG)  | 10 mm <sup>2</sup> (8 AWG)                          | 2 × 1.5 mm <sup>2</sup> (16 AWG) |
| 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> (14 AWG)  |   | 2 × 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> (14 AWG) |
| 4 mm <sup>2</sup> (12 AWG)    |   | 2 × 4 mm <sup>2</sup> (12 AWG)   |
| 6 mm <sup>2</sup> (10 AWG)    |   | 2 × 6 mm <sup>2</sup> (10 AWG)   |
| 10 mm <sup>2</sup> (8 AWG)    |   | -                                |
| 16 mm <sup>2</sup> (6 AWG)    | 16 mm <sup>2</sup> (6 AWG)                          | -                                |
| 25 mm <sup>2</sup> (4 AWG)    |   | -                                |
| 35 mm <sup>2</sup> (2 AWG)    |   | -                                |
| 50 mm <sup>2</sup> (1/0 AWG)  | 25 mm <sup>2</sup> (4 AWG)                          | -                                |
| 70 mm <sup>2</sup> (2/0 AWG)  | 35 mm <sup>2</sup> (2 AWG)                          | -                                |
| ...                           | ...   | ...                              |

Tab. 3-1: Minimum cross section of the equipment grounding connection

## 3.3.2 Protective extra-low voltage as protection against electric shock

Protective extra-low voltage is used to allow connecting devices with basic insulation to extra-low voltage circuits.

On components of an electric drive and control system provided by Rexroth, all connections and terminals with voltages up to 50 volts are PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage") systems. It is allowed to connect devices equipped with basic insulation (such as programming devices, PCs, notebooks, display units) to these connections.

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

**Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock! High electrical voltage by incorrect connection!**

If extra-low voltage circuits of devices containing voltages and circuits of more than 50 volts (e.g., the mains connection) are connected to Rexroth products, the connected extra-low voltage circuits must comply with the requirements for PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage").

### 3.3.3 Protection against dangerous movements

Dangerous movements can be caused by faulty control of connected motors. Some common examples are:

- Improper or wrong wiring or cable connection
- Operator errors
- Wrong input of parameters before commissioning
- Malfunction of sensors and encoders
- Defective components
- Software or firmware errors

These errors can occur immediately after equipment is switched on or even after an unspecified time of trouble-free operation.

The monitoring functions in the components of the electric drive and control system will normally be sufficient to avoid malfunction in the connected drives. Regarding personal safety, especially the danger of injury and/or property damage, this alone cannot be relied upon to ensure complete safety. Until the integrated monitoring functions become effective, it must be assumed in any case that faulty drive movements will occur. The extent of faulty drive movements depends upon the type of control and the state of operation.

**Dangerous movements! Danger to life, risk of injury, serious injury or property damage!**

A **risk assessment** must be prepared for the installation or machine, with its specific conditions, in which the components of the electric drive and control system are installed.

As a result of the risk assessment, the user must provide for monitoring functions and higher-level measures on the installation side for personal safety. The safety regulations applicable to the installation or machine must be taken into consideration. Unintended machine movements or other malfunctions are possible if safety devices are disabled, bypassed or not activated.

**To avoid accidents, injury and/or property damage:**

- Keep free and clear of the machine's range of motion and moving machine parts. Prevent personnel from accidentally entering the machine's range of motion by using, for example:
  - Safety fences
  - Safety guards
  - Protective coverings
  - Light barriers
- Make sure the safety fences and protective coverings are strong enough to resist maximum possible kinetic energy.
- Mount emergency stopping switches in the immediate reach of the operator. Before commissioning, verify that the emergency stopping equip-

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

ment works. Do not operate the machine if the emergency stopping switch is not working.

- Prevent unintended start-up. Isolate the drive power connection by means of OFF switches/OFF buttons or use a safe starting lockout.
- Make sure that the drives are brought to safe standstill before accessing or entering the danger zone.
- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes,
  - adding an external braking/arrester/clamping mechanism or
  - ensuring sufficient counterbalancing of the vertical axes.
- The standard equipment **motor holding brake** or an external holding brake controlled by the drive controller is **not sufficient to guarantee personal safety!**
- Disconnect electrical power to the components of the electric drive and control system using the master switch and secure them from reconnection ("lock out") for:
  - Maintenance and repair work
  - Cleaning of equipment
  - Long periods of discontinued equipment use
- Prevent the operation of high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment near components of the electric drive and control system and their supply leads. If the use of these devices cannot be avoided, check the machine or installation, at initial commissioning of the electric drive and control system, for possible malfunctions when operating such high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment in its possible positions of normal use. It might possibly be necessary to perform a special electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) test.

### 3.3.4 Protection against electromagnetic and magnetic fields during operation and mounting

#### Electromagnetic and magnetic fields!

**Health hazard for persons with active implantable medical devices (AIMD) such as pacemakers or passive metallic implants.**

- Hazards for the above-mentioned groups of persons by electromagnetic and magnetic fields in the immediate vicinity of drive controllers and the associated current-carrying conductors.
- Entering these areas can pose an increased risk to the above-mentioned groups of persons. They should seek advice from their physician.
- If overcome by possible effects on above-mentioned persons during operation of drive controllers and accessories, remove the exposed persons from the vicinity of conductors and devices.

### 3.3.5 Protection against contact with hot parts

**Hot surfaces of components of the electric drive and control system. Risk of burns!**

## Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

- Do not touch hot surfaces of, for example, braking resistors, heat sinks, supply units and drive controllers, motors, windings and laminated cores!
- According to the operating conditions, temperatures of the surfaces can be **higher than 60 °C** (140 °F) during or after operation.
- Before touching motors after having switched them off, let them cool down for a sufficient period of time. Cooling down can require **up to 140 minutes**! The time required for cooling down is approximately five times the thermal time constant specified in the technical data.
- After switching chokes, supply units and drive controllers off, wait **15 minutes** to allow them to cool down before touching them.
- Wear safety gloves or do not work at hot surfaces.
- For certain applications, and in accordance with the respective safety regulations, the manufacturer of the machine or installation must take measures to avoid injuries caused by burns in the final application. These measures can be, for example: Warnings at the machine or installation, guards (shieldings or barriers) or safety instructions in the application documentation.

### 3.3.6 Protection during handling and mounting

**Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!**

- Observe the relevant statutory regulations of accident prevention.
- Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport.
- Avoid jamming and crushing by appropriate measures.
- Always use suitable tools. Use special tools if specified.
- Use lifting equipment and tools in the correct manner.
- Use suitable protective equipment (hard hat, safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Do not stand under hanging loads.
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

### 3.3.7 Battery safety

Batteries consist of active chemicals in a solid housing. Therefore, improper handling can cause injury or property damage.

**Risk of injury by improper handling!**

- Do not attempt to reactivate low batteries by heating or other methods (risk of explosion and cauterization).
- Do not attempt to recharge the batteries as this may cause leakage or explosion.
- Do not throw batteries into open flames.
- Do not dismantle batteries.
- When replacing the battery/batteries, do not damage the electrical parts installed in the devices.
- Only use the battery types specified for the product.





Environmental protection and disposal! The batteries contained in the product are considered dangerous goods during land, air, and sea transport (risk of explosion) in the sense of the legal regulations. Dispose of used batteries separately from other waste. Observe the national regulations of your country.

### 3.3.8 Protection against pressurized systems

According to the information given in the Project Planning Manuals, motors and components cooled with liquids and compressed air can be partially supplied with externally fed, pressurized media, such as compressed air, hydraulics oil, cooling liquids and cooling lubricants. Improper handling of the connected supply systems, supply lines or connections can cause injuries or property damage.

#### **Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!**

- Do not attempt to disconnect, open or cut pressurized lines (risk of explosion).
- Observe the respective manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Before dismounting lines, relieve pressure and empty medium.
- Use suitable protective equipment (safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!



Environmental protection and disposal! The agents (e.g., fluids) used to operate the product might not be environmentally friendly. Dispose of agents harmful to the environment separately from other waste. Observe the national regulations of your country.

Safety instructions for electric drives and controls

## 3.4 Explanation of signal words and the Safety alert symbol

The Safety Instructions in the available application documentation contain specific signal words (DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION or NOTICE) and, where required, a safety alert symbol (in accordance with ANSI Z535.6-2011).

The signal word is meant to draw the reader's attention to the safety instruction and identifies the hazard severity.

The safety alert symbol (a triangle with an exclamation point), which precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION, is used to alert the reader to personal injury hazards.

---

### **DANGER**

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **will** occur.

---

---

### **WARNING**

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **could** occur.

---

---

### **CAUTION**

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, minor or moderate injury could occur.

---

---

### **NOTICE**

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, property damage could occur.

---

## 4 Combining the individual components

### 4.1 Documentations

See [chapter "Documentations" on page 25](#)

### 4.2 Brief description of individual components

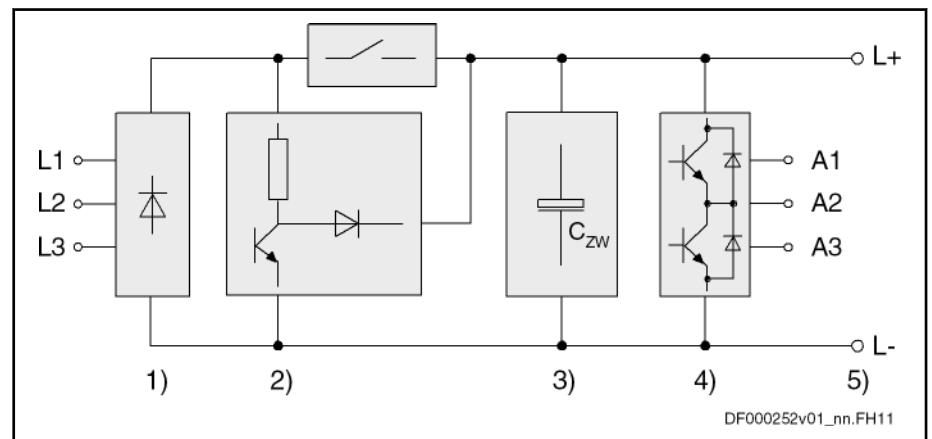
#### 4.2.1 HCS01 - brief description and design

**Brief description** The compact converters HCS01 are part of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs product range and are used to operate Rexroth IndraDyn motors or third-party motors.

HCS01 types:

- **02:** Mains connection voltage 3 AC 110 ... 230 V
- **03:** Mains connection voltage 3 AC 200 ... 500 V

**Design, block diagram**



- 1) Mains input with rectifier
- 2) Braking resistor circuit; charging current limitation
- 3) DC bus capacitances
- 4) Inverter stage with output to motor
- 5) DC bus connection

Fig. 4-1: HCS01 block diagram

### 4.3 Configuring the drive system

#### 4.3.1 Converter

The selection of the appropriate converter depends on

- Mains type
- Mains Voltage
- Mains supply (1-phase or 3-phase)

Combining the individual components

**Mains Type and Mains Voltage**

| IT mains<br>Mains grounded via outer conductor   |   | TN-S mains<br>TN-C mains<br>TT mains   |
|--|---|--|
| Mains voltage $\leq 3$ AC 230V   | Mains voltage 3 AC 230 ... 500 V  | To be noticed with 1-phase mains voltage: See table "Mains Supply"   |
| No transformer required  | Isolating transformer with grounded neutral point required  |  |
| HCS01.1E-W0003-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0006-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0009-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0013-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03 | HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03 | HCS01.1E-W0003-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0006-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0009-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0013-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02<br>HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03<br>HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03 |

Tab. 4-1: Mains Type and Mains Voltage

**Mains Supply**

| 1-phase <sup>1)</sup> | 3-phase             |   |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|
| 1 AC 110 ... 230 V    | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V  |   |
|                       | Autotransformer     | - |
|                       | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V  | - |
| HCS01.1E-W0003-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0006-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0009-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0013-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03 |   |
| Mains supply          |                     |   |
| Individual supply     | Individual supply   |   |
|                       | Group supply        |   |
|                       | Central supply      |   |

1) With 1-phase mains supply, you can connect the mains supply line to connector X3 at L1, L2 or L3

Tab. 4-2: Mains Supply

**DC bus coupling**

If energy compensation is to be available between the individual devices, the DC buses of these devices must be coupled. DC bus coupling restricts the selection of HCS01 converters.

See also [chapter 4.6.4 "DC bus coupling" on page 105](#).

Combining the individual components

## 4.3.2 Functional equipment

### HCS01 - ECONOMY vs. BASIC vs. ADVANCED

| Functional equipment                                     | HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*-...  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  | ...E-S3<br>(ECONOMY)   | ...B-ET<br>(BASIC)   | ...A-CC, ...A-ET<br>(ADVANCED)   |
| Communication  | sercos III / EtherCAT  | Multi-Ethernet<br>(incl. sercos III)   | CC: sercos III master (cross communication)<br>ET: Multi-Ethernet  |
|  |  | Alternative interface <sup>1)</sup><br>(PROFIBUS DP, CANopen) <sup>2)</sup>  | Alternative interface <sup>1)</sup><br>(Multi-Ethernet, PROFIBUS DP, CANopen)  |
| Encoder evaluation                                       | Multi-encoder interface  | Multi-encoder interface  | Multi-encoder interface  |
|  |  | Optional multi-encoder interface <sup>1)</sup>   | Optional multi-encoder interface <sup>1)</sup>   |
| Encoder emulation  | –  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Integrated safety technology                             | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control) | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)<br>S4 (Safe Motion)<br>S5 (Safe Motion)<br>SB (Safe Motion Bus) | L3 (Safe Torque Off)<br>L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)<br>S4 (Safe Motion)<br>S5 (Safe Motion)<br>SB (Safe Motion Bus) |
| IndraMotion  | –  | MLD-S <sup>3)</sup>  | MLD-S <sup>3)</sup><br>MLD-M <sup>3)</sup>   |
| Freely configurable digital inputs/outputs (incl. probe) | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Analog input   | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Control panel  |  |  |  |
| • With programming module function                       | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| • With slot for microSD memory card                      | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Optional I/O extension digital/analog                    | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| Engineering Port   | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |

- 1) **One** additional interface per converter for communication or encoder evaluation
- 2) If you use "PROFIBUS DP" or "CANopen" communication, the Multi-Ethernet function is no longer available. However, you can still use the connection points X24 and X25 as Engineering interfaces.
- 3) Firmware version MPx-17 or higher
- Tab. 4-3: *ECONOMY vs. BASIC vs. ADVANCED*

Combining the individual components

### 4.3.3 Firmware

#### Firmware and device types

| Device type                                 | Firmware   |
|---|--|
| HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*- <b>E-S3</b> (ECONOMY)  | FWA-INDRV*-MPE- <b>16</b> VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPE- <b>17</b> VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPE- <b>18</b> VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPE- <b>20</b> VRS-D5-x-NNN-NN |
| HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*- <b>B-ET</b> (BASIC)    | FWA-INDRV*-MPB- <b>16</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPB- <b>17</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPB- <b>18</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPB- <b>20</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx |
| HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*- <b>A-CC</b> (ADVANCED) | FWA-INDRV*-MPC- <b>17</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPC- <b>18</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx<br>FWA-INDRV*-MPC- <b>20</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx  |
| HCS01.1E-W00**-A-0*- <b>A-ET</b> (ADVANCED) | FWA-INDRV*-MPC- <b>20</b> VRS-D5-x-xxx-xx  |

Tab. 4-4: Device types and firmware

#### Firmware types

Structure of the firmware type designation

The type designation of the firmware consists of the following type code elements:

| Firmware    | Base package of variant ... | Version | Release | Language | Characteristic<br>Open-loop /<br>Closed-loop | Alternative<br>expansion<br>packages | Additive ex-<br>pansion<br>packages |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---------|---------|----------|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| FWA-INDRV*- | MPE-                        | 16      | VRS-    | D5-      | x-   | NNN-                                 | NN                                  |
|             |                             | 17      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
|             |                             | 18      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
|             |                             | 20      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
| FWA-INDRV*- | MPB-                        | 16      | VRS-    | D5-      | x-   | xxx-                                 | xx                                  |
|             |                             | 17      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
|             |                             | 18      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
|             |                             | 20      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
| FWA-INDRV*- | MPC-                        | 17      | VRS-    | D5-      | x-   | xxx-                                 | xx                                  |
|             |                             | 18      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |
|             |                             | 20      |         |          |  |                                      |                                     |

Tab. 4-5: Basic structure of the firmware type designation

Function-specific abbreviations in type designation of firmware

**Base package** (application and performance)

- **MPE** → Firmware with ECONOMY performance and ECONOMY functionality

## Combining the individual components

- **MPB** → Firmware with BASIC performance and BASIC functionality
- **MPC** → Firmware with ADVANCED performance and ADVANCED functionality

### *Characteristic (open-loop/closed-loop)*

- **0** → Open-loop
- **1** → Closed-loop

### *Alternative expansion packages*

- **NNN** → No alternative expansion package
- **SRV** → Functional package "Servo function"
- **SNC** → Functional package "Synchronization"
- **MSP** → Functional package "Main spindle"
- **ALL** → All alternative expansion packages

### *Additive expansion packages*

- **NN** → No additive expansion package
- **MA** → IndraMotion MLD Advanced (for MPB, MPC firmware only)
- **ML** → IndraMotion MLD for free programming; incl. use of technology functions (for MPB, MPC firmware)



The Rexroth sales representative in charge will help you with the currently available firmware types.

---



For detailed information, see the Functional Description of the firmware used (index entry "Overview of functions/functional packages").

Combining the individual components

**Firmware variants****MPx-xxVRS**

| Firmware variant →              |                            | MPE <sup>1)</sup> |    | MPB |    | MPC |    |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|----|-----|----|-----|----|
| Firmware characteristic →       |                            | OL                | CL | OL  | CL | OL  | CL |
| Base package                    | Basic functions            | ■                 | ■  | ■   | ■  | ■   | ■  |
|                                 | Base package "open-loop"   | ■                 | ■  | ■   | ■  | ■   | ■  |
|                                 | Base package "closed-loop" | -                 | ■  | -   | ■  | -   | ■  |
| Alternative functional packages | Servo function             | -                 | -  | -   | ■  | -   | ■  |
|                                 | Synchronization            | -                 | -  | ■   | ■  | ■   | ■  |
|                                 | Main spindle               | -                 | 2) | ■   | ■  | ■   | ■  |
| Additive functional package     | IndraMotion MLD            | -                 | -  | ■   | ■  | ■   | ■  |

**MPE**

Single-axis firmware with Economy performance

**MPB**

Single-axis firmware with Basic performance

**MPC**

Single-axis firmware with Advanced performance

**OL**

Open-loop characteristic

**CL**

Closed-loop characteristic

**1)**

For Economy firmware MPE, there is only one expanded base package available

**2)**

The expanded base package contains the "parameter set switching" function.

Tab. 4-6:

*Dependence of functional packages on hardware and firmware variant*



Combining the individual components

## 4.3.4 Motors

### IndraDyn

The table below contains an overview of the combinations of MSM motors with HCS01 converters.

| Motor   | HCS01              |       |       |       |       |                    |        |       |        |       |
|---------|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------|--------|-------|--------|-------|
|         | Size 1             |       |       |       |       |                    | Size 2 |       | Size 3 |       |
|         | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V |       |       |       |       | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V |        |       |        |       |
|         | W0003              | W0006 | W0009 | W0013 | W0018 | W0005              | W0008  | W0018 | W0028  | W0054 |
| MSM019A | ■                  | □     | □     | □     | -     | T                  | T      | -     | -      | -     |
| MSM019B | ■                  | □     | □     | □     | -     | T                  | T      | -     | -      | -     |
| MSM031B | ×                  | ■     | □     | □     | -     | T                  | T      | -     | -      | -     |
| MSM031C | -                  | ×     | ■     | □     | -     | T                  | T      | -     | -      | -     |
| MSM041B | -                  | -     | ×     | ■     | □     | -                  | T      | T     | -      | -     |

- Optimum combination
- Allowed combination (converter overdimensioned)
- ×
- T Allowed combination (transformer required, as operation of MSM motors only allowed with a maximum of 3 AC 230 V)
- Combination not allowed

Tab. 4-7: Combination of HCS01 converters and MSM motors

Combining the individual components

## Third-Party Motors

### General Information on Third-Party Motors

#### Why Use Third-Party Motors at Rexroth IndraDrive Cs Controllers?

Today, machine axes are mainly moved with electric drives. Motors of standard design are used in most cases, as this is the most cost-efficient solution.

#### Special Requirements

Due to special requirements at machine axes, constructional or safety-related aspects, it may be necessary for the machine manufacturer to use a motor construction diverging from the standard.

#### Motor Design not Included in Product Range

For these cases, there is the demand on drive suppliers to realize drives with motors that are not included in their own product ranges due to the special design.

#### Check Before Using Third-Party Motors

At drive controllers of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range, it is possible to use third-party motors. For this purpose, check whether the third-party motor complies with the requirements of use.

The Functional Description of the firmware contains forms for motor data. Procure the completed forms for the performance test of a third-party motor.

#### Which are the Important Directives?

In accordance with the legal regulations (EU Directive EMC 89/336/EEC and the German EMC laws), installations and machines must be designed and built in accordance with the present state-of-the-art of standardization.

In order to comply with the machine directives regarding "electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)", a conformity test of the drive system (motor with controller and connection design) must be carried out. The machine manufacturer must guarantee the test of the drive system and compliance with the directives.

#### Third-Party Motors to be Controlled

#### Motor Types

The following motor types can be controlled:

- Asynchronous motors, rotary
- Asynchronous motors, linear
- Synchronous motors, rotary
- Synchronous motors, linear

These motors can be operated within the scope of the technical data of the selected Rexroth IndraDrive Cs controller. If motors have been provided with a holding brake, it should be controlled via the drive controller. Make sure that the relevant technical data of the motor holding brake are complying with those of the holding brake output!



For third-party motors Rexroth, as a matter of principle, does not assume the guarantee for the power data at the motor shaft!

#### Synchronous Motors

For synchronous motors with motor encoder, the commutation offset must be set during commissioning. The drive firmware provides several methods for determining this offset so that it is possible to determine the value for different motor characteristics.

## Combining the individual components



Observe the restrictions in conjunction with the commutation offset determination when using synchronous motors! See firmware documentation, chapter "Drive Control", "Commutation Setting".

Possibly available reluctance property cannot be used for synchronous third-party motors! For third-party motors, it is impossible to determine fail-safe motor parameter values for using the reluctance property. The respective bit of "P-0-4014, Type of construction of motor" therefore mustn't be set!

## Requirements on Third-Party Motors

### General Information

For successful and fail-safe use of a third-party motor, check

- whether the third-party motor to be controlled satisfies the voltage loads
- which drive controller is suitable due to the motor torques to be delivered
- whether the third-party motor has the required minimum inductance
- whether the motor can be protected against inadmissible temperature rise in the case of overload (temperature evaluation)
- whether the mounted position measuring system can be evaluated by the drive controller or which position measuring system can be selected for kit motors

### Voltage Load of the Third-Party Motor

The voltage load of the insulation system of a motor occurring in practical application is mainly influenced by the following characteristics:

- The output variables of the drive controller which is used (feed the transmission distance)
- Cable parameters depending on cable design and length (determine the properties of the transmission distance, such as the attenuation)
- The motor design regarding capacitive and inductive properties (from the end of the transmission distance)

As a result of the variables, the insulation system of the third-party motor, as regards voltage, is loaded by the following values:

- Periodic peak voltage  $U_{pp}$  and
- Voltage change  $dv/dt$

The occurring periodic peak voltages at the motor terminals are caused by reflections at the motor cable end. The insulation of the motor is thereby loaded with a higher peak voltage than the one occurring at the output of the power section.



Determine the occurring voltage load at the **terminals** of the third-party motor in the application with all involved components.

### Using the HMF Motor Filter

Use voltage-reducing components (e.g. motor filter HMF), if one of the following criteria applies:

- Allowed voltage change ( $dv/dt$ ) of third-party motor: **< 5 kV/μs**
- **With mains voltage 3 AC 230 V ... 500 V:**

Allowed periodic peak voltage (crest value) of third-party motor between phase-phase and phase-housing: **< 1,500 V**

## Combining the individual components

- **With mains voltage up to 3 AC 230 V:**

Allowed periodic peak voltage (crest value) of third-party motor between phase-phase and phase-housing: **< 850 V**

(To operate motors which do not require any voltage-reducing components at this mains voltage, the switch-on threshold of the braking resistor must be reduced to DC 430 V for devices with the mains connection voltage identifier "03"!)

- The voltage change (dv/dt) and periodic peak voltage ( $U_{pp}$ ) at the motor terminals are influenced by the length and the electrical properties of the motor cable:
  - The longer the motor cable, the higher the degree of voltage overshoot (periodic peak voltage) at the motor-side cable end. With a cable length of approx. 25 m and more, the maximum periodic peak voltage occurs. Further voltage increase is not to be expected even with longer cables.
  - With cable lengths of less than 15 m, the periodic peak voltage is reduced, depending on the length and as compared to the specified maximum value, down to the DC bus voltage value.



Apart from the nominal current  $I_N$ , especially take the maximum allowed switching frequency of the power output stage ( $f_s$ ) into account with which the motor filter HMF may be operated.

Verify the success of the voltage-reducing measures by measuring the voltage at the motor terminals. Use an isolated measuring device!

### Minimum Inductance of Third-Party Motor

Depending on the drive controller used, the motor has to have a minimum value for inductance. The actually available inductance of a motor can be measured directly between two motor terminals by means of an inductance measuring bridge. The measurement has to be made for a complete motor wired for normal operation but not yet connected. During the measurement, one motor terminal remains open! For asynchronous motors, the measured value can only be used if the rotor doesn't have closed slots!

| Drive controller        | Minimum required motor inductance                                       |
|-------------------------|---|
| HCS01 with 3 × AC 230 V | $L_{U-V} = 60 \times 4 / (\sqrt{2} \times I_{Typ} \times f_s)$ (in mH)  |
| HCS01 with 3 × AC 400 V | $L_{U-V} = 80 \times 4 / (\sqrt{2} \times I_{Typ} \times f_s)$ (in mH)  |
| HCS01 with 3 × AC 480 V | $L_{U-V} = 116 \times 4 / (\sqrt{2} \times I_{Typ} \times f_s)$ (in mH) |

$I_{Typ}$  Maximum current of drive controller according to type code (rms value)

$f_s$  Desired switching frequency in kHz

Tab. 4-8: Minimum Inductances Depending on Drive Controller Data, Supply Units and Supply Voltage

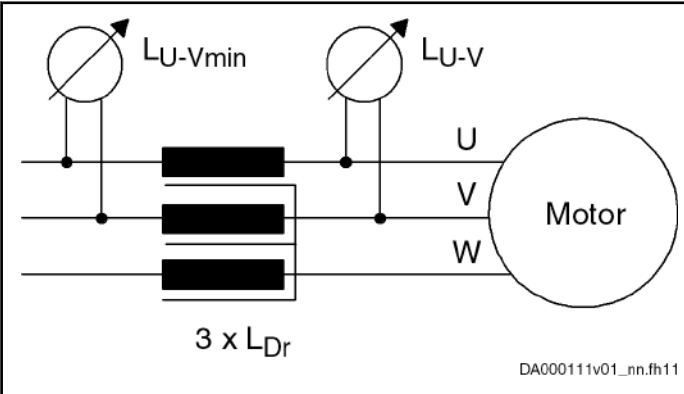
Install a three-phase choke in the motor feed wire, if the inductance of the third-party motor is smaller than indicated in the table above. This choke has to increase the inductance that can be measured between two motor terminals to the minimum value.

## Combining the individual components



When the inductance is measured, different inductance values can be determined at different rotor positions within one pole pair distance of the motor. The average value is relevant for the check of the minimum value.

Correct values can only be determined when the motor is **in standstill!**

| Available third-party motor   | Planned third-party motor   |
|---|---|
|  <p><math>L_{Dr} = 0.5 \times (L_{U-Vmin} - L_{U-V})</math> (inductance measurement with 1 kHz)</p> <p>Fig. 4-2: Mounting of <math>3 \times L_{Dr}</math> (Three-Phase Choke)</p>  | <p>Calculate the leakage inductance (asynchronous motor) or inductance (synchronous motor) of the third-party motor by means of the single-phase equivalent circuit diagram (manufacturer's specification!).</p> <p>Determine choke by means of calculation, if necessary.</p> <p>It is recommended that you contact Rexroth!</p> |
| <p>Requirements on the choke:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <math>I_{n\_Dr} \geq I_{n\_Mot}</math><br/>The rated current of the choke has to be greater than or equal to the rated motor current.</li> <li>• Depending on the maximum speed, the choke is loaded with the respective output frequency and the PWM frequency of the drive controller.</li> <li>• The insulation class has to correspond at least to that of the motor or has to be sized for higher temperatures.</li> <li>• The voltage load of the choke depends on the drive controller used.</li> </ul> |   |

Tab. 4-9: Data for Possibly Required Choke

### Temperature Evaluation of Third-Party Motor

Only operate such motors with incorporated temperature sensor at Rexroth IndraDrive Cs controllers so that the motor can be thermally monitored by the drive controller and protected against destruction by too high temperature rise (see "P-0-0512, Temperature sensor").

When, in exceptional cases, you would like to operate third-party motors without temperature sensor at Rexroth IndraDrive Cs controllers, you must determine the thermal time constants of motor housing (P-0-4035) and motor winding (P-0-4034, P-0-4037). By means of its temperature model, the firmware can correctly reflect the cooling situation of the motor.



In case the motor housing or fan is dirty, this worsens the cooling situation of the motor and protection against thermal overload is therefore insufficient!

## Combining the individual components

**Requirements on the Encoder of the Third-Party Motor****Motor Encoder of Asynchronous Third-Party Motor**

Asynchronous motors can also be controlled by Rexroth IndraDrive Cs controllers in "open-loop" operation (without motor encoder). In "closed-loop" operation (with motor encoder), a relative measuring system is sufficient for asynchronous motors.

**Motor Encoder of Synchronous Third-Party Motor**

For fail-safe drives with synchronous third-party motors at Rexroth IndraDrive Cs controllers, the following possible combinations or restrictions have to be taken into account when selecting the measuring system:

| Drive range           | Motor measuring system | Synchronous third-party motor |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Rexroth IndraDrive Cs | Absolute               | ■                             |
|                       | Relative               | □                             |

- Advantageous combination  
 □ Combination is possible (restrictions specific to application),  
 commissioning may be more complicated!

Tab. 4-10: Possible Combinations of Synchronous Third-Party Motor and Motor Measuring System



The drive controller can evaluate measuring systems as motor encoder when they are contained in "P-0-0074, Encoder type 1 (motor encoder)".

For information on absolute and relative measuring systems, see section "Measuring Systems" of firmware documentation!

**Motor Encoder Resolver - Notes on Selection**

Resolvers must first be checked as to whether they are suited as motor encoders. To check whether they can be evaluated by the drive controllers, the following resolver data are required:

- Data of resolver system to be compared must be available at 8 kHz
- Ratio
- Current consumption
- DC resistance of stator
- Number of poles
- Phase shift

By means of the resolver data, check whether the supply voltage of the encoder interface and the signal levels of the encoder tracks are sufficient.

**Notes on Selection and Commissioning****Selecting the Controller as Regards Continuous Current**

The drive controller required for the respective motor is determined by comparing the motor data to the device data.

## Combining the individual components



The continuous current of the drive controller should be greater than the continuous current of the motor.

The continuous power of the drive controller must be greater than the required average power!

### Selecting the Connection Technique

For the available power cables and encoder cables, see documentation "Rexroth Connection Cables IndraDrive and IndraDyn".

### Notes on Commissioning



For further information, notes on commissioning and supporting documents (e.g., forms for entering the required data) see firm-ware documentation.

## 4.3.5 Cables

### Motor power cables

#### Selection

How to select a suitable motor power cable:

See documentation "Rexroth Connection Cables IndraDrive and IndraDyn" (R911322949).

#### Allowed cable lengths

Allowed cable lengths at ambient temperature  $T_{a\_work} \leq 40\text{ °C}$  according to EN 60 204:

| HCS01.1E-...-A-02 | PWM frequency [kHz] |      |      |     |
|-------------------|---------------------|------|------|-----|
|                   | 4                   | 8    | 12   | 16  |
| W0003             | 40 m                | 20 m | 15 m | 5 m |
| W0006             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0009             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0013             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0018             |                     |      |      |     |
| HCS01.1E-...-A-03 |                     |      |      |     |
| W0005             | 75 m                | 38 m | 25 m | -   |
| W0008             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0018             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0028             |                     |      |      |     |
| W0054             |                     |      |      |     |

Tab. 4-11: Allowed motor cable lengths

Combining the individual components

## Encoder cables

### MSM motors

|               | HCS01  |       |       |       |       |                    |       |        |       |        |
|---------------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------|-------|--------|-------|--------|
|               | Size 1   |       |       |       |       |                    |       | Size 2 |       | Size 3 |
|               | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V   |       |       |       |       | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V |       |        |       |        |
| Motor         | W0003  | W0006 | W0009 | W0013 | W0018 | W0005              | W0008 | W0018  | W0028 | W0054  |
| MSM019A-...-C | RKG0033; <a href="#">RKG0041</a> ; RKG0034 (extension, optional) |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM019B-...-C |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM031B-...-C |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM031C-...-C |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM041B-...-C | RKG0033; <a href="#">RKG0041</a> ; RKG0034 (extension, optional) |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     |        |
| MSM019A-...-M | RKG0062; <a href="#">RKG0065</a> ; RKG0063 (extension, optional) |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM019B-...-M |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM031B-...-M |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM031C-...-M |  |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     | -      |
| MSM041B-...-M | RKG0062; <a href="#">RKG0065</a> ; RKG0063 (extension, optional) |       |       |       |       |                    |       | -      | -     |        |

- Combination not allowed

Tab. 4-12: Encoder cables for HCS01 converters and MSM motors

Encoder cable length See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

### MSK Motors

See documentation "Rexroth Connection Cables IndraDrive and IndraDyn" → Selection for Encoder Cables.

## 4.4 Installation conditions

### 4.4.1 Ambient and operating conditions

#### WARNING

Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!

Exclusively operate the device

- with plugged on connectors (even if there haven't been any lines connected to the connectors) and
- with connected equipment grounding conductor!

#### Control cabinet

The devices in the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs product range, as well as their additional components (except for some braking resistors), have to be mounted in control cabinets.

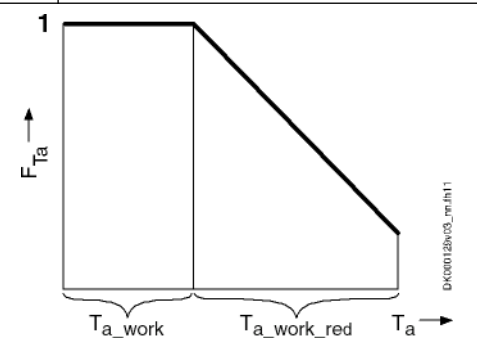
Check that the ambient and operating conditions, in particular the control cabinet temperature, are observed by calculating the heat levels in the control cabinet. Afterwards, make the corresponding measurements to confirm



## Combining the individual components

that ambient and operating conditions have actually been observed. The power dissipation is indicated in the technical data of the individual components as an important input value for calculating the heat levels.

### Ambient and operating conditions

| Description   | Symbol   | Unit | Value  |
|---|--|------|--|
| Conductive dirt contamination   |  |      | Not allowed<br>(You can protect the devices against conductive dirt contamination, e.g., by mounting them in control cabinets with a degree of protection of IP54 in accordance with IEC529.)    |
| Degree of protection (IEC529)   |  |      | IP20   |
| Use within scope of CSA / UL  |  |      | For use in NFPA 79 applications only.  |
| Temperature during storage  |  |      | see <a href="#">chapter 5.4 "Storing the components" on page 120</a>   |
| Temperature during transport  |  |      | see <a href="#">chapter 5.3 "Transporting the components" on page 120</a>  |
| Allowed mounting position<br>Definition of mounting positions: see <a href="#">chapter "Mounting Positions of Components" on page 67</a>  |  |      | G1   |
| Installation altitude   | $h_{nom}$  | m    | 1000   |
| Ambient temperature range   | $T_{a\_work}$  | °C   | 0 ... 40   |
| <b>Derating vs. Ambient temperature:</b><br>The performance data is reduced by the factor $F_{Ta}$ in the ambient temperature range $T_{a\_work\_red}$ :<br>$F_{TA} = 1 - [(T_a - 40) \times f_{Ta}]$<br>Example: With an ambient temperature $T_a = 50^\circ\text{C}$ and a load factor $f_{Ta} = 2\%$ , the rated power is reduced to<br>$P_{DC\_cont\_red} = P_{DC\_cont} \times F_{Ta} =$<br>$P_{DC\_cont} \times (1 - [(50 - 40) \times 0.02]) = P_{DC\_cont} \times 0.8$<br>Operation at ambient temperatures outside of $T_{a\_work}$ and $T_{a\_work\_red}$ is not allowed! |  |      |  |
|   | $T_{a\_work\_red}$   | °C   | 40 ... 55  |
|   | $f_{Ta}$   | %/K  | Load factor: see technical data for each component (data for cooling and power dissipation → derating of $P_{DC\_cont}$ , $P_{BD}$ , $I_{out\_cont}$ at $T_{a\_work} < T_a < T_{a\_work\_red}$ ) |

## Combining the individual components

| Description   | Symbol   | Unit             | Value                          |
|---|--|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Derating vs. installation altitude:</b><br>At an installation altitude $h > h_{nom}$ , the performance data <sup>2)</sup> reduced by factor $f$ is available.<br>At an installation altitude in the range $h_{max\_with-out}$ to $h_{max}$ , an isolating transformer has to be installed on the drive system mains connection.<br>Use above $h_{max}$ is not allowed! |  |                  |                                |
|   | $h_{max\_with-out}$                              | m                | 2000                           |
|   | $h_{max}$  | m                | 4000                           |
| <b>Simultaneous derating for ambient temperature and installation altitude</b>  | Allowed;<br>reduce with factors $f$ and $f_{Ta}$ |                  |                                |
| Relative humidity   |  | %                | 5 ... 95                       |
| Absolute humidity   |  | g/m <sup>3</sup> | 1 ... 29                       |
| Moisture condensation   |  |                  | Not allowed                    |
| Climatic category (IEC 721)   |  |                  | 3K3                            |
| Allowed pollution degree (EN 50178)   |  |                  | 2                              |
| Allowed dust, steam   |  |                  | EN 50178 Tab. A.2              |
| Vibration sine: Amplitude (peak-peak) at 10 ... 57 Hz <sup>1)</sup>   |  | mm               | 0.15                           |
| Vibration sine: Acceleration at 57 ... 150 Hz <sup>1)</sup>   |  | g                | 1                              |
| Overvoltage category  |  |                  | III (according to IEC 60664-1) |

1)

According to EN 60068-2-6

2)

Reduced performance data for drive controllers: permitted DC bus continuous power, permitted mains voltage, braking resistor continuous power, continuous current

Tab. 4-13:

Ambient and operating conditions


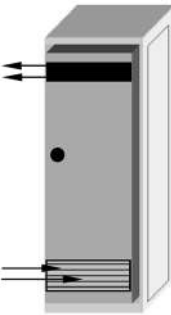
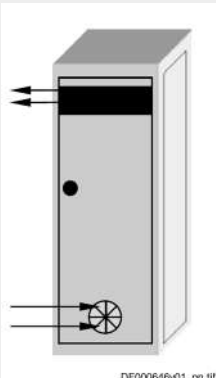
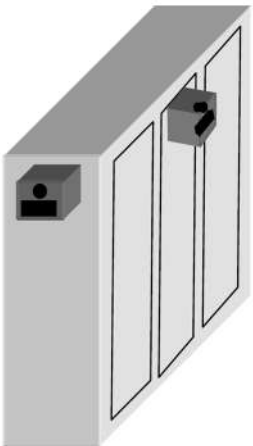
## 4.4.2 Control cabinet design and cooling



The only mounting position allowed for supply units and drive controllers to be installed in control cabinets is G1.

Combining the individual components

Possibilities of heat dissipation

| Closed control cabinet with air circulation   | Closed control cabinet with heat exchanger  | Control cabinet with fan   | Closed control cabinet with air conditioning unit   |
|---|---|--|---|
| <br>DF000644v01_nn.tif | <br>DF000645v01_nn.tif | <br>DF000646v01_nn.tif | <br>DF000647v01_nn.tif |
| $P_Q \sim 400\text{ W}$   | $P_Q \sim 1700\text{ W}$  | $P_Q \sim 2700\text{ W}$   | $P_Q \sim 4000\text{ W}$  |

$P_Q$  Dissipated heat output  
Tab. 4-14: Possibilities of heat dissipation

The section below describes the "control cabinet with fan".

Requirements for control cabinets with fan

**NOTICE**

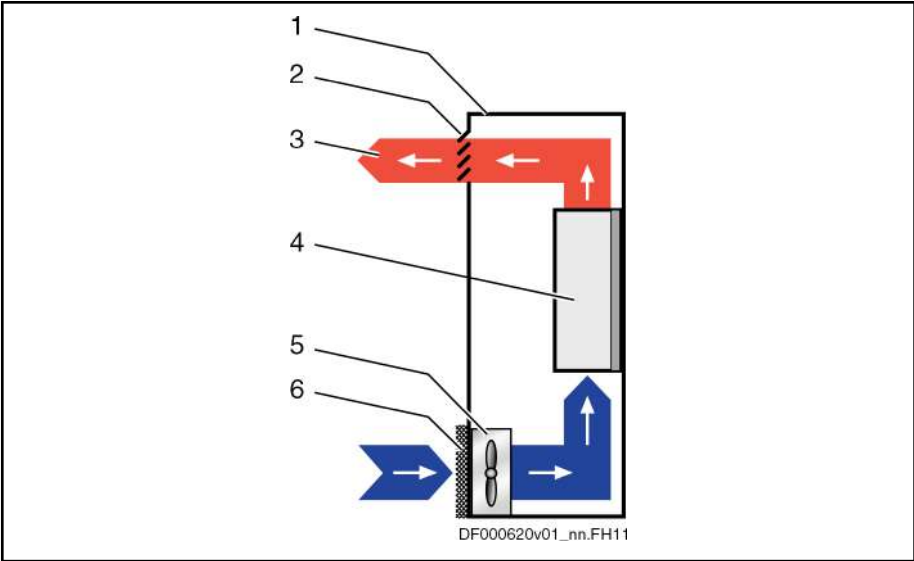
Risk of damage by unclean air in the control cabinet!

Operating a control cabinet with a fan, but without the corresponding filters, can damage the devices or cause malfunction.

- Install filters at the air intake opening of the control cabinet so that unclean air cannot get into the control cabinet.
- Service the filters at regular intervals according to the dust loading in the environment.
- Only replace the filters when the fan has been switched off, because otherwise the fan sucks in the dirt coming off the filter and the dirt gets into the control cabinet.

Combining the individual components

Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)



- 1 Control cabinet
- 2 Air outlet opening
- 3 Heat discharge
- 4 Device in control cabinet
- 5 Control cabinet fan
- 6 Filter at air intake opening

Fig. 4-3: Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)

Only clean air gets into the control cabinet through the filter at the air intake opening. The control cabinet fan behind the air intake opening conveys the air into the control cabinet and generates overpressure in the control cabinet. The overpressure prevents unclean air from getting into the control cabinet through possibly existing leaky points (leaky cable ducts, damaged seals, etc.).

4.4.3 UL ratings

This chapter contains:

- Limit values for use within the scope of CSA / UL
- Applied standards (CE conformity, UL listing)

Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

| Description                              | Symbol              | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|---------------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Short circuit current rating             | SCCR                | A rms | 42000                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rated input voltage, power <sup>1)</sup> | U <sub>LN_nom</sub> | V     | 1 or 3 x AC 110...230      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rated input current                      | I <sub>LN</sub>     | A     | 1.8 or 0.6                 | 2.8 or 1.2                 | 5.0 or 2.3                 | 8.3 or 4.5                 | 12.8 or 9.6                |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23            |                     |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

Combining the individual components

| Description                   | Symbol    | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|-------------------------------|-----------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Output voltage                | $V_{out}$ | V    | 3 x AC 0...230             |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output current                | $I_{out}$ | A    | 1.1                        | 2.0                        | 3.0                        | 4.5                        | 7.6                        |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23 |           |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.

Tab. 4-15: HCS - Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

#### Ambient and operating conditions – UL ratings

| Description                              | Symbol       | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|--|--------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Short circuit current rating             | SCCR         | A rms | 42000                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rated input voltage, power <sup>1)</sup> | $U_{LN,nom}$ | V     | 3 x AC 200...500           |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rated input current                      | $I_{LN}$     | A     | 1.5                        | 2.5                        | 5.0                        | 10.0                       | 28.0                       |
| Output voltage                           | $V_{out}$    | V     | 3 x AC 0...500             |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output current                           | $I_{out}$    | A     | 1.7                        | 2.7                        | 7.6                        | 11.5                       | 21.0                       |
| Last modification: 2013-01-10            |              |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.

Tab. 4-16: HCS - Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

## 4.4.4 Compatibility with foreign matters

All Rexroth controls and drives are developed and tested according to the state-of-the-art technology.

As it is impossible to follow the continuing development of all materials (e.g. lubricants in machine tools) which may interact with the controls and drives, it cannot be completely ruled out that any reactions with the materials we use might occur.

For this reason, before using the respective material a compatibility test has to be carried out for new lubricants, cleaning agents etc. and our housings/ materials.

## 4.5 Mechanical project planning

### 4.5.1 Drive controller

#### Dimensional Drawings

##### Options for Mounting

- **Standard mounting:**

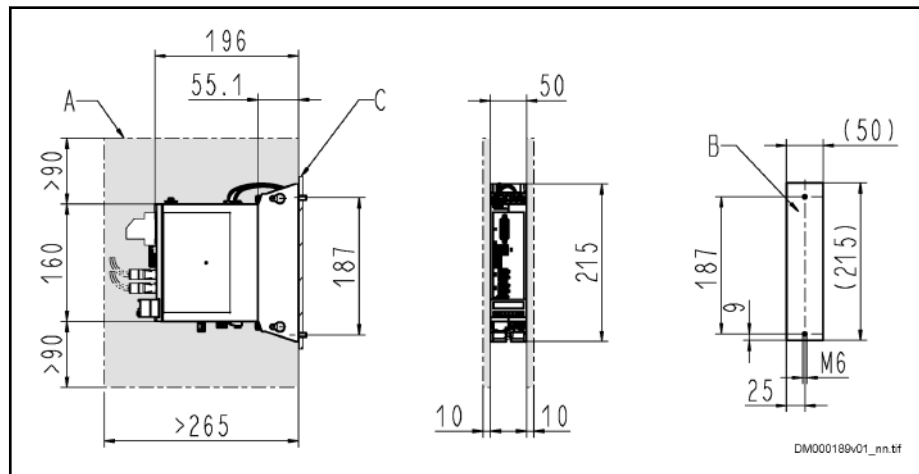
The back of the device is directly mounted to the mounting surface in the control cabinet

- **Left-hand or right-hand mounting:**

The left or right side of the device is directly mounted to the mounting surface in the control cabinet

## Combining the individual components

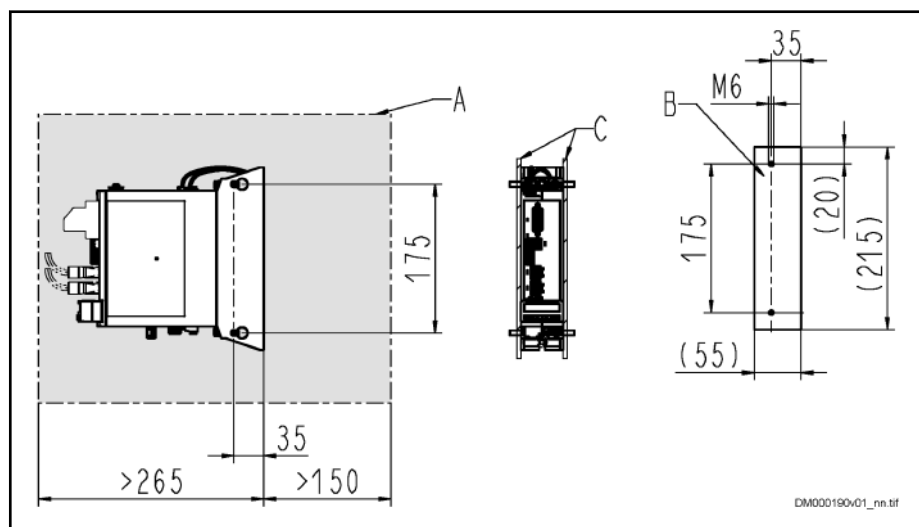
## HCS01.1E-W0003/5/6/8/9/13 Standard mounting:



- A** Minimum mounting clearance  
**B** Boring dimensions  
**C** Mounting surface

Fig. 4-4: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0003/5/6/8/9/13 (Standard Mounting)

## Left-hand or right-hand mounting:

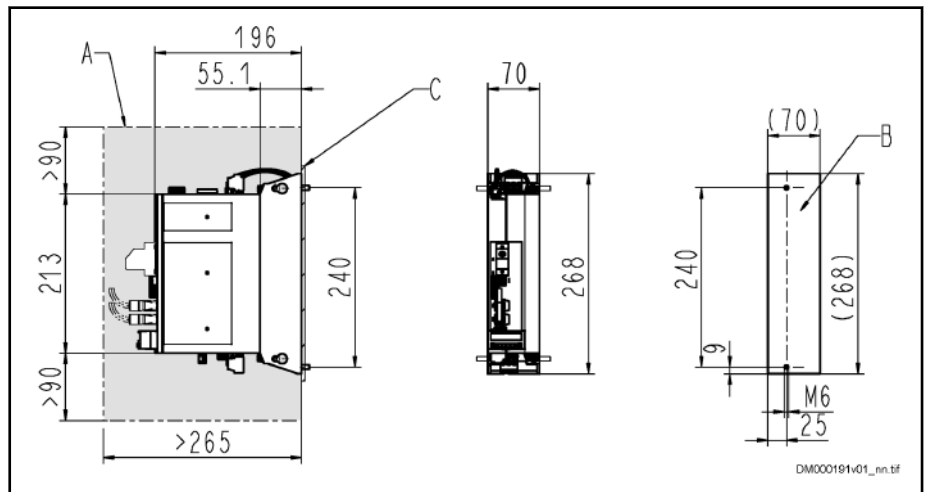


- A** Minimum mounting clearance  
**B** Boring dimensions  
**C** Mounting surface

Fig. 4-5: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0003/5/6/8/9/13 (Left-Hand or Right-Hand Mounting)

## Combining the individual components

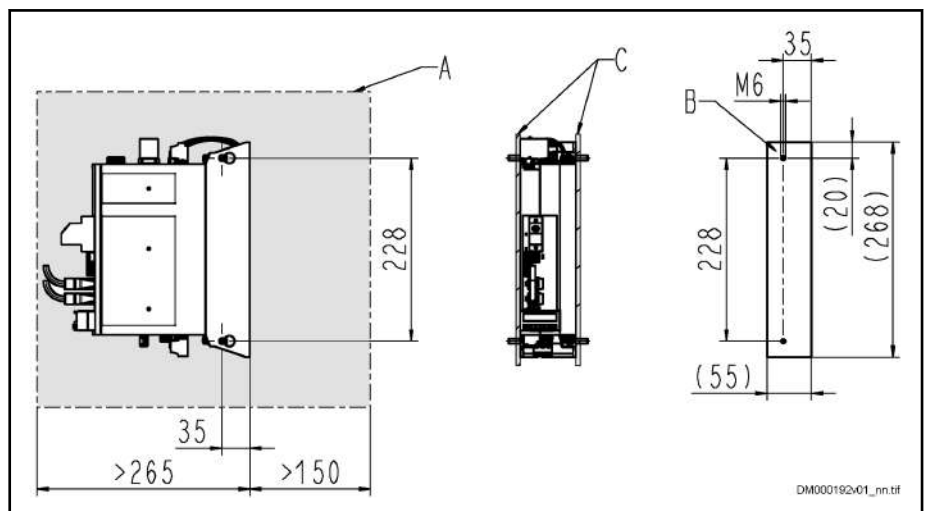
### HCS01.1E-W0018/28 Standard mounting:



- A** Minimum mounting clearance
- B** Boring dimensions
- C** Mounting surface

Fig. 4-6: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0018/28 (Standard Mounting)

### Left-hand or right-hand mounting:

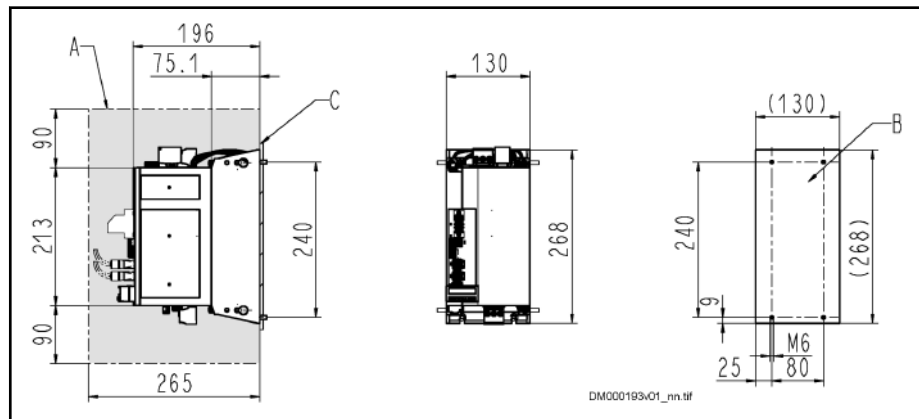


- A** Minimum mounting clearance
- B** Boring dimensions
- C** Mounting surface

Fig. 4-7: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0018/28 (Left-Hand or Right-Hand Mounting)

## Combining the individual components

## HCS01.1E-W0054 Standard mounting:



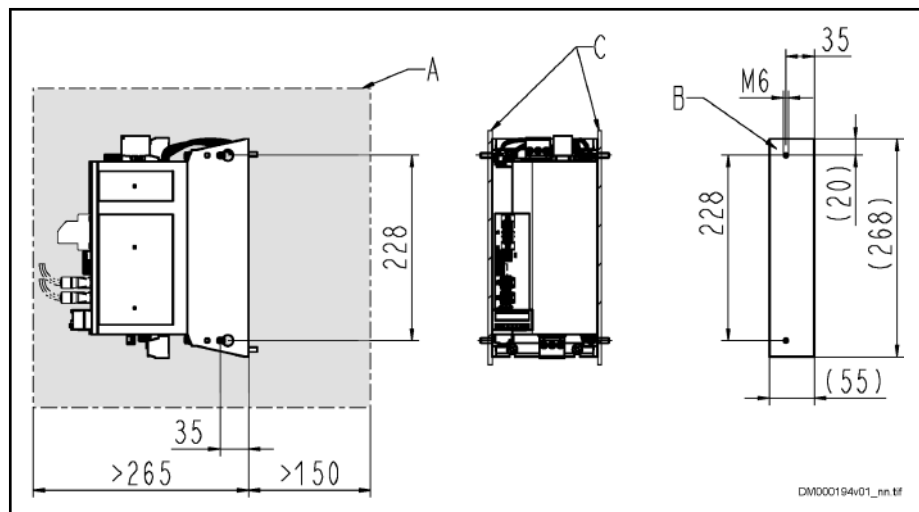
A Minimum mounting clearance

B Boring dimensions

C Mounting surface

Fig. 4-8: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0054 (Standard Mounting)

## Left-hand or right-hand mounting:



A Minimum mounting clearance

B Boring dimensions

C Mounting surface

Fig. 4-9: Dimensional Drawing HCS01.1E-W0054 (Left-Hand or Right-Hand Mounting)



Combining the individual components

## Dimensions, mass, insulation, sound pressure level

### Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

| Description   | Symbol          | Unit   | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|-----------------|--------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mass  | m               | kg     | 0.72                       |                            |                            |                            | 1.70                       |
| Device height <sup>1)</sup>   | H               | mm     | 215                        |                            |                            |                            | 268                        |
| Device depth <sup>2)</sup>  | T               | mm     | 196                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Device width <sup>3)</sup>  | B               | mm     | 50                         |                            |                            |                            | 70                         |
| Insulation resistance at 500 V DC   | R <sub>is</sub> | Mohm   | 10.00                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Capacitance against housing   | C <sub>Y</sub>  | nF     | 2 x 68                     |                            |                            |                            | 2 x 100                    |
| Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> <sup>4)</sup> | L <sub>P</sub>  | dB (A) | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23   |                 |        |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2) 3)  
4) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing  
According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at distance 1 m, out of cabinet; HCS types with order code -L\*\*\*: load-dependent

Tab. 4-17: HCS - Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

### Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

| Description   | Symbol          | Unit   | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|-----------------|--------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mass  | m               | kg     | 0.72                       |                            | 1.70                       |                            | 4.22                       |
| Device height <sup>1)</sup>   | H               | mm     | 215                        |                            | 268                        |                            |                            |
| Device depth <sup>2)</sup>  | T               | mm     | 196                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Device width <sup>3)</sup>  | B               | mm     | 50                         |                            | 70                         |                            | 130                        |
| Insulation resistance at 500 V DC   | R <sub>is</sub> | Mohm   | 10.00                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Capacitance against housing   | C <sub>Y</sub>  | nF     | 2 x 68                     |                            | 2 x 100                    |                            |                            |
| Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> <sup>4)</sup> | L <sub>P</sub>  | dB (A) | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23   |                 |        |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2) 3)  
4) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing  
According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at distance 1 m, out of cabinet; HCS types with order code -L\*\*\*: load-dependent

Tab. 4-18: HCS - Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Combining the individual components

**Temperatures, cooling, power dissipation, distances****Cooling and power dissipation data**

| Description  | Symbol                      | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |   |
|--|-----------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data  | T <sub>a_work</sub>         | °C   | 0...40                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Ambient temperature range for operation with reduced nominal data                                      | T <sub>a_work_red</sub>     | °C   | 0...55                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
|  | f <sub>Ta</sub>             | %/K  | 2.0                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Allowed mounting position  |                             |      | G1                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Cooling type   |                             |      | Not ventilated             |                            |                            | Forced ventilation         |                            |   |
| Volumetric capacity of forced cooling  | V                           | m³/h | -                          |                            |                            | 11.00                      | 56.00                      |   |
| Allowed switching frequencies <sup>1)</sup>  | f <sub>s</sub>              | kHz  | 4, 8, 12, 16               |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Power dissipation at I <sub>out_cont</sub> = 0 A; f <sub>s</sub> = f <sub>s</sub> (min.) <sup>2)</sup> | P <sub>Diss_0A_fs_min</sub> | W    | 4                          |                            | 6                          |                            | 8                          |   |
| Power dissipation at I <sub>out_cont</sub> = 0 A; f <sub>s</sub> = f <sub>s</sub> (max.) <sup>3)</sup> | P <sub>Diss_0A_fs_max</sub> | W    | 15                         |                            | 17                         |                            | 21                         |   |
| Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively <sup>4)</sup>         | P <sub>Diss_cont</sub>      | W    | 8.00                       | 10.00                      | 12.00                      | 20.00                      | 70.00                      |   |
| Minimum distance on the top of the device <sup>5)</sup>  | d <sub>top</sub>            | mm   | 90                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Minimum distance on the bottom of the device <sup>6)</sup>   | d <sub>bot</sub>            | mm   | 90                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Horizontal spacing on the device <sup>7)</sup>   | d <sub>hor</sub>            | mm   | 10                         |                            |                            |                            |                            | 0 |
| Temperature increase with minimum distances d <sub>bot</sub> ; d <sub>top</sub> ; P <sub>BD</sub>      | ΔT                          | K    | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12  |                             |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |   |

- 1) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"
- 2) 3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section; find interim values by interpolation to  $P_{Diss\_cont}$
- 4) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
- 5) 6) 7) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"
- Tab. 4-19: HCS - Data for cooling and power dissipation

Combining the individual components

### Cooling and power dissipation data

| Description  | Symbol                      | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |          |
|--|-----------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data  | T <sub>a_work</sub>         | °C   | 0...40                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Ambient temperature range for operation with reduced nominal data                                      | T <sub>a_work_red</sub>     | °C   | 0...55                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
|  | f <sub>Ta</sub>             | %/K  | 2.0                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Allowed mounting position  |                             |      | G1                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Cooling type   |                             |      | Forced ventilation         |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Volumetric capacity of forced cooling  | V                           | m³/h | 11.00                      |                            | 56.00                      |                            | 113.00                     |          |
| Allowed switching frequencies <sup>1)</sup>  | f <sub>s</sub>              | kHz  | 4, 8, 12, 16               |                            |                            |                            |                            | 4, 8, 12 |
| Power dissipation at I <sub>out_cont</sub> = 0 A; f <sub>s</sub> = f <sub>s</sub> (min.) <sup>2)</sup> | P <sub>Diss_0A_fs_min</sub> | W    | 23                         |                            | 30                         | 36                         | 55                         |          |
| Power dissipation at I <sub>out_cont</sub> = 0 A; f <sub>s</sub> = f <sub>s</sub> (max.) <sup>3)</sup> | P <sub>Diss_0A_fs_max</sub> | W    | 65                         |                            | 85                         | 91                         | 135                        |          |
| Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively <sup>4)</sup>         | P <sub>Diss_cont</sub>      | W    | 37.00                      | 46.00                      | 80.00                      | 120.00                     | 400.00                     |          |
| Minimum distance on the top of the device <sup>5)</sup>  | d <sub>top</sub>            | mm   | 90                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Minimum distance on the bottom of the device <sup>6)</sup>   | d <sub>bot</sub>            | mm   | 90                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Horizontal spacing on the device <sup>7)</sup>   | d <sub>hor</sub>            | mm   | 10                         |                            | 0                          |                            |                            |          |
| Temperature increase with minimum distances d <sub>bot</sub> ; d <sub>top</sub> ; P <sub>BD</sub>      | ΔT                          | K    | tbd                        | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |          |
| Last modification: 2014-09-23  |                             |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |          |

- 1) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"
- 2) 3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section; find interim values by interpolation to  $P_{Diss\_cont}$
- 4) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
- 5) 6) 7) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"
- Tab. 4-20: HCS - Data for cooling and power dissipation

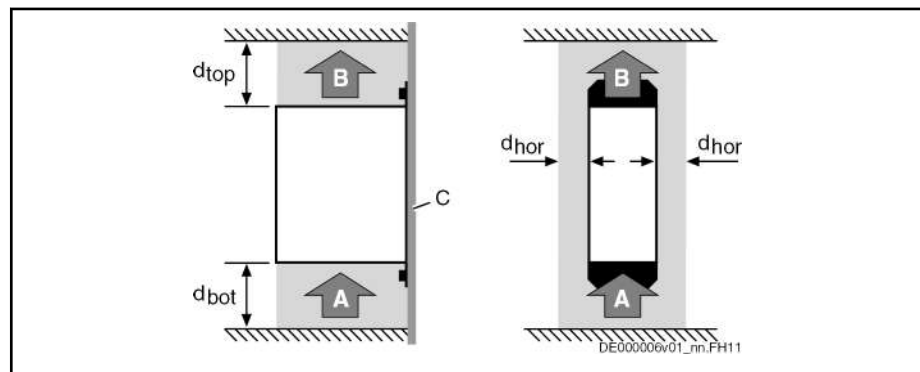
## Combining the individual components

**NOTICE****Property damage due to temperatures higher than 105 °C!**

Observe the indicated minimum distances!

Above the devices there may only be such materials which

- are not combustible
- are insensitive to the occurring high temperatures



- A Air intake  
 B Air outlet  
 C Mounting surface in control cabinet  
 $d_{top}$  Distance top  
 $d_{bot}$  Distance bottom  
 $d_{hor}$  Distance horizontal

Fig. 4-10: Air intake and air outlet at device

Combining the individual components

## Mounting Positions of Components

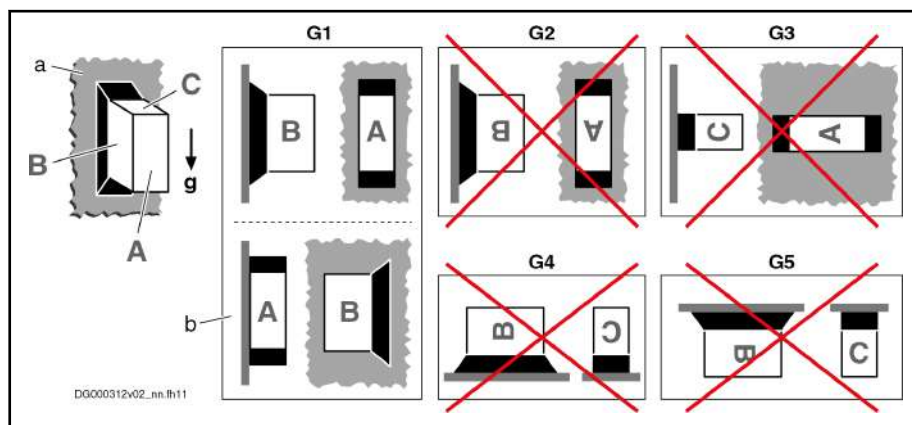
### NOTICE

Risk of damage to the components!

Only operate the components in their allowed mounting positions.

#### Allowed Mounting Position of the Components

Only the mounting position **G1** is allowed for HCS01 components.

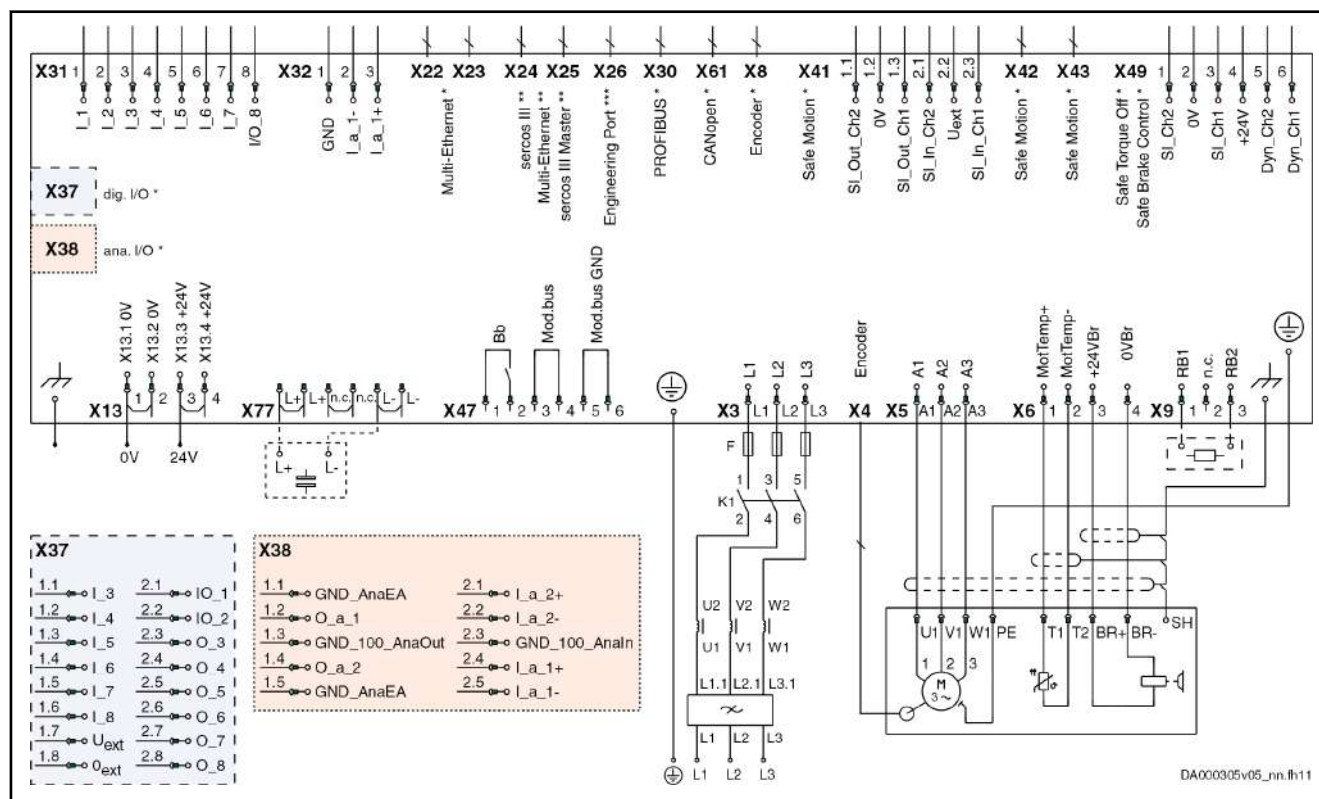


- A, B, C** Sides of a component: A = front side, B = left or right side, C = top side
- a** Mounting surface in control cabinet
- b** Mounting position G1, when side B of component directly mounted to mounting surface
- g** Direction of gravitational force
- G1** **Normal mounting position:** The natural convection supports the forced cooling air current. This avoids the generation of pockets of heat in the component.
- G2** 180° to normal mounting position
- G3** 90° to normal mounting position
- G4** Bottom mounting; mounting surface on bottom of control cabinet
- G5** Top mounting; mounting surface at top of control cabinet
- Fig. 4-11: Allowed Mounting Position of the Components*

## Combining the individual components

## 4.6 Electrical project planning

#### 4.6.1 Overall connection diagram



- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>*</b>            | Optional  |
| <b>**</b>           | <b>ECONOMY</b> = sercos III; <b>BASIC</b> = Multi-Ethernet; <b>ADVANCED</b> = sercos III master   |
| <b>***</b>          | Only exists at ADVANCED devices and devices with Engineering Port (EP option)   |
| <b>X6.1, X6.2</b>   | T1 and T2 are not available at MSM motors. For proper function of the motor thermal management connect the motor thermal sensor as described in the wiring diagram. Otherwise motor overtemperature sensing is not provided by the drive. For Rexroth motors with data memory in the motor encoder, such as MSK, the motor overload protection level is set automatically while connecting the motor to the drive. There is no adjustment necessary. Otherwise refer to the Rexroth firmware documentation. |
| <b>X31</b>          | No standard assignment preset; make the assignment by means of firmware documentation (see Functional Description, index entry "Digital inputs/outputs")  |
| <b>X47.1, X47.2</b> | For the "ready for operation" message of the device, the Bb relay contact (X47.1, X47.2) has to be wired  |
| <b>X47.3...6</b>    | Module bus only available at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices  |
| <b>X77</b>          | DC bus connection (L+, L-) only available at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices  |

*Fig. 4-12: Connection diagram*

## 4.6.2 Project planning of control voltage

### Control voltage for drive systems

Some components of a drive system have to be supplied with control voltage. When doing the project planning for control voltage supply, include the drive system component requirements:

- Depending on the motor cable length and whether or not motor holding brakes are used, the **permitted tolerances of the supply voltage**
- Power consumption of the **drive controllers**
- Power consumption of **other loads** (e.g., motor holding brakes, digital outputs)
- **Current carrying capacity of the connection point** for control voltage supply on the component for the purpose of looping through the control voltage to other components



#### PELV<sup>1)</sup> for 24V power supply unit

For the 24V supply of the devices of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

In the scope of CSA/UL, the data of the control-power transformer are limited to:

- Max. output voltage: 42.4 V<sub>peak</sub> or 30 V<sub>ac</sub>
- Max. output power: 10000 VA

### Sizing the control voltage supply

#### Determining the power requirements

##### Drive controller power requirements

The **total power requirements** of the control voltage supply of a drive controller result from the sum of the following power values:

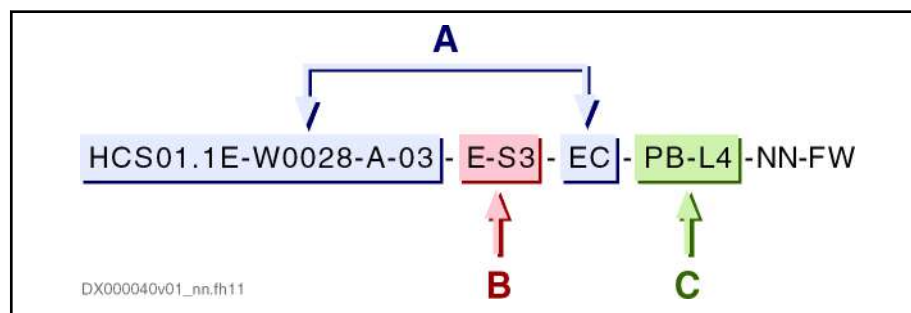
- Basic device (drive controller without connected encoders)
- Optional connection interfaces (e.g., communication, additional encoder evaluation)
- Connected encoder systems
- External loads

For the configuration of your drive controller, see the [type plate](#) and the [type code](#).

<sup>1)</sup> *Protective Extra Low Voltage*

## Combining the individual components

## Type code example:



- A** Basic device (maximum current [W0028 = 28 A], series [03], on-board connection point [EC])
- B** Control section design (E = Economy; S3 = sercos III)
- C** Optional connection points (PB = ProfiBus; L4 = safety technology [STO, SBC])

Fig. 4-13: Type code HCS01

The tables below contain the individual power values required by the drive controller. The power requirement of the supplying 24 V power supply unit results from the sum of these individual power values.

## Basic device power requirements

The power requirements of the basic device result from

- Maximum current of drive controller
- Control section design

Table 1: Basic device power requirements

| Maximum current, series <sup>1)</sup> | Control section design |                 |                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
|                                       | E-S3<br>(ECONOMY)      | B-ET<br>(BASIC) | A-CC<br>(ADVANCED) |
| HCS01.1E-...                          |                        |                 |                    |
| W0003-A-02-x-xx-EC                    | 8.1 W                  | 12.7 W          | 13.4 W             |
| W0006-A-02-x-xx-EC                    |                        |                 |                    |
| W0009-A-02-x-xx-EC                    |                        |                 |                    |
| W0013-A-02-x-xx-EC                    | 9.4 W                  | 14.3 W          | 15 W               |
| W0018-A-02-x-xx-EC                    | 12.7 W                 | 17.3 W          | 18 W               |
| W0005-A-03-x-xx-EC                    | 9.4 W                  | 14.3 W          | 15 W               |
| W0008-A-03-x-xx-EC                    |                        |                 |                    |
| W0018-A-03-x-xx-EC                    | 12.7 W                 | 17.3 W          | 18 W               |
| W0028-A-03-x-xx-EC                    |                        |                 |                    |
| W0054-A-03-x-xx-EC                    | 25.7 W                 | 30.3 W          | 31 W               |

<sup>1)</sup> The wild card **x-xx** in this column represents the control section design. Example: The basic device HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03-E-S3-EC has a power requirement of 12.7 W.

Tab. 4-21: Basic device power requirements

## Power requirements of the optional connection points

If the drive controller has optional connection points, the power requirements of the basic device are increased.



Combining the individual components

Table 2: Power requirement of the optional connection point

| Optional connection point<br>(Identifier in type code) | Power requirement<br>[W] | Explanation  |
|--|--------------------------|--|
| EC <sup>1)</sup>                                       | 1.1                      | <i>Encoder systems</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MSM motor encoder</li> <li>MS2N motor encoder</li> <li>MSK motor encoder</li> <li>Sin-cos encoder 1 V<sub>pp</sub>; HIPERFACE®</li> <li>Sin-cos encoder 1 V<sub>pp</sub>; EnDat 2.1; EnDat 2.2</li> <li>Sin-cos encoder 1 V<sub>pp</sub>; with reference track</li> <li>5V TTL square-wave encoder; with reference track</li> <li>SSI encoder</li> </ul> |
| L3   | 1.0                      | STO (Safe Torque Off)  |
| L4   | 1.0                      | STO (Safe Torque Off)<br>SBC (Safe Brake Control)  |
| S4, S5, SB   | 2.5                      | Safe Motion  |
| PB   | 1.1                      | ProfiBus (communication)   |
| ET <sup>2)</sup>                                       | 2.7                      | Multi-Ethernet interface (communication)   |
| CN   | 1.5                      | CANopen  |
| EM   | 1.2                      | Encoder emulation  |
| EP   | < 0.3                    | Engineering Port   |

- 1) The power requirement of the on-board connection point EC (HCS01-1E-W00xx-A-0x-x-xx-**EC**) is already taken into account with the power requirement of the basic device (see table 1, column "Maximum current, series")
- 2) The power requirement of the on-board connection point ET (HCS01-1E-W00xx-A-0x-x-**ET**) is already taken into account with the power requirement of the basic device (see table 1, column "Maximum current, series")

Tab. 4-22: Power requirements of the optional connection points

Power requirements of the external loads

External loads include, for example,

- Encoder system of the motor
- Motor holding brake
- Load at a digital output

The drive controller has to supply the external loads with power.

## Combining the individual components

Table 3: Power requirements of the external loads

| External load          | Power requirement   |
|------------------------|---|
| 5 V encoder system     | $P = I_{\text{Encoder}} \times 5 \text{ V} \times 1.75^{1), 5)}$  |
| 12 V encoder system    | $P = I_{\text{Encoder}} \times 12 \text{ V} \times 1.25^{1), 5)}$ |
| Load at digital output | $P = I_{\text{Load}} \times U_{\text{N3}}^{2), 4)}$               |
| Motor holding brake    | $P = I_{\text{Brake}} \times U_{\text{N3}}^{3), 4)}$              |

- 1)  $I_{\text{encoder}}$  : Current consumption of encoder system  
 2)  $I_{\text{load}}$  : Current consumption of external load  
 3)  $I_{\text{brake}}$  : Current consumption of motor holding brake  
 4)  $U_{\text{N3}}$  : Control voltage supply of drive controller  
 5) The sum of the power consumption of all connected encoder systems incl. encoder emulation cannot exceed **6 W**.

Tab. 4-23: Power requirements of the external loads

**Calculation formula** The total power consumption ( $P_{\text{N3}}$ ) from the 24 V control voltage of a drive controller is calculated with:

$$P_{\text{N3}} = P_{\text{basic device}} + \Sigma P_{\text{optional connection points}} + \Sigma P_{\text{external loads}}$$

## Example of calculation

| Component   |                             | Power requirement  |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03-B-ET-EC-PB-L4-NN-FW</b>  |                             |  |
| Basic device  | HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03-B-ET-EC | 17.3 W   |
| Optional connection point   | PROFIBUS "PB"               | 1.1 W  |
| Optional connection point   | STO/SBC "L4"                | 1.0 W  |
| 12 V encoder system of motor  | 12 V / 200 mA               | $P = I_{\text{Encoder}} \times 12 \text{ V} \times 1.25 = 0.2 \text{ A} \times 15 \text{ V} = 3.0 \text{ W}$ |
| Motor holding brake   | 300 mA                      | $P = I_{\text{Brake}} \times U_{\text{N3}} = 0.3 \text{ A} \times 24 \text{ V} = 7.2 \text{ W}$              |
| Load at digital output  | 250 mA                      | $P = I_{\text{Load}} \times U_{\text{N3}} = 0.25 \text{ A} \times 24 \text{ V} = 6.0 \text{ W}$              |
| <b>Total power consumption <math>P_{\text{N3}} = P_{\text{Basic device}} + \Sigma P_{\text{Optional connection points}} + \Sigma P_{\text{External loads}}</math></b> |                             |  |
| <b><math>P_{\text{N3}} = 17.3 \text{ W} + 1.1 \text{ W} + 1.0 \text{ W} + 3.0 \text{ W} + 7.2 \text{ W} + 6.0 \text{ W} = 35.6 \text{ W}</math></b>                   |                             |  |

Tab. 4-24: Example of calculation

## Requirements on the 24V power supply unit



### PELV<sup>2)</sup> for 24V power supply unit

For the 24V supply of the devices of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

In the scope of CSA/UL, the data of the control-power transformer are limited to:

- Max. output voltage: 42.4 V<sub>peak</sub> or 30 V<sub>ac</sub>
- Max. output power: 10000 VA

The following **parameters** contain the essential electrical requirements on the 24 V power supply unit:

- **Output voltage** or output voltage range
- **Continuous power** which the 24 V power supply unit must supply during operation
- **Peak current** which the 24 V power supply unit has to supply when switching on

#### Required continuous power

The continuous power of the 24 V power supply unit has to be greater than the sum of the power consumptions  $P_{N3}$  of the components being supplied.

To select the 24 V power supply unit, determine the continuous current  $I_{N3}$  of all components:

$$I_{N3} = P_{N3} / U_{N3}$$

( $P_{N3}$  : power consumption of all components)

The calculated current  $I_{N3}$  corresponds to the continuous current of the 24 V power supply unit.

The power consumption is indicated as the maximum value of each component and can occur in **individual components**.

In drive systems with **several components**, the occurring power consumption under statistical assumptions will be lower than the calculated one.

#### Required peak current

When the 24 V control voltage unit is switched on, the 24 V power supply unit is loaded with the charging current of the capacitors from the connected components. This charging current is electronically limited in the components.

The required peak current of the power supply unit is calculated with:

$$I_{\text{PeakCurrent\_PowerSupplyUnit}} = 1.2 \times P_{N3} / U_{N3}$$

( $P_{N3}$  : power consumption of all components)

The power supply unit has to provide the calculated peak current  $I_{\text{PeakCurrent\_PowerSupplyUnit}}$  for at least one second.

### Installing the 24V supply

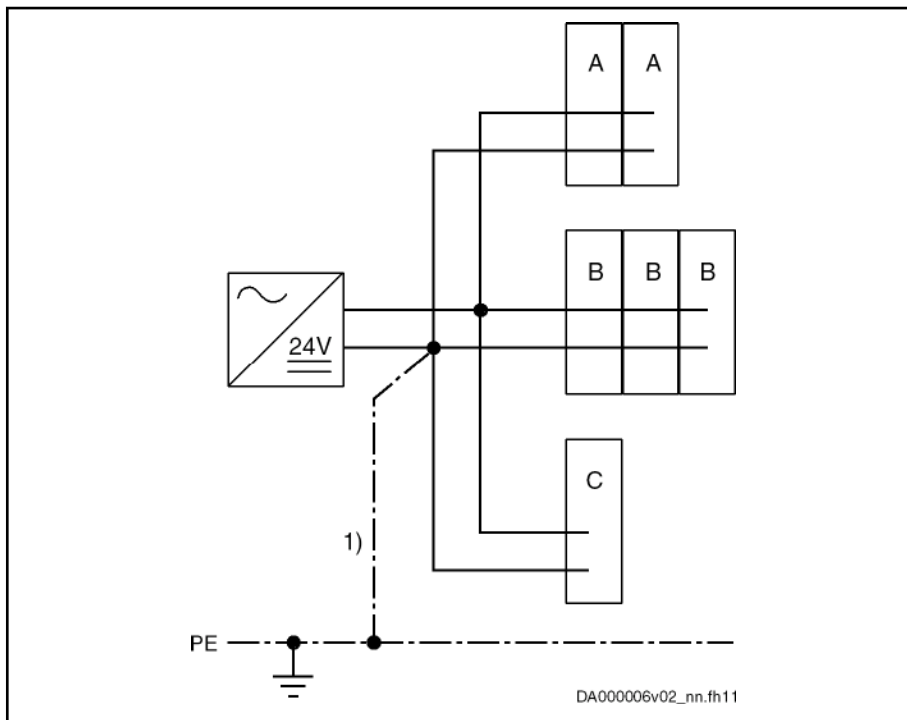
#### Notes on installation

- The 24 V supply of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs drive system components should in principle be installed in a **star** layout. This means it is necessary to run separate supply lines for each group of drive controllers or third-party components. This also applies to multiple-line arrangement in case of supply from, e.g., a supply unit.

2) *Protective Extra Low Voltage*

## Combining the individual components

- Route lines of sufficient size to reduce load-dependent voltage drops.
- For looping through the control voltage, observe the maximum current carrying capacity of the connection points. The maximum current carrying capacity limits the number of devices to which the control voltage can be looped through.



- A** Number of devices is limited to 2 components with a current consumption of  $\leq 5$  A / component
- B** Number of devices is limited to 3 components with a current consumption of  $\leq 3.3$  A / component
- C** Third-party component (e.g., PLC, valve, etc.)
- 1)** Connection to central ground point (e.g., PE earth-circuit connector)

Fig. 4-14: Installing the 24 V supply



If you use several 24 V power supply units:

- Output voltages of the 24 V power supply units must be within the permitted voltage range
- Interconnect reference conductors 0 V of the individual 24 V power supply units with low impedance
- Always switch 24 V power supply units on and off synchronously

### Chronological order of 24 V supply and mains voltage

Before mains voltage or DC bus voltage is applied to the components, they have to be supplied by the 24 V supply.

## Combining the individual components

### Looping through the control voltage

#### NOTICE

Property damage in case of error from line cross section being too small!

Observe the current carrying capacity of the connection points for control voltage supply at the components used.

You may only loop through the control voltage between the components, when the **sum** of current consumptions  $\Sigma I_{N3}$  of the individual components is smaller than **10 A** (current carrying capacity of the connection point X13).

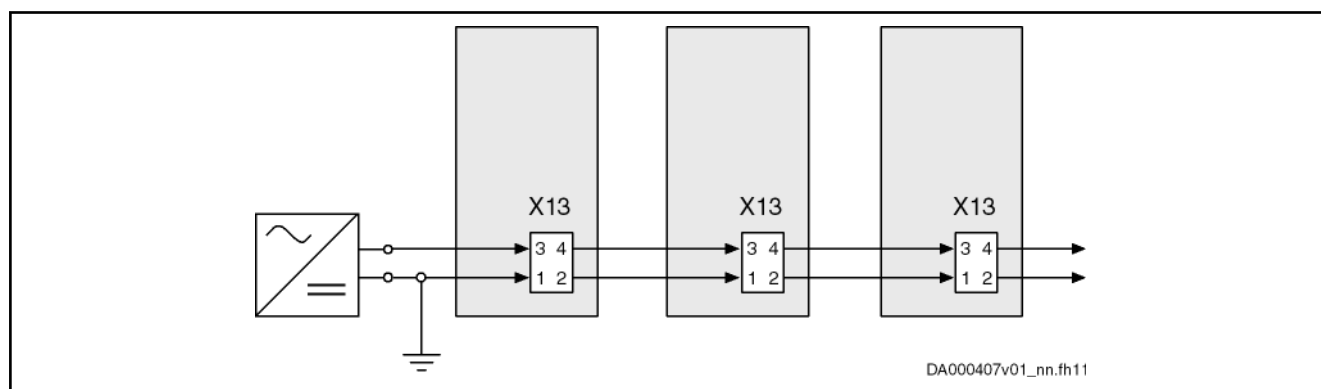


Fig. 4-15: Looping through the control voltage

Sample calculation for 3 drive controllers:

$$I_D = 3 \times \frac{P_{N3}}{U_{N3}}$$

Fig. 4-16: Continuous current

The result  $I_D$  has to be smaller than the specified current carrying capacity of the connection point.

## 4.6.3 Mains connection

### Residual-current-operated circuit breakers (RCD, RCCB) as additional fusing

#### General information

The following designations are used for residual-current-operated circuit breakers:

- RCCB (Residual-Current-Operated Circuit Breaker)
- RCD (Residual-Current-Operated Device)
- RCM (Residual-Current Monitoring Device)
- Earth-leakage circuit breaker (voltage-independent)
- Residual-current circuit breaker (voltage-dependent)



It is only to a limited extent that residual-current-operated circuit breakers can be used with Rexroth IndraDrive Cs systems.

If these circuit breakers are to be used, the company erecting the installation has to check the mutual compatibility of the residual-current-operated circuit breakers and installation or machine with the drive system, in order to avoid accidental triggering of the residual-current-operated circuit breaker. This has to be taken into account

## Combining the individual components

- for switch-on processes, due to high asymmetric inrush currents and
- during operation of the installation, due to leakage currents produced in normal operation.

**Cause of leakage currents**

For the purpose of stepless speed variation with a high degree of positioning accuracy and dynamic response, certain modulation procedures are necessary for drive systems. For physical reasons, these modulation procedures give rise to inevitable leakage current produced during normal operation. Especially with unbalanced loads of the mains phases or a large number of drives it can easily reach some amperes (rms value).

The leakage current is not sinusoidal but pulse-shaped. For this reason, measuring instruments normally sized for alternating currents in the range of 50 Hz are not suited. Use measuring instruments with rms value measuring ranges up to at least 150 kHz.

The degree of leakage current depends on the following features of the installation:

- Type of inrush current limitation
- Number, type and size of drives used
- Length and cross section of connected motor power cables
- Grounding conditions of the mains at the site of installation
- Unbalance of the three-phase system
- Types of filters and chokes connected in the incoming circuit
- EMC measures that are taken

If measures are taken to improve the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) of the installation (mains filters, shielded lines), the leakage current in the ground wire is inevitably increased, especially when switching on or in the case of mains unbalance. Given these operating conditions, residual-current-operated circuit breakers can trigger without an error having occurred.

The EMC measures are mainly based on capacitive short-circuiting of the interference currents within the drive system. Inductive filter measures can reduce the leakage currents, but affect the dynamic response of the drive and bring about

- higher construction volume
- higher weight
- expensive core material

**Possibilities of use****Motor cable lengths**

Keep the motor cables as short as possible. Only short motor cables do allow low leakage currents and thereby enable residual-current-operated circuit breakers to work.

**Types of residual-current-operated circuit breakers**

There are two types of residual-current-operated circuit breakers:

1. **Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to power pulse current** (type A acc. to IEC 60755)

These are normally used. However, it is only pulsating direct fault currents of a maximum of 5 mA and sinusoidal alternating fault currents that they switch off safely. This is why they are not allowed for devices that can generate smoothed direct fault currents. In the case of smoothed direct fault currents that can be produced in power supply units, mains rectifiers and drive controllers with power converters in B6 circuit,

## Combining the individual components

the residual-current-operated circuit breaker is not triggered. This blocks the triggering of a residual-current-operated circuit breaker sensitive to power pulse current in the case of ground contact, i.e. in the case of error.

**Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to power pulse current do not provide any protection against inadmissible contact voltage.**

### 2. Residual-current-operated circuit breakers sensitive to universal current (type B acc. to IEC 60755)

These circuit breakers are suited for smoothed direct fault currents, too, and safely switch off devices with B6 input rectifiers.

If a current with 30 mA triggers the residual-current-operated circuit breaker, it is possible to use a residual-current-operated circuit breaker with a higher tripping current for machine protection.

If this residual-current-operated circuit breaker triggers accidentally, too, check in how far the above conditions and dependencies can be improved (for example, by connecting current-compensated mains chokes in the incoming circuit, increasing the inrush current limitation).

#### Using isolating transformer to reduce leakage current in mains

If there is no improvement achieved and the residual-current-operated circuit breaker, due to specific mains conditions on site, has to be used nevertheless on the mains input side, connect an isolating transformer between mains connection and power connection of the drive system. This reduces the leakage current in the ground wire of the mains that is produced during normal operation which allows the residual-current-operated circuit breaker to be used. Connect the neutral point of the secondary winding of the isolating transformer to the equipment grounding conductor of the drive system.

Adjust the ground-fault loop impedance to the overcurrent protective device so that the unit can be switched off in the case of failure.

Before operating enable, check the correct function of the overcurrent protection device including activation in the case of failure.

#### Exclusive fusing by residual-current-operated circuit breaker

For drive systems with electronic drive controllers, exclusive protection by means of a residual-current-operated circuit breaker normally is not possible and not allowed.

Electronic equipment that has a nominal power higher than 4 kVA or is destined for permanent connection does not need residual-current-operated circuit breakers.

According to IEC 60204-1 and IEC 61800-5-1, the mains-side protection against indirect contact, i.e. in the case of insulation failure, has to be provided in a different way, for example by means of an overcurrent protection device, protective grounding, protective-conductor system, protective separation or total insulation.

#### Using residual-current-operated circuit breakers at HCS drive controllers

#### HCS drive controllers at residual-current-operated circuit breaker

Residual-current-operated circuit breakers can be used under the following conditions:

- Residual-current-operated circuit breaker is of type B (IEC60755)
- Trip limit of the residual-current circuit breaker is  $\geq 300$  mA
- Supplying TN-S mains
- Maximum length of motor cable 20 m in shielded design
- Use of an NFD03 mains filter

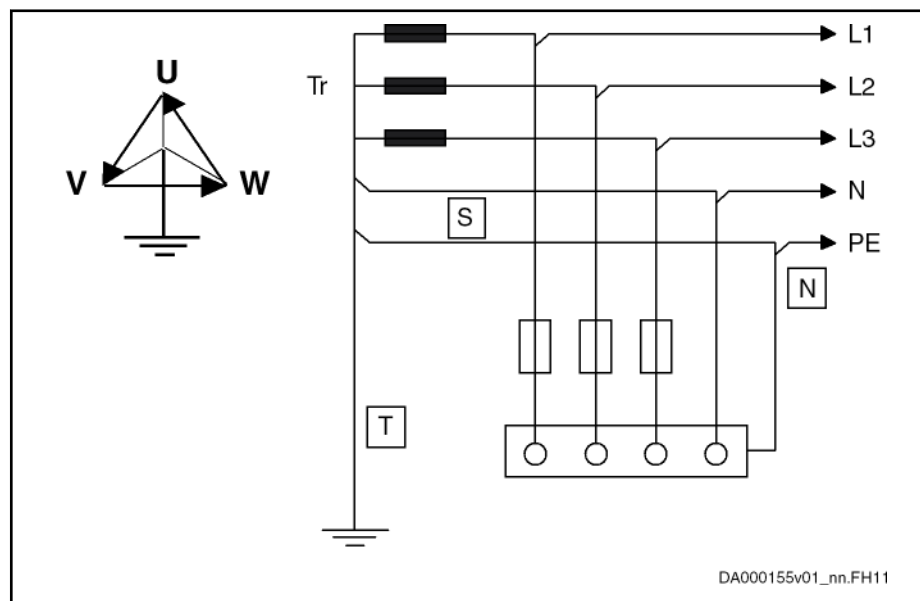
## Combining the individual components

- Each residual-current-operated circuit breaker only supplies one drive controller
- Only Rexroth components and accessories including cables and filters are used

## Mains types

**TN-S mains type**

The TN-S mains type is the usual mains type in Europe.



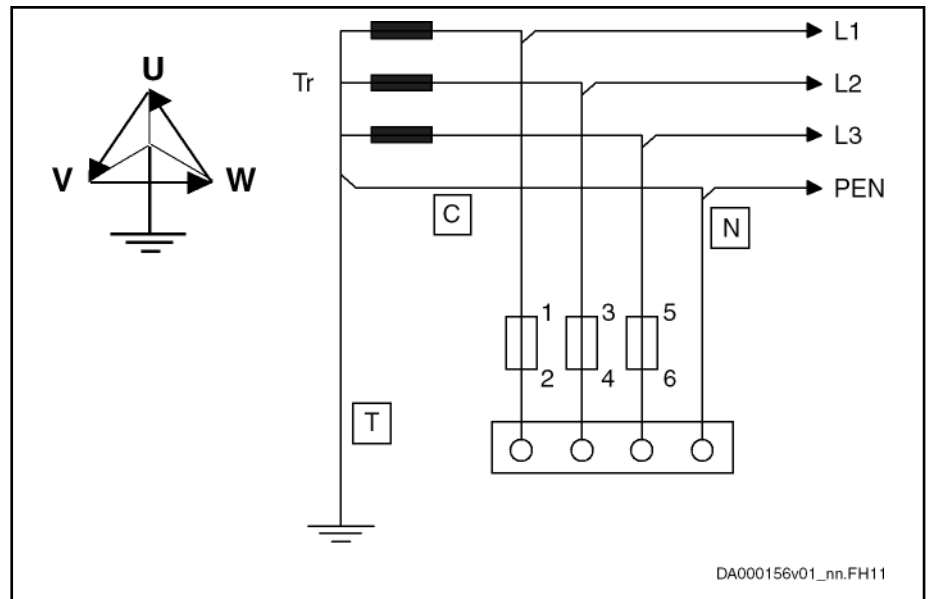
**T =** Direct grounding of a point (station ground)  
**N =** Exposed conductive parts directly connected to station ground  
**S =** Separate neutral conductor and equipment grounding conductor in entire mains

Fig. 4-17: TN-S mains type



## Combining the individual components

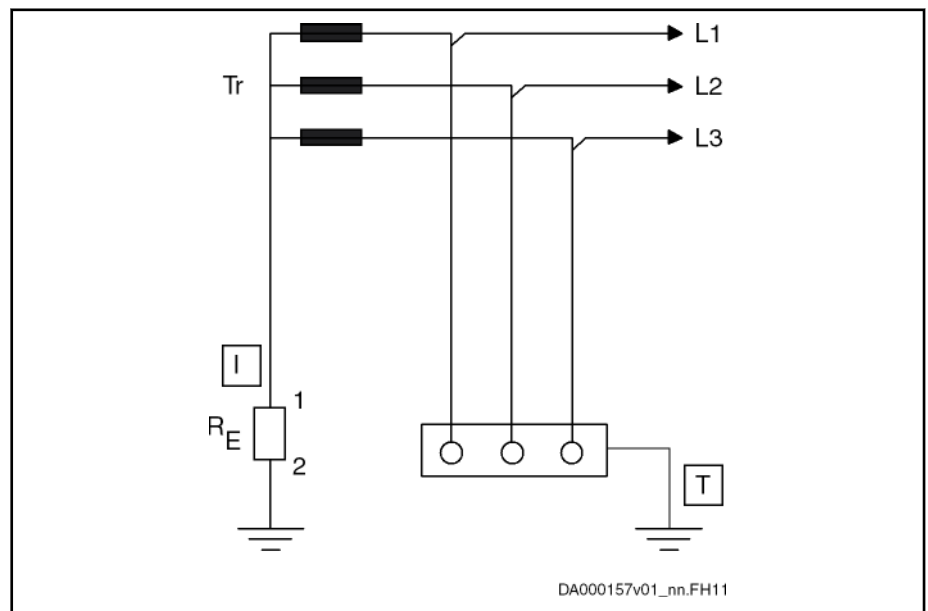
### TN-C mains type



- T =** Direct grounding of a point (station ground)  
**N =** Exposed conductive parts directly connected to station ground  
**C =** Neutral conductor and equipment grounding conductor functions in entire mains combined in a single conductor, the PEN conductor.

Fig. 4-18: TN-C mains type

### IT mains type



- I** Insulation of all active parts from ground or connection of one point to ground via an impedance  $R_E$   
**T** Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-19: IT mains type

## Combining the individual components

## Notes on project planning

**NOTICE****Risk to damage to devices from voltage arcing.**

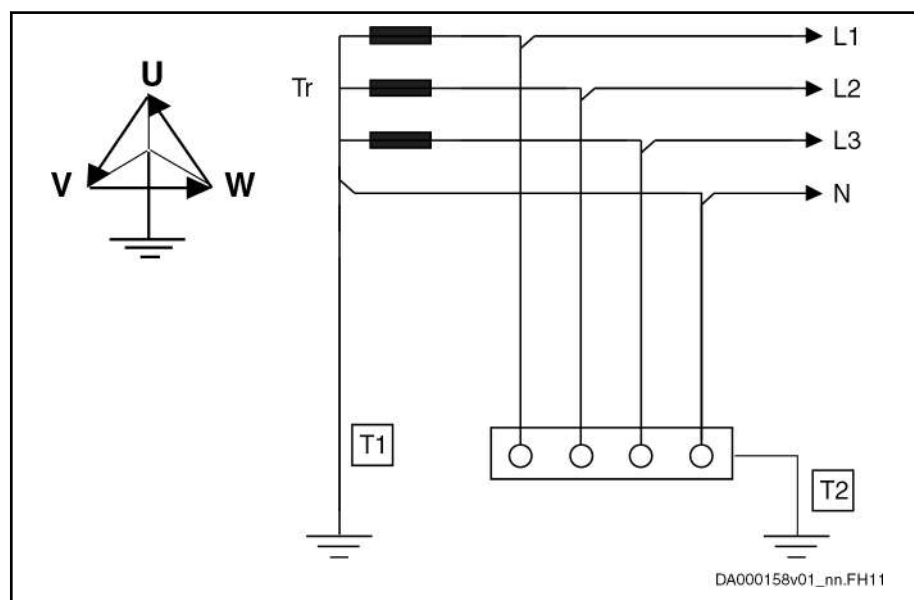
For applications with static charging (e.g., printing, packaging) and operation on IT mains type, use an **isolating transformer** with  $V_K \leq 2.5\%$ .

**Voltage increase in the case of ground fault!**

In case of a "ground fault" in the IT mains type, higher voltages against ground (device housing) affect the device as opposed to error-free operation.

For operation on the IT mains type, the drive system including mains filter and mains choke should be electrically separated from the mains by an **isolating transformer**.

In this way, the ground fault detection or monitoring can remain effective in the system.

**TT system**

T = Direct grounding of a point (station ground)

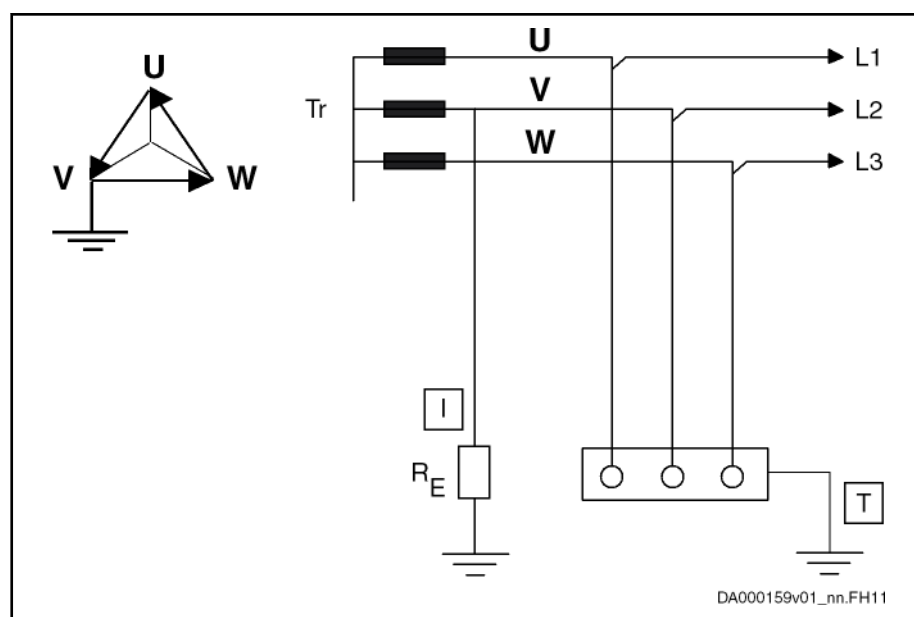
T = Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-20: TT mains system

The EMC requirements are only observed through specific measures (incl. special mains filters).

## Combining the individual components

### Mains with grounded outer conductor (Corner-grounded delta mains)



**I =** Isolation of all active parts from ground, connection of one phase - generally phase V - to ground or via an impedance  $R_E$   
**T =** Exposed conductive parts directly grounded, independent of grounding of current source (station ground)

Fig. 4-21: Mains with grounded outer conductor

#### Notes on project planning

The EMC requirements are only observed through specific measures (incl. special mains filters).



#### HNF01, HNS02, NFD mains filters on mains grounded with outer conductor

HNF01, HNS02 or NFD03.1 mains filters are not suited for operation on mains grounded with outer conductor. Use isolating transformers.

Allowed mains connection voltage: see technical data for each device

## Mains connection type

### Mains Supply

| 1-phase <sup>1)</sup> | 3-phase             |   |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|
| 1 AC 110 ... 230 V    | 3 AC 200 ... 500 V  |   |
|                       | Autotransformer     | - |
|                       | 3 AC 110 ... 230 V  | - |
| HCS01.1E-W0003-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0006-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0009-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0013-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03 |   |
| HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02   | HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03 |   |
| Mains supply          |                     |   |

## Combining the individual components

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Individual supply | Individual supply |
|                   | Group supply      |
|                   | Central supply    |

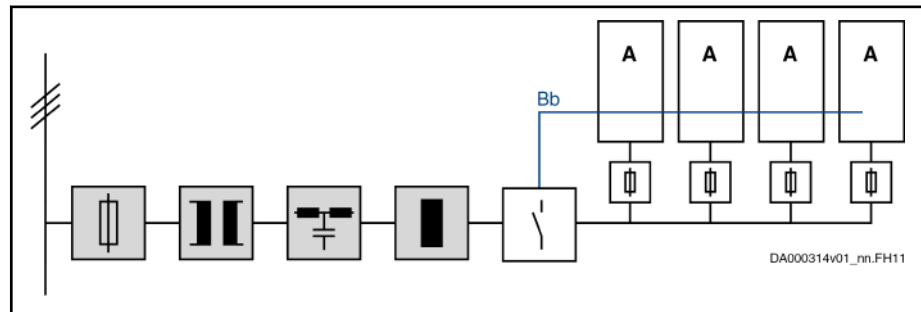
- 1) With 1-phase mains supply, you can connect the mains supply line to connector X3 at L1, L2 or L3

Tab. 4-25: Mains Supply

Wire the **ready relay contacts** of the drive controllers supplied with mains voltage in the control circuit of the mains contactor.

## Individual supply

Each component is **individually** connected to the supply mains. There is **no** DC bus connection between the devices.



Grayed out components: optional, depending on the application

**A** HCS01 component  
**Bb** Bb relay contact wiring

Fig. 4-22: Individual supply

**NOTICE****Risk of fire caused by missing fuses!**

Install a fuse **before each drive controller**. In case a short circuit occurs in the drive controller, a fuse provides optimum safety against overheating or fire (see also IEC 61800-5-1 and UL 508C).

For distribution in North America, single fuses are required for this type of mains connection (see UL 508A).

In the scope of international and European standards (IEC/EN, not North America), it is allowed to use a group fuse instead of the single fuses. When selecting the nominal current of the group fuse, observe the loop impedance, the line length and the line cross section of the mains supply feeder (see IEC 60204-1, chapter Appendix A).

Observe the data for dimensioning line cross sections and fuses (see also IEC 60204-1, UL 508A and NFPA 79).

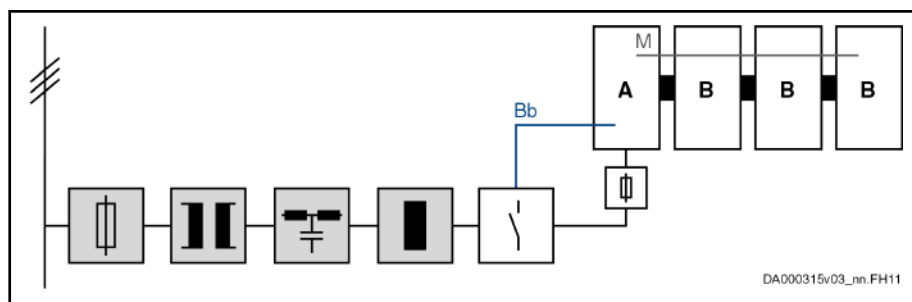
## Central supply



- Only HCS01.1E-W0028 and -W0054 components are suited for central supply.
- Central supply via HCS02.1, HCS03.1, HMOV01.1 or HMOV02.1 components is not allowed.
- Use the corresponding mains chokes to increase the DC bus continuous power.
- Wire the Bb relay contacts.

## Combining the individual components

**One powerful component** supplies other components via the common DC bus connection.



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application

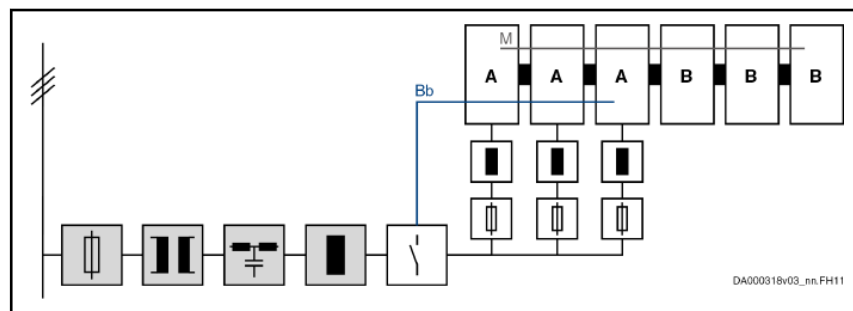
- A** Component HCS01 (more powerful than component B); connected to other components via DC bus
- B** Component HCS01 (less powerful than component A); connected to other components via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus

Fig. 4-23: Central Supply

### Group supply

- Option 1:

**Several powerful HCS01 components** (of the same size!) are connected to the mains and supply other components via the common DC bus connection. This requires balancing chokes between supply mains and components.



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application; the choke is used to reduce current harmonics

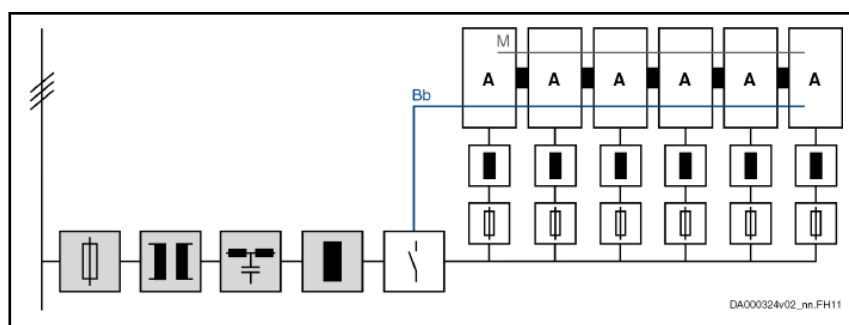
- A** Component HCS01 (more powerful than component B; all components A identical); connected to supply mains via balancing chokes; connected to other components via DC bus
- B** Component HCS01 (less powerful than component A); connected to other components via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus

Fig. 4-24: Group Supply; Several HCS01 Components Connected to Supply Mains

- Option 2:

**All HCS01 components** (of the same size!) are connected to the mains and interconnected via the common DC bus connection. This requires balancing chokes between supply mains and components.

## Combining the individual components



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application; the choke is used to reduce current harmonics

**A** Component HCS01 (all components A identical); connected to supply mains via balancing chokes; interconnected via DC bus

**Bb** Bb relay contact wiring

**M** Module bus (not obligatory)

Fig. 4-25: Group Supply; all HCS01 Components Connected to Supply Mains

**NOTICE****Risk of fire caused by missing fuses!**

Install a fuse **before each drive controller**. In case a short circuit occurs in the drive controller, a fuse provides optimum safety against overheating or fire (see also IEC 61800-5-1 and UL 508C).

For distribution in North America, single fuses are required for this type of mains connection (see UL 508A).

In the scope of international and European standards (IEC/EN, not North America), it is allowed to use a group fuse instead of the single fuses. When selecting the nominal current of the group fuse, observe the loop impedance, the line length and the line cross section of the mains supply feeder (see IEC 60204-1, chapter Appendix A).

Observe the data for dimensioning line cross sections and fuses (see also IEC 60204-1, UL 508A and NFPA 79).

**Parallel operation**

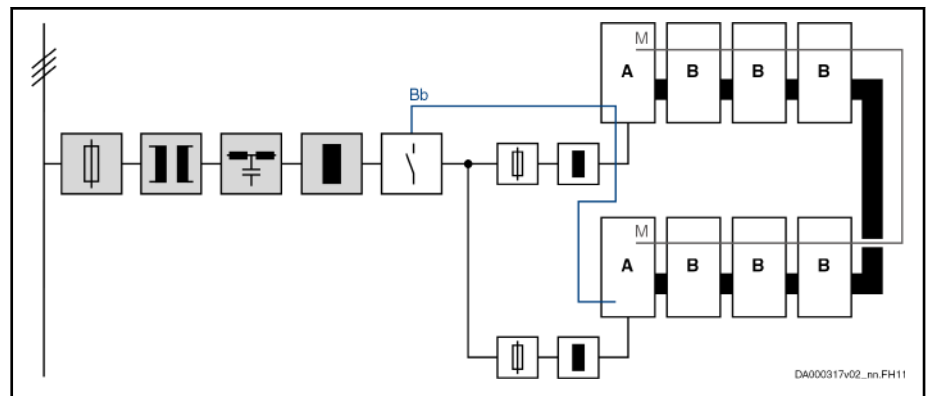
Group supply or central supply allows the HCS01 components to be operated in parallel to increase the DC bus continuous power.



Parallel operation of HCS01 components is only allowed under the following conditions:

- The components are of the same HCS01 range
- The infeeding HCS01 components are of the same type
- Additional chokes balance the mains current

## Combining the individual components



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application; the choke is used to reduce current harmonics

- A** Component HCS01 (more powerful than component B); connected to other components via DC bus
- B** Component HCS01 (less powerful than component A); connected to other components via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus

Fig. 4-26: Parallel operation



Connect the Bb relay contacts of all supplying components in series. You thereby ensure that the mains contactor is switched off in case there is an error in a component.

## Mains connected load and mains current

### Technical data of the components

- See [chapter 7.3.2 "Mains voltage" on page 233](#)
- See [chapter 7.3.3 "DC bus" on page 240](#)

### Calculating the mains-side phase current

The mains-side phase current is required for the following cases:

- Selecting mains contactor
- Determining fuses in the mains connection
- Determining line cross section
- Selecting other components in the mains connection (mains filter, mains choke)

#### Operation under rated conditions

For data on mains contactor, fuses and cross section in operation under rated conditions, see technical data of the respective component.

#### Operation at partial load

Operation at partial load can lead to smaller mains contactors, fuses and line cross sections.

If defined data for operation at partial load are available, the mains-side phase current can be determined as follows:

#### 1. Determine motor power

Take power of drive controller-motor combination from Rexroth IndraSize or calculate it.

## Combining the individual components

$$P_{mHa} = \frac{M_n \times n_n}{9550}$$

$P_{mHa}$  Mechanical nominal power for main drives (shaft output) [kW]

$M_n$  Nominal motor torque [Nm]

$n_n$  Nominal motor speed [min<sup>-1</sup>]

2. Determine **DC bus power** from motor power and efficiency

$$P_{DC} = \frac{M_{eff} \times n_m \times 2\pi}{60} \times k$$

$P_{DC}$  Required DC bus continuous power [W]

$M_{eff}$  Effective torque in Nm

$n_m$  Average speed in min<sup>-1</sup>

$k$  Factor for motor and controller efficiency = 1.25

3. Add **powers of all axes** at common DC bus and put them into relation to rated power of supply unit

⇒ Partial load of  $P_{DC\_cont}$  is available

4. Determine **power factor TPF** for partial load (TPF = Total Power Factor)  
For the value **TPF** at rated power and **TPF<sub>10</sub>** (at 10% of rated power), see technical data (mains voltage) of the component.

5. Calculate **mains connected load**

$$S_{LN} = \frac{P_{DC}}{TPF}$$

$S_{LN}$  Mains connected load [VA]

$P_{DC}$  DC bus continuous power [W]

$TPF$  Total Power Factor  $\lambda$

6. Calculate **mains-side phase current**

3-phase: 
$$I_{LN} = \frac{S_{LN}}{U_{LN} \sqrt{3}}$$

1-phase: 
$$I_{LN} = \frac{S_{LN}}{U_{LN}}$$

$I_{LN}$  Mains-side phase current in [A]

$S_{LN}$  Mains connected load [VA]

$U_{LN}$  Voltage between phases of mains [V]

7. Select **mains contactor**

8. Determine **mains circuit breaker and line cross section**

See [chapter "Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses "](#) on page 87



## Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses

### Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses in the supply feeder and branches to the drive system:

1. Determine current in supply feeder of drive system and correct it with correction factors for ambient temperature and bundling.  
(In the technical data of the components in section "Data for mains voltage supply", you can find standardized data for connection cross section and mains circuit breaker at operation under rated conditions.)
2. Determine country of use ("international except for USA/Canada" or "USA/Canada")
3. Determine installation type (e.g., B1 or B2)
4. In "Current carrying capacity" table row, select the value that is immediately above the value determined in the first step
5. In "Fuse" table row, read corresponding fuse
6. In "Cross section A ..." table row, read corresponding required cross section

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type B1

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B1 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 1.5  |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 1.5  |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 1.5  |
| 10  |     |     | 8.6   | 1.5  |
| 16  |     |     | 10.3  | 1.5  |
| 16  |     |     | 13.5  | 1.5  |
| 20  |     |     | 18.27   | 2.5  |
| 35  |     |     | 24.36   | 4  |
| 35  |     |     | 31.32   | 6  |
| 50  |     |     | 43.50   | 10   |
| 80  |     |     | 59.16   | 16   |
| 100   |     |     | 77.43   | 25   |
| 125   |     |     | 95.70   | 35   |
| 160   |     |     | 116.58  | 50   |
| 200   |     |     | 148.77  | 70   |
| 200   |     |     | 180.09  | 95   |
| 250   |     |     | 207.93  | 120  |
| 250   |     |     | 227.94  | 150  |
| 315   |     |     | 257.52  | 185  |
| 355   |     |     | 301.02  | 240  |

## Combining the individual components

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B1 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 400   |     |     | 342.78  | 300  |
| 315   | 160 |     | 238.03  | 2 × 70   |
| 400   | 160 |     | 288.14  | 2 × 95   |
| 400   | 200 |     | 332.69  | 2 × 120  |
| 400   | 200 |     | 364.70  | 2 × 150  |
| 500   | 250 |     | 412.03  | 2 × 185  |
| 630   | 315 |     | 481.63  | 2 × 240  |
| 630   | 315 |     | 548.45  | 2 × 300  |
| 400   |     | 125 | 312.42  | 3 × 70   |
| 500   |     | 160 | 378.19  | 3 × 95   |
| 500   |     | 160 | 436.65  | 3 × 120  |
| 630   |     | 200 | 478.67  | 3 × 150  |
| 630   |     | 200 | 540.79  | 3 × 185  |
| 800   |     | 250 | 632.14  | 3 × 240  |
| 800   |     | 315 | 719.84  | 3 × 300  |

Tab. 4-26: Line cross sections and fuses, B1 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-4

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type B2

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B2 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 0.75   |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 0.75   |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 0.75   |
| 10  |     |     | 8.5   | 0.75   |
| 16  |     |     | 10.1  | 1.0  |
| 16  |     |     | 13.05   | 1.5  |
| 20  |     |     | 17.40   | 2.5  |
| 25  |     |     | 23.49   | 4  |
| 35  |     |     | 29.58   | 6  |
| 50  |     |     | 40.02   | 10   |
| 63  |     |     | 53.94   | 16   |
| 80  |     |     | 69.60   | 25   |

Combining the individual components

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B2 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 100   |     |     | 86.13   | 35   |
| 125   |     |     | 102.66  | 50   |
| 160   |     |     | 129.63  | 70   |
| 200   |     |     | 155.73  | 95   |
| 200   |     |     | 179.22  | 120  |
| 224   |     |     | 195.75  | 150  |
| 250   |     |     | 221.85  | 185  |
| 315   |     |     | 258.39  | 240  |
| 355   |     |     | 294.93  | 300  |
|   | 125 |     | 207.41  | 2 × 70   |
|   | 160 |     | 249.17  | 2 × 95   |
|   | 160 |     | 286.75  | 2 × 120  |
|   | 200 |     | 313.20  | 2 × 150  |
|   | 200 |     | 354.96  | 2 × 185  |
|   | 250 |     | 413.42  | 2 × 240  |
|   | 315 |     | 471.89  | 2 × 300  |
|   |     | 100 | 272.22  | 3 × 70   |
|   |     | 125 | 327.03  | 3 × 95   |
|   |     | 160 | 376.36  | 3 × 120  |
|   |     | 160 | 411.08  | 3 × 150  |
|   |     | 200 | 465.89  | 3 × 185  |
|   |     | 200 | 542.62  | 3 × 240  |
|   |     | 250 | 619.35  | 3 × 300  |

Tab. 4-27: Line cross sections and fuses, B2 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-4

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type E

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|---|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |   |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 2   |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 4   |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 6   |
| 10  |     |     | 8.3   | 10  |

## Combining the individual components

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|---|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |   |
| 16  |     |     | 10.4  | 16  |
| 16  |     |     | 12.4  | 16  |
| 20  |     |     | 16.10   | 1.5   |
| 25  |     |     | 21.75   | 2.5   |
| 35  |     |     | 29.58   | 4   |
| 50  |     |     | 37.41   | 6   |
| 63  |     |     | 52.20   | 10  |
| 80  |     |     | 69.60   | 16  |
| 100   |     |     | 87.87   | 25  |
| 125   |     |     | 109.62  | 35  |
| 160   |     |     | 133.11  | 50  |
| 200   |     |     | 170.52  | 70  |
| 250   |     |     | 207.06  | 95  |
| 315   |     |     | 240.12  | 120   |
| 355   |     |     | 277.53  | 150   |
| 400   |     |     | 316.68  | 185   |
| 425   |     |     | 374.10  | 240   |
| 500   |     |     | 432.39  | 300   |
|   | 160 |     | 272.83  | 2 × 70  |
|   | 200 |     | 331.30  | 2 × 95  |
|   | 250 |     | 384.19  | 2 × 120   |
|   | 250 |     | 444.05  | 2 × 150   |
|   | 315 |     | 506.69  | 2 × 185   |
|   | 400 |     | 598.56  | 2 × 240   |
|   | 400 |     | 691.82  | 2 × 300   |
|   |     | 160 | 358.09  | 3 × 70  |
|   |     | 200 | 434.83  | 3 × 95  |
|   |     | 200 | 504.25  | 3 × 120   |
|   |     | 250 | 582.81  | 3 × 150   |
|   |     | 250 | 665.03  | 3 × 185   |
|   |     | 315 | 785.61  | 3 × 240   |
|   |     | 400 | 908.02  | 3 × 300   |

Tab. 4-28: Line cross sections and fuses, E according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-10

Combining the individual components

USA/Canada; installation type E

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |  |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub>        |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity I <sub>Z</sub> [A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |  |  |
| 2                          |     |     |     | 1.6  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 4                          |     |     |     | 3.3  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 6                          |     |     |     | 5  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 10                         |     |     |     | 8.3  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 16                         |     |     |     | 13   | 14 AWG                                 |
| 20                         |     |     |     | 15   | 14 AWG                                 |
| 25                         |     |     |     | 20   | 12 AWG                                 |
| 40                         |     |     |     | 30   | 10 AWG                                 |
| 70                         |     |     |     | 50   | 8 AWG                                  |
| 80                         |     |     |     | 65   | 6 AWG                                  |
| 100                        |     |     |     | 85   | 4 AWG                                  |
| 110                        |     |     |     | 100  | 3 AWG                                  |
| 125                        |     |     |     | 115  | 2 AWG                                  |
| 150                        |     |     |     | 130  | 1 AWG                                  |
| 175                        |     |     |     | 150  | 1/0 AWG                                |
| 200                        |     |     |     | 175  | 2/0 AWG                                |
| 225                        |     |     |     | 200  | 3/0 AWG                                |
| 250                        |     |     |     | 230  | 4/0 AWG                                |
| 300                        |     |     |     | 255  | 250 kcmil                              |
| 300                        |     |     |     | 285  | 300 kcmil                              |
| 350                        |     |     |     | 310  | 350 kcmil                              |
| 350                        |     |     |     | 335  | 400 kcmil                              |
| 400                        |     |     |     | 380  | 500 kcmil                              |
| 450                        |     |     |     | 420  | 600 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 460  | 700 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 475  | 750 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 490  | 800 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 520  | 900 kcmil                              |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 545  | 1000 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 590  | 1250 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 625  | 1500 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 650  | 1750 kcmil                             |

## Combining the individual components

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |  |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub>        |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity I <sub>Z</sub> [A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |  |  |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 665  | 2000 kcmil                             |
|                            | 200 |     |     | 300  | 2 × 1/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 225 |     |     | 350  | 2 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 250 |     |     | 400  | 2 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 300 |     |     | 460  | 2 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 300 |     |     | 510  | 2 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            | 350 |     |     | 570  | 2 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            | 350 |     |     | 620  | 2 × 350 kcmil                          |
|                            | 400 |     |     | 670  | 2 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            | 450 |     |     | 760  | 2 × 500 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 840  | 2 × 600 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 920  | 2 × 700 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 950  | 2 × 750 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 980  | 2 × 800 kcmil                          |
|                            | 800 |     |     | 1040   | 2 × 900 kcmil                          |
|                            | 800 |     |     | 1090   | 2 × 1000 kcmil                         |
|                            |     | 200 |     | 450  | 3 × 1/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 225 |     | 525  | 3 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 250 |     | 600  | 3 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 300 |     | 690  | 3 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 300 |     | 765  | 3 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 350 |     | 855  | 3 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 350 |     | 930  | 3 × 350 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 400 |     | 1005   | 3 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 450 |     | 1140   | 3 × 500 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 200 | 600  | 4 × 1/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 225 | 700  | 4 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 250 | 800  | 4 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 300 | 920  | 4 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 300 | 1020   | 4 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 350 | 1140   | 4 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 350 | 1240   | 4 × 350 kcmil                          |

## Combining the individual components

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |                                     |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------------|--|
| Fuse $I_N$                 |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity $I_Z$ [A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |                                     |  |
|                            |     |     | 400 | 1340                                | 4 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 450 | 1520                                | 4 × 500 kcmil                          |

Tab. 4-29: Line cross sections and fuses according to UL508A:2007, Table 28.1  
Dimensioning variables of the table values

1. Ambient temperature  $T_A$  of routed lines  $\leq 40$  °C
2. Temperature  $T_L$  at conductor at nominal current: 90 °C for UL-listed lines (USA/Canada) or 70 °C for PVC lines
3. The nominal current of the fuse is approx. 10-20% above the nominal current  $I_{LN}$  of the converter/supply unit or the determined current of the drive system.
4. Installation types:
  - B1 in accordance with IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. stranded wires routed in cable duct
  - B2 in accordance with IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. multi-core line routed in cable duct
  - E in accordance with EN 60204-1, e.g. multi-core line routed on open cable tray
  - In accordance with NFPA 79 (external wiring), UL508A (internal wiring), NEC, NFPA 70:
    - 1 cable with 3 conductors, 1 neutral conductor and 1 equipment grounding conductor
    - Routed in pipe on the wall

Internal wiring: Routing inside of control cabinet or inside of devices

External wiring: Routing outside of control cabinet

Field wiring: Data of cross sections of terminal connectors wired by the user (in the field)
5. Recommendation for design of the fuses:
  - **International except for USA/Canada:**
    - Fuse-link in accordance with IEC 60269-1, characteristic gG (fuses)
    - Circuit breakers in accordance with IEC 60898-1/2, type B or C
    - Circuit breakers in accordance with IEC 60947-2/6-2
  - **USA/Canada:**
    - Class J; 600 V

## Combining the individual components

**Correction factors**

For deviating dimensioning variables, the corresponding standards specify correction factors.

Below you can find the correction factors for ambient temperature and numbers of routed lines and circuits. If necessary, multiply the determined current in the supply feeder with these factors.

**Ambient temperature correction factor**

| Ambient temperature $T_A$ / °C                               | 30   | 35   | 40   | 45  | 50   | 55   | 60   |
|--|------|------|------|-----|------|------|------|
| Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.1    | 0.87 | 0.93 | 1.00 | 1.1 | 1.22 | 1.41 | 1.73 |
| Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(a) | 0.88 | 0.94 | 1.00 | 1.1 | 1.18 | 1.32 | 1.52 |

Tab. 4-30: Ambient temperature correction factor in accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007

**Correction factor for bundling lines (installation methods B2 and E) and circuits (installation method B1<sup>1)</sup>)**

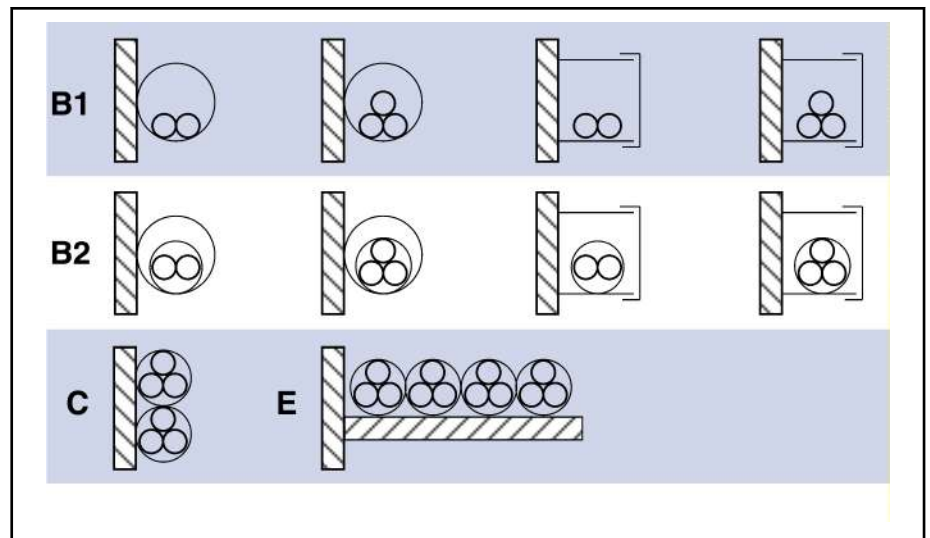
| Number of lines  | 1 | 2    | 3    | 4    | 5    |
|--|---|------|------|------|------|
| Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.2    | 1 | 1.25 | 1.43 | 1.54 | 1.67 |
| Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(b) | 1 | 1.25 |      |      |      |

- 1) Three single cores (L1, L2, L3) for mains supply of a device are to be considered as one circuit.

Tab. 4-31: Correction factor for bundling lines and circuits in accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007



## Combining the individual components



- B1** Conductor in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened  
**B2** Cables or lines in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened  
**C** Cables or lines on walls  
**E** Cables or lines on open cable trays.

Fig. 4-27: Installation methods (compare IEC 60364-5-52; VDE0298-7; EN 60204-1)

## Dimensioning and selecting the mains transformer

Mains transformers are always needed when the mains voltage is outside of the allowed nominal voltage of the component.

### Grounded mains

The mains voltage for grounded mains is generally adjusted with **autotransformers**.

### Ungrounded mains

The mains voltage for ungrounded mains is generally adjusted with **isolating transformers** to prevent overvoltages between outer conductor and ground. Short-circuit voltage of the isolating transformer:  $\leq 4\%$

### Applications for autotransformers

With HCS01 components, there are two applications that require autotransformers:

1. HCS01.1E-W00xx-A-02 components are used:

With a mains voltage of 3 AC 400 V, the voltage must be adjusted via an autotransformer to use HCS01.1E-W00xx-A-02 components with an input voltage range of 3 AC 110...230 V.

2. An MSM motor is used in conjunction with an HCS01.1E-W00xx-A-03 component:

MSM motors have been dimensioned for a voltage of 230 V. To operate MSM motors at a mains voltage of 3 AC 400 V at an HCS01.1E-W00xx-A-03 component, the mains voltage has to be adjusted to 3 AC 230 V via an autotransformer.

## Dimensioning the mains filter

### Criteria for Selecting the Mains Filter

Take the following criteria into account for selecting the appropriate mains filter:

- EMC limit value class on site
- Ambient conditions on site

## Combining the individual components

- Harmonics on mains voltage on site
- Loading by mains voltage and mains frequency on site
- Loading by harmonics on site
- Loading by mains-side phase current
- Total length of connected power cables
- Sum of leakage capacitances
- Clock frequency of drive controller

**How to proceed for selecting the mains filter**

The selection of the mains filter is significantly determined by the operating conditions.

*How to proceed for selecting the mains filter:*

1. Determine the required EMC limit value class for the application.
2. Determine the maximum applied mains voltage. Observe that all Rexroth IndraDrive Cs mains filters are not suited for a mains voltage of 3 AC 500 V.

Check whether the mains voltage of the mains filter is loaded with harmonics and still allowed for the mains filter.

If necessary, reduce the harmonics on site.

3. Determine the mains connection type, such as central supply, group supply, etc. (To do this, it is useful to outline the involved components and their interaction.)
4. Calculate the **mains-side phase current** of the mains filter. You can find the procedure for calculating the mains-side phase current in a separate chapter (see [chapter "Calculating the mains-side phase current " on page 85](#)). For selecting the components, calculate the effective rms value.  
  
Check or determine the maximum occurring ambient temperature. Select a mains filter with a higher nominal current, if the ambient temperature is above 45 °C.
5. The nominal current of the selected mains fuse should not exceed the nominal current of the mains filter.
6. Determine the number of drive axes.
7. Determine the total length of the connected power cables.
8. Determine the sum of the leakage capacitances on the load side of the mains filter. The sum of the leakage capacitances results from the number of operated axes and the length of the connected power cables. You can find the procedure for determining the leakage capacitance in a separate chapter (see [chapter 11.2 "Determining the Leakage Capacitance" on page 325](#)).
9. Take the clock frequency of the drive controller into account.

The higher the clock frequency of the drive controller, the higher the leakage currents and the interference emissions they involve.

The following leakage capacitances (motor cable + motor) should not be exceeded per drive controller.

Combining the individual components

### HCS01.1E-W0003, -W0006, -W0009, -W0013

| Clock frequency<br>[kHz] | Maximum leakage capacitance<br>(Motor + cable) per device [nF] | Motor cable length<br>[m] |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| 4                        | 33   | 40                        |
| 8                        | 17   | 20                        |
| 12                       | 13   | 15                        |
| 16                       | 5  | 5                         |

Tab. 4-32: Clock frequency, leakage capacitance, motor cable length

### HCS01.1E-W0005, -W0008

| Clock frequency<br>[kHz] | Maximum leakage capacitance<br>(Motor + cable) per device [nF] | Motor cable length<br>[m] |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| 4                        | 34   | 40                        |
| 8                        | 18   | 20                        |
| 12                       | 14   | 15                        |
| 16                       | 6  | 5                         |

Tab. 4-33: Clock frequency, leakage capacitance, motor cable length

### HCS01.1E-W0018, -W0028

| Clock frequency<br>[kHz] | Maximum leakage capacitance<br>(Motor + cable) per device [nF] | Motor cable length<br>[m] |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| 4                        | 40   | 40                        |
| 8                        | 24   | 20                        |
| 12                       | 20   | 15                        |
| 16                       | 12   | 5                         |

Tab. 4-34: Clock frequency, leakage capacitance, motor cable length

### HCS01.1E-W0054

| Clock frequency<br>[kHz] | Maximum leakage capacitance<br>(Motor + cable) per device [nF] | Motor cable length<br>[m] |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| 4                        | 85   | 75                        |
| 8                        | 43   | 38                        |
| 12                       | 30   | 25                        |

Tab. 4-35: Clock frequency, leakage capacitance, motor cable length

Select the appropriate mains connection (supply unit/converter, mains choke, mains filter) from the tables in the corresponding chapter (see [chapter "Combining transformer, mains filter and mains choke" on page 103](#)).

## Combining the individual components

## Notes on installation



When using NFE02 or NFD03 mains filters at **mains grounded via outer conductor**, install an isolating transformer between mains and mains filter.

## Selecting the mains filter



The specified mains filter types are exclusively suited for TN and TT mains.

The EMC limit values relate to line-based noise emission in the frequency range of 0.15 ... 30 MHz on the mains connection lines.

| HCS01.1E-W0005, -W0008, -W0018-A-03, -W00028, -W00054 |   |                       |  |
|---|---|-----------------------|--|
| Nominal voltage of mains filter: 3 × 400 V            |   |                       |  |
| Clock frequency<br>[kHz]                              | Leakage capacitance (motor + cable)<br>[nF] | Mains filters         | EMC limit value class to be achieved<br>(IEC / EN 61800-3) |
| 4; 8  | < 100                                       | NFD03.1 <sup>1)</sup> | C2   |
| 12; 16  | < 30  |                       |  |

1) Leakage capacitances > 100 nF overload the mains filter (over-temperature, saturation phenomenon)

Tab. 4-36: Mains filter; 3 × 400 V

| HCS01.1E-W0005, -W0008, -W0018-A-03, -W00028, -W00054 |   |                     |  |
|---|---|---------------------|--|
| Nominal voltage of mains filter: 3 × 400 ... 500 V    |   |                     |  |
| Clock frequency<br>[kHz]                              | Leakage capacitance (motor + cable)<br>[nF] | Mains filters       | EMC limit value class to be achieved<br>(IEC / EN 61800-3) |
| 4; 8  | < 70  | FN3258H (Schaffner) | C2   |
| 4; 8  | 70 < ... < 100                              |                     | C3   |
| 12; 16  | < 20  |                     | C2   |
| 12; 16  | 20 < ... < 50                               |                     | C3   |

Tab. 4-37: Mains filter; 3 × 400 ... 500 V

Combining the individual components

| HCS01.1E-W0003, -W0006, -W0009, -W0013, -W0018-A-02<br>Nominal voltage of mains filter: 1 × 230 V |   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Clock frequency<br>[kHz]  | Leakage capacitance (motor + cable)<br>[nF] | Mains filters                              | EMC limit value class to be achieved<br>(IEC / EN 61800-3) |
| 4; 8  | < 90  | NFE02.1 <sup>1)</sup><br>FN350 (Schaffner) | C2   |
| 4; 8  | 90 < ... < 120                              |  | C3   |
| 12  | < 20  |  | C2   |
| 12  | 20 < ... < 40                               |  | C3   |

1) Only allowed up to a nominal current of 8 A

Tab. 4-38: Mains filter; 1 × 230 V

| HCS01.1E-W0005, -W0008, -W0018-A-03, -W00028, -W00054, (mains voltage: 3 × 400 V, L1-L2-L3)<br>can be combined with <sup>1)</sup><br>HCS01.1E-W0003, -W0006, -W0009, -W0013, -W0018-A-02, (mains voltage: 1 × 230 V, L-N)<br>Nominal voltage of mains filter: 3 × 400 V + N |   |                     |  |
|---|---|---------------------|--|
| Clock frequency<br>[kHz]  | Leakage capacitance (motor + cable)<br>[nF] | Mains filters       | EMC limit value class to be achieved<br>(IEC / EN 61800-3) |
| 4   | < 70  | FN3280H (Schaffner) | C2   |
| 4   | 70 < ... < 120                              |                     | C3   |
| 4   | < 70  | FN3256H (Schaffner) | C3   |
| 8   | < 40  | FN3280H (Schaffner) | C2   |
| 8   | 40 < ... < 70                               |                     | C3   |
| 8   | < 40  | FN3256H (Schaffner) | C3   |
| 12  | < 20  | FN3280H (Schaffner) | C2   |

1) This combination allows 3-phase and 1-phase HCS01 devices to be interconnected at one common 4-phase mains filter. Thereby, the nominal current of the mains filter and the maximum allowed leakage capacitance are taken into account.

Tab. 4-39: Mains filter; 3 × 400 V + N

#### Limit Value Classes

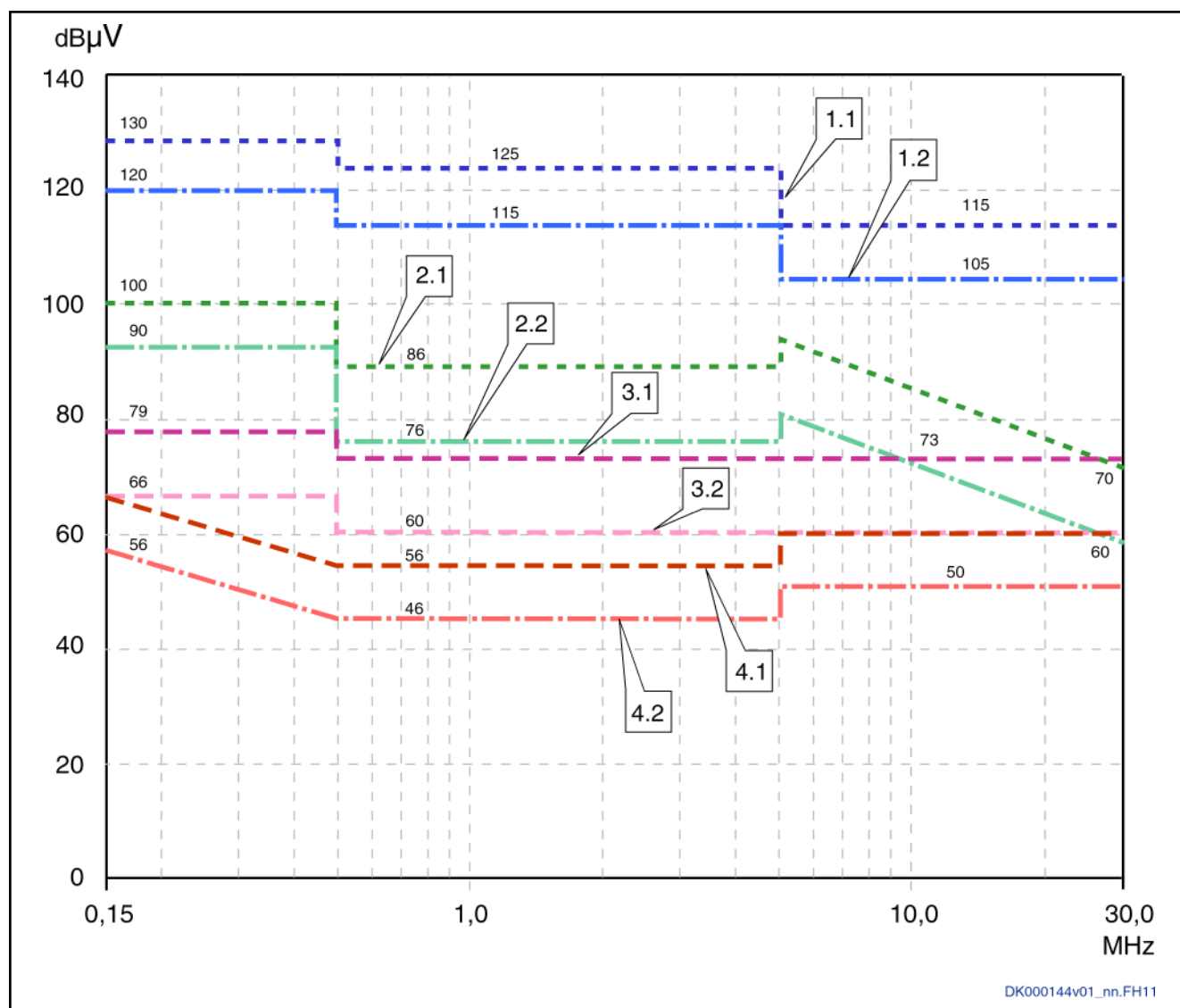
| IEC / EN 61800-3             | CISPR 11 (EN55011)            | Explanation  | Curves of limit value characteristic |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Category C4, 2nd environment | None                          | One of the following 3 requirements must have been fulfilled: Mains connection current >400 A, IT mains or required dynamic drive behavior not reached by means of EMC filter. Adjust limit values to use and operation on site. User has to carry out and provide evidence of EMC planning. | -                                    |
| Category C3, 2nd environment | Class A; Group 2<br>I > 100 A | Limit value in industrial areas to be complied with for applications operated at supply mains with nominal currents > 100 A.   | 1.1<br>1.2                           |

## Combining the individual components

| IEC / EN 61800-3   | CISPR 11 (EN55011)            | Explanation  | Curves of limit value characteristic |
|--|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Category C3, 2nd environment                               | Class A; Group 2<br>I < 100 A | Limit value in industrial areas to be complied with for applications operated at supply mains with nominal currents < 100 A.   | 2.1<br>2.2                           |
| Category C2, 1st environment;<br>Restricted distribution   | Class A; Group 1              | Limit value in residential area or at facilities at low-voltage mains supplying buildings in residential areas. To be complied with for applications with restricted distribution. | 3.1<br>3.2                           |
| Category C1, 1st environment;<br>Unrestricted distribution | Class B; Group 1              | Limit value in residential areas to be complied with for applications with unrestricted distribution.  | 4.1<br>4.2                           |

Tab. 4-40: Limit Value Classes

# Combining the individual components



- 1.1 Category C3: Second environment, QSP, I > 100 A (class A, group 2, I > 100 A)
- 1.2 Category C3: Second environment, AV, I > 100 A (class A, group 2, I > 100 A)
- 2.1 Category C3: Second environment, QSP, I < 100 A (class A, group 2, I < 100 A)
- 2.2 Category C3: Second environment, AV, I < 100 A (class A, group 2, I < 100 A)
- 3.1 Category C2: First environment, restricted distribution, QSP (first environment, even if source of interference in second environment) (class A, group 1)
- 3.2 Category C2: First environment, restricted distribution, AV (first environment, even if source of interference in second environment) (class A, group 1)
- 4.1 Category C1: First environment, unrestricted distribution, QSP (first environment, even if source of interference in second environment) (class B, group 1)
- 4.2 Category C1: First environment, unrestricted distribution, AV (first environment, even if source of interference in second environment) (class B, group 1)

## Combining the individual components

**Notes**

- (1) Limit value for first environment is also relevant, if source of interference of second environment affects first environment  
 (2) Designations "class" and "group" according to IEC CISPR 11

QSP: Measuring method quasi peak measurement; AV: Measuring method arithmetic averaging

*Fig. 4-28: Limit Values for Line-Based Disturbances (IEC 61800-3); Limit Value Characteristic through Frequency Range*

**Determining the Mains Choke**

When using mains chokes, take their effect on the connected drive controllers into account. Due to their inductance, mains chokes have a smoothing effect on the current and thereby reduce harmonics.

Take the nominal current of the mains choke into account to have the inductance of the mains choke available.

Some mains chokes are assigned to certain drive controllers (see technical data of the drive controller "Data for mains voltage supply → Assigned type of mains choke").

**Dimensioning the mains contactor**

Required data:

- Nominal current  $I_{LN}$  of the drive controller (see [chapter 7.3.2 "Mains voltage" on page 233](#))
- Number of drive controllers connected to the mains contactor

When using mains contactors of the utilization category AC-1, observe the conventional thermal continuous current  $I_{th}$  (see data sheet of mains contactor) when dimensioning the mains contactor.

The minimum required conventional thermal continuous current  $I_{th}$  results from the sum of nominal currents  $\Sigma I_{LN}$  of all connected drive controllers.



Combining the individual components

Combining transformer, mains filter and mains choke


| HCS01.1E                                       | Transformer       |                   | Mains filter |          |                     | Mains choke     |
|--|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|----------|---------------------|-----------------|
|  | DST <sup>3)</sup> | DLT <sup>4)</sup> | NFE 02.1     | NFD 03.1 | HNF01.1*-****-E**** | HNL01.1E        |
| W0003<br>W0006<br>W0009<br>W0013<br>W0018-A-02 | ■                 | ■                 | ■            | ■        | 1)                  | -               |
| W0005<br>W0008<br>W0018-A-03<br>W0028<br>W0054 | ■                 | ■                 | -            | ■        | 1)                  | ■ <sup>2)</sup> |

- Allowed  
 - Not allowed  
 1) We are currently checking whether it is possible to combine HNF mains filters and several HCS01 components.  
 2) Only possible with -W0028 and -W0054 components  
 3) DST = Autotransformer  
 4) DLT = Isolating transformer  
 Tab. 4-41: Additional Components in the Mains Connection of HCS01 Components



## 4.6.4 DC bus coupling

### Requirements for DC bus coupling

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Device types</b>     | Only devices of the "HCS01.1E-W00**-*-03" type are suited for DC bus coupling. DC bus coupling takes place via the optionally available <a href="#">DC bus connector RLS0778/K06</a> at the connection point <a href="#">X77</a> .   |
|                         |  <b>Parameterization:</b> For all devices only supplied via the DC bus, "DC bus → inverter mode" has to be set as the source of power supply in the parameter "P-0-0860, Converter configuration" (see also parameter description of the firmware used).  |
| <b>Number</b>           | A <b>maximum of 8</b> devices can be coupled at a common DC bus.   |
| <b>Mains connection</b> | DC bus coupling is possible for the following types of mains connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Central supply</b></li> <li>• <b>Group supply</b></li> </ul> DC bus coupling requires: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• That the Bb contacts of all devices connected to the mains be wired</li> <li>• That the module bus be wired via all devices at the common DC bus</li> </ul> |

### Central supply and DC bus coupling

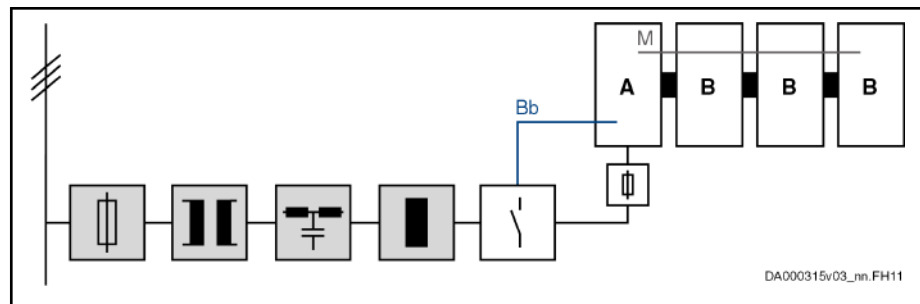
Use this type of DC bus coupling if the DC bus continuous power of the in-feeding device makes available sufficient power reserves to supply other HCS01 devices. The devices in the group can be of different types. For the project planning of the application, observe that the supplying devices can only make available the DC bus power for other devices which they do not consume themselves.

With central supply, **one HCS01 device** charges the DC bus and the other devices are supplied using DC bus coupling.

#### Features

- The supplying device has to be of the **HCS01.1E-W0028 or -W0054** type
  - Energy compensation between the devices is possible (the DC bus capacitors of the devices are connected in parallel)
  - Balancing of the integrated braking resistors exists (equal load of all braking resistors integrated in the devices)
  - No balancing measures required in the supply feeder
  - To increase the DC bus power, an optional mains choke can be used
  - It is possible to connect DC bus capacitor units; DC bus capacitor units should always be placed directly next to the most powerful device
- A DC bus capacitor unit HLC requires a mains choke to be installed
- Small wiring effort for the mains connection
  - DC bus short circuit functionality has to be realized externally, if required

## Combining the individual components



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application

- A** Component HCS01 (more powerful than component B); connected to other components via DC bus
- B** Component HCS01 (less powerful than component A); connected to other components via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus

Fig. 4-30: Central Supply

## Group supply and DC bus coupling

**DC bus coupling options** For group supply with DC bus coupling, there are **two options**:

1. **At least two devices** supply the DC bus and other devices are supplied via the common DC bus connection
2. **All devices** with common DC bus connection supply the DC bus



When sizing the devices for group supply, observe the **balancing factor**:

- 0.8 (if balancing is used)
- 0.5 (if balancing is not used)

With group supply, the **Bb relay contacts of all supplying devices have to be connected in series**. This guarantees that the mains contactor is switched off in the case of error in a device.

The DC bus coupling **lines** should not be run outside of the control cabinet. The maximum line length of a DC bus coupling is 2 m. See also description of the connection point **X77** for more information ([chapter "X77, L+ L-, DC Bus Connection" on page 151](#)).

**Balancing:** To distribute the charging process of the DC bus equally over all supplying devices, balancing chokes or balancing resistors have to be installed in the supply feeder.

#### Balancing choke

- HCS01.1E-W0028: Mains choke HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN
- HCS01.1E-W0054: Mains choke HNL01.1E-0600-N0032-A-500-NNNN

The firmware provides for the balancing of the power over all braking resistors. See also the documentation of the firmware used (parameter "P-0-0860, Converter configuration").

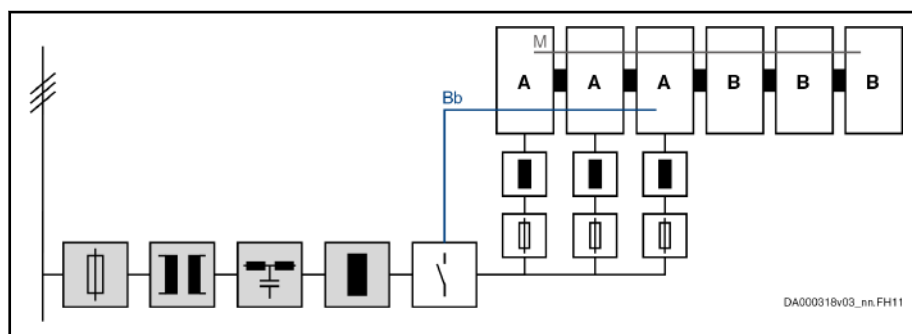
## Combining the individual components



The parallel connection of the braking resistors causes **derating/reduction of power** of the continuous braking resistor power to the factor 0.8.

### Supply via at least two devices

Use this type of DC bus coupling if you use **different HCS01 device types** in your application.



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application; the choke is used to reduce current harmonics

- A** Component HCS01 (more powerful than component B; all components A identical); connected to supply mains via balancing chokes; connected to other components via DC bus
- B** Component HCS01 (less powerful than component A); connected to other components via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus

Fig. 4-31: Group Supply; Several HCS01 Components Connected to Supply Mains

### Features

- The supplying devices<sup>3) 4)</sup> have to be of the same type. The following devices are suited as supplying devices:
  - HCS01.1E-W0028
  - HCS01.1E-W0054
- DC bus continuous power of the supplying devices reduced by parallel operation
- Energy compensation between the devices is possible (the DC bus capacitors of the devices are connected in parallel)
- Balancing of the integrated braking resistors exists (equal load of all braking resistors integrated in the devices)
- Balancing chokes or balancing resistors required in supply feeder
- It is possible to connect DC bus capacitor units
- Wiring effort for the mains connection relatively small
- It is possible to use a common mains contactor, as well as a common mains filter
- DC bus short circuit functionality has to be realized externally, if required

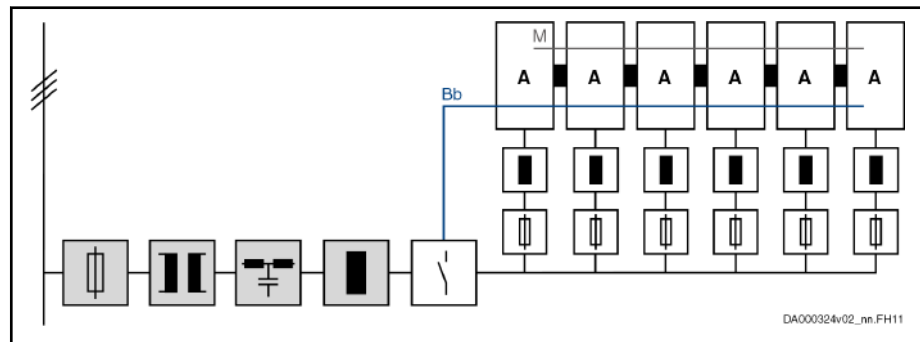
<sup>3)</sup> **Supplying** devices are devices connected to the mains which supply power to other devices via a DC bus connection

<sup>4)</sup> **Supplied** devices are devices not connected to the mains which are supplied with power by the supplying devices via a DC bus connection

## Combining the individual components

## Supply via all devices

Use this type of DC bus coupling if you exclusively use **one HCS01 device type** in your application.



Components marked with gray background color: Optional, depending on the application; the choke is used to reduce current harmonics

- A** Component HCS01 (all components A identical); connected to supply mains via balancing chokes; interconnected via DC bus
- Bb** Bb relay contact wiring
- M** Module bus (not obligatory)

Fig. 4-32: Group Supply; all HCS01 Components Connected to Supply Mains Features

- All devices have to be of the **same type**
- DC bus continuous power of the supplying devices reduced by parallel operation
- Energy compensation between the devices is possible (the DC bus capacitors of the devices are connected in parallel)
- Balancing of the integrated braking resistors exists (equal load of all braking resistors integrated in the devices)
- Balancing chokes or balancing resistors required in supply feeder
- It is possible to connect DC bus capacitor units
- Wiring effort for the mains connection of all devices relatively big
- DC bus short circuit functionality has to be realized externally, if required

## Implementing the DC bus coupling

## Maximum number of devices

A **maximum of 8** devices can be coupled at a common DC bus.

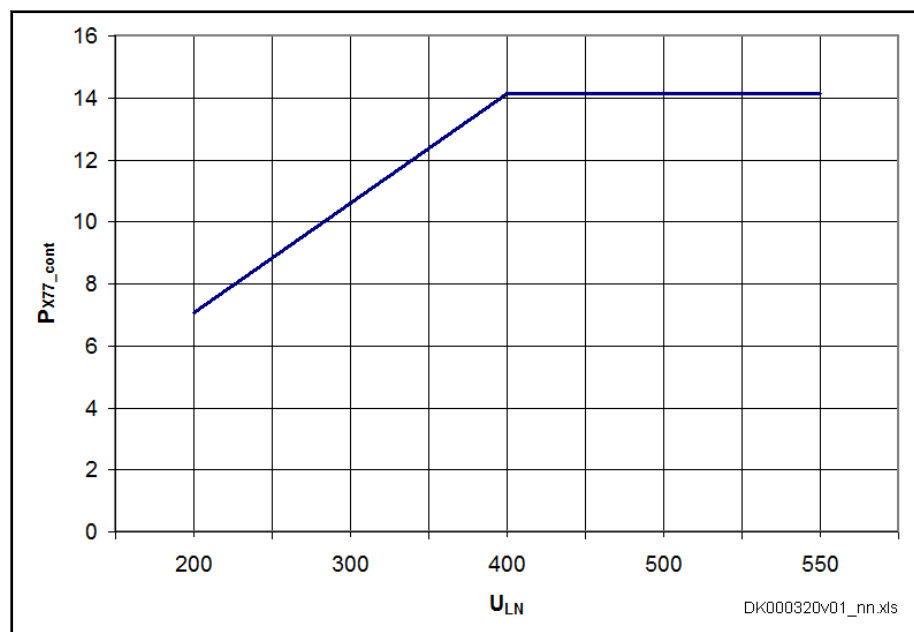
The maximum number of devices which can be interconnected via DC bus coupling depends on

- the power reserves of the supplying devices  
(The power reserve ( $P_{\text{reserve}}$ ) results from the difference between the possible DC bus continuous power of the device and the power consumed by the motor connected to the device.)
- the type of DC bus connection:
  - Connection looped through via DC bus connector X77
  - DC bus connecting bar with spur lines to the individual devices
- the sum of DC bus continuous powers of all supplied devices
- the mains voltage value

## Combining the individual components

- the maximum continuous power which can be looped through via the DC bus connector X77  
(The continuous power results from the current carrying capacity of the DC bus connector X77 and the mains voltage value.)

Load of DC Bus Connector at  $I = 25\text{ A}$ :



$U_{LN}$  Mains voltage  
 $P_{X77\_cont}$  Continuous power at DC bus connector X77  
 Fig. 4-33: Load of DC Bus Connector

| $V_{LN}$ | $P_{X77\_cont}$ |
|----------|-----------------|
| 200 V AC | 7 kW            |
| 400 V AC | 14 kW           |
| 500 V AC | 14 kW           |

Tab. 4-42: Selected values of continuous power via DC bus connector X77 ( $P_{X77\_cont}$ ) depending on mains voltage

### Number of supplied devices:

If the sum of power reserves ( $P_{reserve}$ ) of the supplying devices is **greater than** the continuous power of X77 ( $P_{X77\_cont}$ ), the maximum number of supplied devices results from  $P_{X77\_cont}$  minus the respective DC bus continuous power of the individual devices at average speed.

If the sum of power reserves ( $P_{reserve}$ ) of the supplying devices is **smaller** than the continuous power of X77 ( $P_{X77\_cont}$ ), the maximum number of supplied devices results from  $P_{reserve}$  minus the respective DC bus continuous power of the individual devices at average speed.

## Combining the individual components

## Looping through the DC bus connection via DC bus connector X77

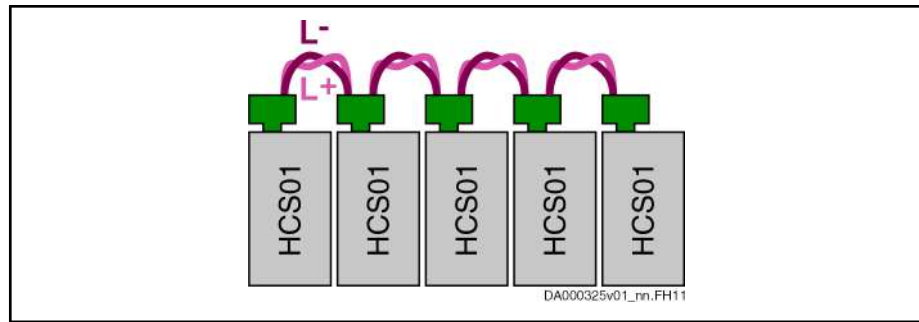


Fig. 4-34: Looping through via DC bus connector

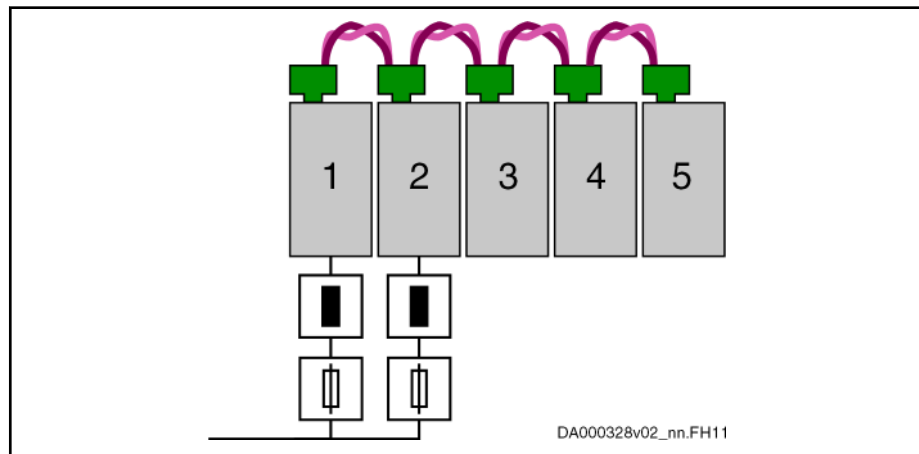
The DC buses of the individual devices are connected via the DC bus connectors X77.

When the devices are supplied via group supply, the DC bus connector X77 of the last infeeding device is the limiting factor in the DC bus group.



**Device arrangement:** The higher the power consumption of a device, the nearer to the supplying devices it has to be arranged.

## Example:



1, 2 HCS01.1E-W0028 (supplying devices)

3, 4, 5 HCS01.1E-W0018 (supplied devices)

Fig. 4-35: Looping through

On the left, the two supplying HCS01.1E-W0028 devices have been arranged; to their right the three supplied HCS01.1E-W0018 devices.

The DC bus connector of the second device from the left (2) limits the possible number of devices at the common DC bus.



## Combining the individual components

### DC bus connecting bar

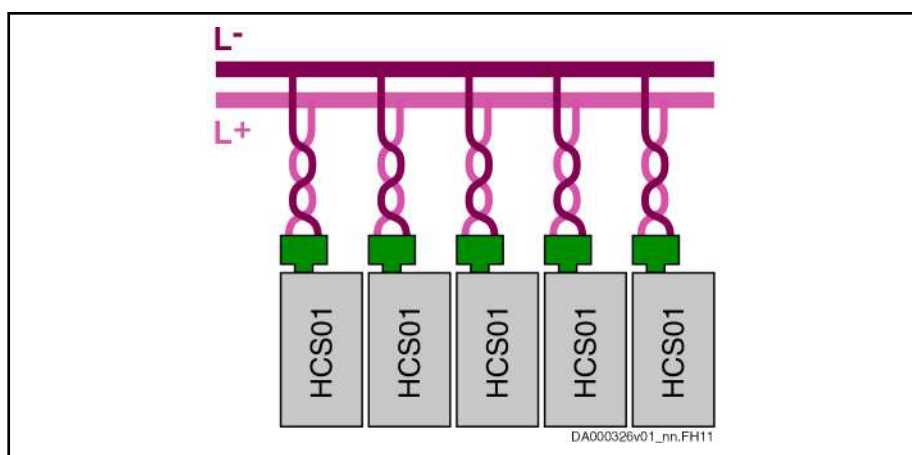


Fig. 4-36: DC bus connection via connecting bar

Via a "spur line", the DC buses of the individual devices are connected to the DC bus connecting bar.

The power reserve of the supplying devices limits the number of devices at the common DC bus.

## DC Bus Capacitor Unit

**Function** DC bus capacitor units are optional additional components and increase

- the DC bus continuous power
- the available DC bus energy

**Mains Choke** Always operate the DC bus capacitor units together with the mains choke assigned to the drive controller (see [chapter 7.3.2 "Mains voltage" on page 233](#)).

Special case "HCS01.1E-W0018-\_-03" (in the technical data, no mains choke has been assigned to this drive controller):

Use the mains choke "HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN".

**Connection** The maximum allowed capacitance of a DC bus capacitor unit depends on the device which assumes the DC bus supply.



Even if several devices supply the DC bus, the specific external DC bus capacitance of the biggest supplying device may only be connected **once** for the entire DC bus group!

For the maximum allowed external DC bus capacitance at  $U_{LN\_nenn}$ , see the technical data ([chapter 7.3.3 "DC bus" on page 240](#)).

### Maximum Allowed External DC Bus Capacitance [mF] vs. Mains Voltage

| HCS01.1E-  | Mains voltage |       |       |       |
|------------|---------------|-------|-------|-------|
|            | 400 V         | 440 V | 480 V | 500 V |
| W0018-A-03 | 3             | 2     | 1     | -     |
| W0028-A-03 | 4             | 3     | 1     | -     |
| W0054-A-03 | 13            | 9     | 6     | 5     |

Tab. 4-43: Maximum Allowed External DC Bus Capacitance (in mF)

## Combining the individual components

If possible, place the DC bus capacitor unit directly next to the drive controller to be supplied or the most powerful drive controller. Connect the DC bus capacitor unit to the drive controller via the DC bus connection X77.

See also [chapter 8.3.5 "DC bus capacitor units HLC" on page 309](#)

## Module bus and parameterization

**Module bus** The module bus is an internal system connection. To ensure the coordinated behavior of all devices of a drive system, the devices have to exchange information via the module bus.

With the parameter "P-0-0118, Power supply, configuration", both a common error reaction for all axes and power off in the case of error can be parameterized.



If several devices are coupled via the DC bus, it is mandatory to loop through the module bus.

Use **shielded lines** to loop through the module bus, if the length of all module bus connections is **greater than 3 m**. See [chapter "Module bus cable shield connection" on page 256](#).

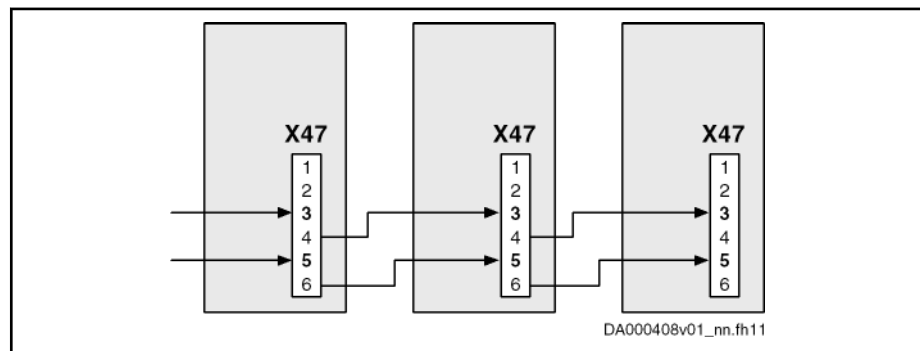


Fig. 4-37: Looping through the module bus

**Parameterization** For all devices only supplied via the DC bus, "DC bus → inverter mode" has to be set as the source of power supply in the parameter "P-0-0860, Converter configuration".

For detailed information, see the documentation of the firmware used:

- Parameter description:
  - P-0-0860, Converter configuration
  - P-0-0118, Power supply, configuration
- Functional description: "Power supply"

## Bb relay contact

Generally, the following applies: Include the Bb contact in the mains contactor circuit at all devices connected to the mains. (See also [chapter "Control Circuit for the Mains Connection" on page 104](#))

If several devices supply the DC bus (group supply), connect the Bb relay contacts (X47) of all **supplying** devices in series. This guarantees that the mains contactor is switched off in the case of error in a device.

For devices which are only supplied via the DC bus, it is sufficient that you establish the module bus connection. You do not need to connect the Bb relay contacts of these devices in series.

Combining the individual components

***NOTICE***

**Risk of fire in the case of error caused by missing mains contactor control!**


Include the Bb relay contact in the switch-off chain of the mains contactor so that the power supply is interrupted in the case of error.

Combining the individual components

## 4.7 Acceptance tests and approvals

### Declaration of conformity

Declarations of conformity confirm that the components comply with the valid EN standards and EC directives. If required, our sales representative can provide you with the declarations of conformity for components.

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <br><small>DX00011401_001FR11</small> | <b>Drive controllers,<br/>Supply units</b> | <b>Motors</b>  |
| CE conformity regarding<br>Low-Voltage Directive   | EN 61800-5-1:2007                          | EN 60034-1:2010+Cor.:2010<br>EN 60034-5:2001+A1:2007 |
| CE conformity regarding<br>EMC product standard  | EN 61800-3:2004 + A1:2012                  |  |

Tab. 4-44: CE - applied standards


### C-UL-US listing

The components are listed by **UL** (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®).

Proof of certification can be found online:

[www.ul.com/database](http://www.ul.com/database)

Under "UL File Number" enter the file number or under "Company Name" enter the company name "Bosch Rexroth AG".

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <br><b>Listed</b><br><b>POW. CONV. EQ.</b><br><b>97Y4</b><br><small>DX00000401_001US</small> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>UL standard: UL 508C</li> <li>CSA standard: Canadian National Standard C22.2 No. 14-10</li> </ul> |
|   | <b>Company Name</b><br>BOSCH REXROTH ELECTRIC DRIVES & CONTROLS GMBH<br><b>Category Name:</b><br>Power Conversion Equipment              |
|   | <b>File numbers</b><br>Rexroth IndraDrive Cs components: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E134201</li> <li>E227957</li> </ul>      |

Tab. 4-45: C-UL listing



### UL ratings

When using the component in the scope of CSA/UL, observe the UL ratings for each component.

Make sure that the indicated **SCCR short-circuit rating** is not exceeded, e.g., by using appropriate fuses in the mains connection of the supply unit.



### Wiring material UL

In the scope of CSA / UL, use copper 60/75 °C only; class 1 or equivalent only.

## Combining the individual components



### Allowed pollution degree

Comply with the permitted pollution degree of the components (see "Ambient and operating conditions").


### C-UR-US listing

The components are listed by **UL** (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®).

Proof of certification can be found online:

[www.ul.com/database](http://www.ul.com/database)

Under "UL File Number" enter the file number or under "Company Name" enter the company name "Bosch Rexroth AG".

|   |  |
|---|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>UL standard: UL 1004-1</li> <li>CSA standard: Canadian National Standard C22.2 No. 100</li> </ul> |
|   | <b>Company Name</b><br>BOSCH REXROTH ELECTRIC DRIVES & CONTROLS GMBH<br><b>Category Name:</b><br>Servo and Stepper Motors - Component    |
|   | <b>File numbers</b><br>MSK, MSM motors: E335445  |

Tab. 4-46: C-UR listing



### Wiring material UL (ready-made cables by Rexroth)

In the scope of CSA / UL, use copper 60/75 °C only; class 6 or equivalent only.



### Allowed pollution degree

Comply with the permitted pollution degree of the components (see "Ambient and operating conditions").

### CCC (China Compulsory Certification)

The CCC mark is a compulsory certification of safety and quality for certain products mentioned in the product catalog "First Catalogue of Products Subject to Compulsory Certification" and in the CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue" and put in circulation in China. This compulsory certification has existed since 2003.

CNCA is the Chinese authority responsible for certification guidelines. When a product is imported in China, the certification will be checked at customs using the entries in a database. Three criteria are typically critical for certification being required:

1. Customs tariff number (HS code) according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
2. Area of application according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
3. For the IEC product standard used, a corresponding Chinese GB standard must exist.

## Combining the individual components

For the drive components by Rexroth described in this documentation, **certification is currently not required**, so they are not CCC certified. Negative certifications will not be issued.

Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

## 5 Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

### 5.1 Condition as supplied

#### 5.1.1 Factory testing

##### Voltage testing and insulation resistance testing

According to standard, the **components** of the Rexroth IndraDrive Cs range are tested with voltage.

| Testing                       | Test rate           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| Voltage testing               | 100% (EN 61800-5-1) |
| Insulation resistance testing | 100% (EN 60204-1)   |

Tab. 5-1: Applied standards

#### 5.1.2 Customer testing

##### **NOTICE**

**Risk of damage to the installed Rexroth components by customer-side testing of the machine or installation!**

Before conducting voltage testing or insulation resistance testing for an **installation or machine** in which these components are used:

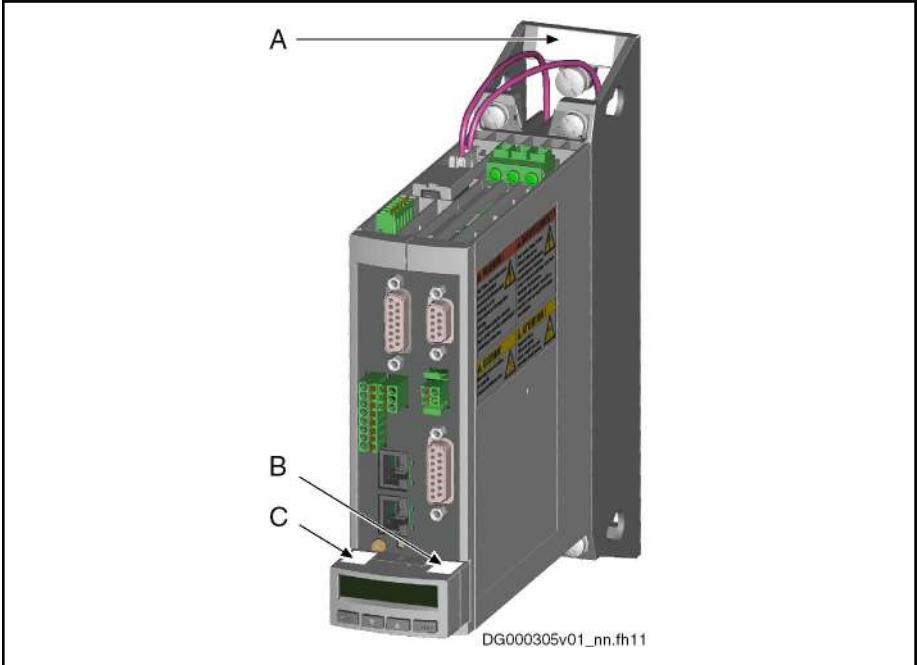
Disconnect all connections to the Rexroth components or disconnect the plug-in connections to protect the electronic components.

Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

5.2 Identification

5.2.1 Type Plates

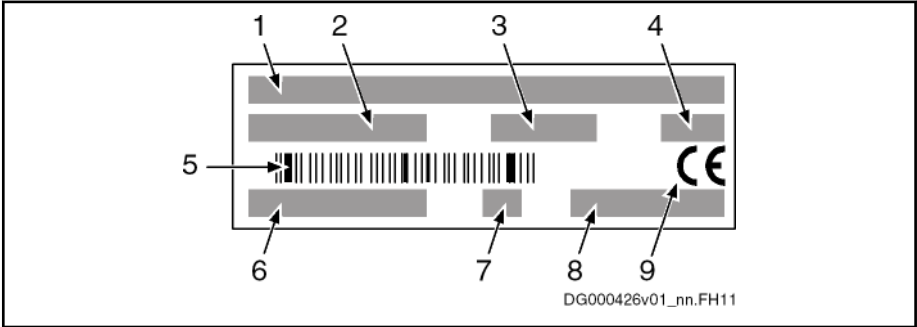
Arrangement



A Type plate device  
B Type plate firmware  
C Type plate control panel  
Fig. 5-1: Type Plate Arrangement

Design

Type plate (device)

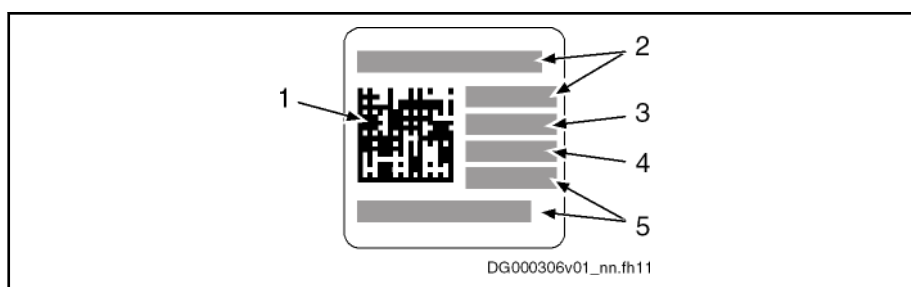


1 Device type  
2 Part number  
3 Production week; 11W36, for example, means year 2011, week 36  
4 Factory identifier  
5 Bar code  
6 Serial number  
7 Hardware index  
8 Country of manufacture  
9 Identification  
Fig. 5-2: Type plate (device)



Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

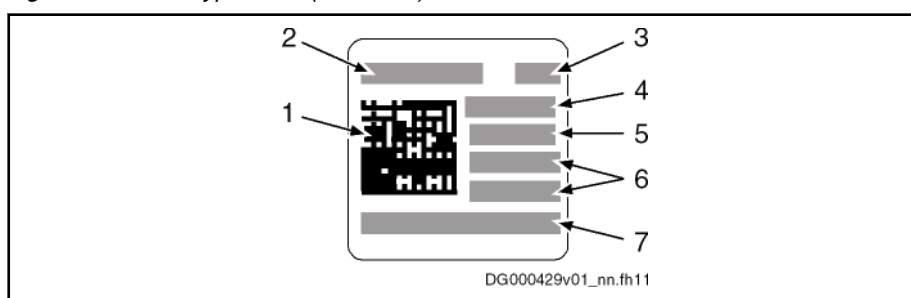
Type Plate (Firmware)



- 1 Bar code
- 2 Type
- 3 Factory identifier
- 4 Production week (example: 11W36 means: year 2011, week 36)
- 5 Part number

Fig. 5-3: Type Plate (Firmware)

Type Plate (Control Panel)



- 1 Bar code
- 2 Type
- 3 Hardware index
- 4 Factory identifier
- 5 Production week (example: 11W36 means: year 2011, week 36)
- 6 Part number
- 7 Serial number

Fig. 5-4: Type Plate (Control Panel)

## 5.2.2 Scope of supply

| Standard   | To be ordered separately   |
|--|--|
| Drive controller HCS01   | <a href="#">DC bus connector X77</a> (DC bus connection; for HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices)<br>Order code: <a href="#">RLS0778/K06</a>             |
| <a href="#">Mounting and connection accessories HAS09</a>            | microSD memory card: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PFM04.1-512-FW (with firmware)</li> <li>PFM04.1-512-NW (without firmware)</li> </ul> |
| Connectors X3, X5, X6, X13, X31, X32, X47                            | Other accessories, such as SUP-E0x-MSM-BATTERYBOX  |
| Touch guard X77 (DC bus connection; for HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices) |  |
| Documentation  |  |

Tab. 5-2: Scope of supply HCS01

Condition as supplied, identification, transport and storage

## 5.3 Transporting the components

### Ambient and operating conditions for transport

| Description                 | Symbol        | Unit             | Value       |
|-----------------------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| Temperature range           | $T_{a\_tran}$ | °C               | -20 ... +70 |
| Relative humidity           |               | %                | 5 ... 95    |
| Absolute humidity           |               | g/m <sup>3</sup> | 1 ... 60    |
| Climatic category (IEC 721) |               |                  | 2K3         |
| Moisture condensation       |               |                  | Not allowed |
| Icing                       |               |                  | Not allowed |

Tab. 5-3: Ambient and operating conditions for transport

## 5.4 Storing the components

### NOTICE

**Risk of damage to components from long-term storage!**

Some components contain electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage.

When storing the following components for a longer period of time, run them **once a year for at least 1 hour**:

- Converters and supply units: Operated with mains voltage  $U_{LN}$
- Inverters and DC bus capacitor units: Operated with DC bus voltage  $U_{DC}$

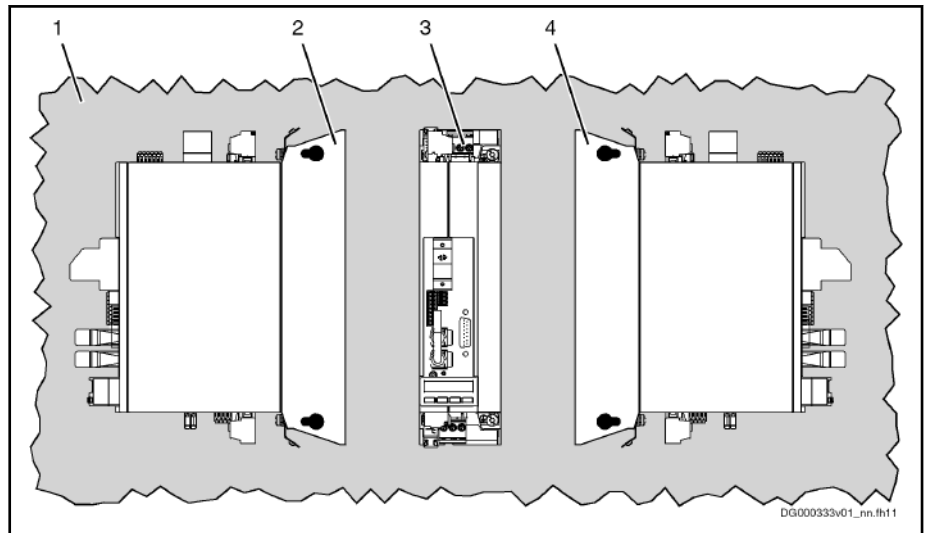
### Ambient and operating conditions for storage

| Description                 | Symbol         | Unit             | Value       |
|-----------------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------|
| Temperature range           | $T_{a\_store}$ | °C               | -20 ... +55 |
| Relative humidity           |                | %                | 5 ... 95    |
| Absolute humidity           |                | g/m <sup>3</sup> | 1 ... 29    |
| Climatic category (IEC 721) |                |                  | 1K3         |
| Moisture condensation       |                |                  | Not allowed |
| Icing                       |                |                  | Not allowed |

Tab. 5-4: Ambient and operating conditions for storage

## 6 Mounting and installation

### 6.1 Mounting HCS01 Devices in the Control Cabinet



- 1 Mounting surface in control cabinet
- 2 Left-hand mounting
- 3 Back-side mounting (standard mounting)
- 4 Right-hand mounting

Fig. 6-1: Options for Mounting

#### Notes on Mounting

- Observe the **minimum distances** to be complied with for mounting (see technical data or dimensional drawings).  
The specified horizontal minimum distance refers to the distance to neighboring devices or equipment installed in the control cabinet (such as cable ducts) and not to the distance to the control cabinet wall.
- The **back-side mounting** (back of device directly mounted to mounting surface in control cabinet) is the standard and should be used, if possible.
- The **left-hand or right-hand mounting** (left or right side of device directly mounted to mounting surface in control cabinet) can be used, if the mounting clearance between control cabinet wall and control cabinet front is not sufficient for back-side mounting.

**NOTICE!** Risk of damage by high temperatures! At the **back of the HCS01 devices**, there are **braking resistors** which can become very hot during operation. When arranging the devices in the control cabinet, make sure there aren't any heat-sensitive materials close to the braking resistors.

In the case of left-hand or right-hand mounting, you **must not pile the devices**. Each device must have immediate contact to the control cabinet wall.

- **Tightening torque** of the mounting screws: **6 Nm**
- On the sides of the devices, there are **adhesive labels with notes on safety**. The supplied accessory **HAS09** additionally contains these adhesive labels. If the adhesive labels at the devices are no longer visible after mounting, place the adhesive labels from the **HAS09** accessory clearly visibly at the device or in the immediate vicinity of the device.

## Mounting and installation

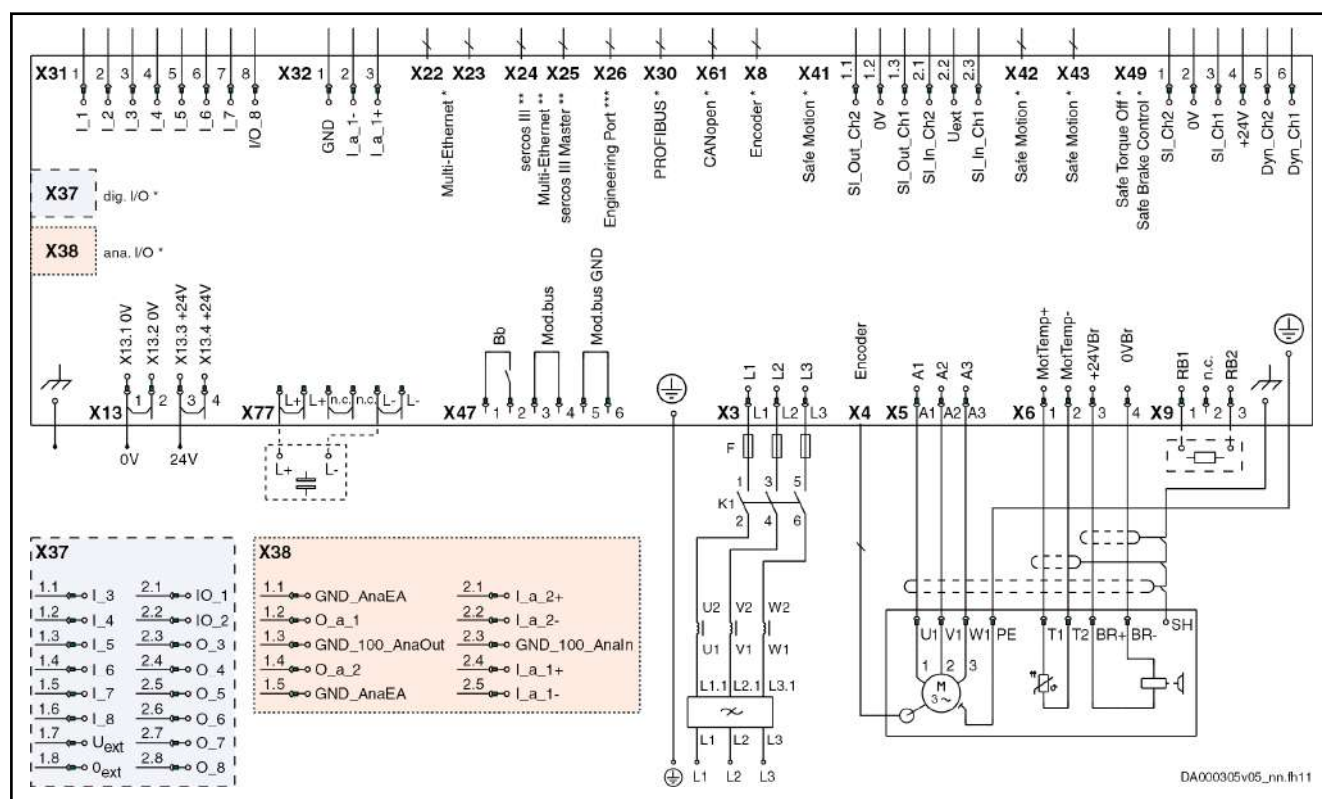
**Required Steps to Follow** HCS01 drive controllers were designed for control cabinet mounting. They are mounted with two screws (M6×20; contained in the supplied accessory [HAS09](#)).

### Mounting the drive controller

1. Fix screws to the back panel of the control cabinet.
2. Attach the drive controller to the screws.
3. Fix the screws with 6 Nm.

## 6.2 Electrical connection

### 6.2.1 Overall connection diagram



- \* Optional
- \*\* **ECONOMY** = sercos III; **BASIC** = Multi-Ethernet; **ADVANCED** = sercos III master
- \*\*\* Only exists at ADVANCED devices and devices with Engineering Port (EP option)
- X6.1, X6.2** T1 and T2 are not available at MSM motors. For proper function of the motor thermal management connect the motor thermal sensor as described in the wiring diagram. Otherwise motor overtemperature sensing is not provided by the drive. For Rexroth motors with data memory in the motor encoder, such as MSK, the motor overload protection level is set automatically while connecting the motor to the drive. There is no adjustment necessary. Otherwise refer to the Rexroth firmware documentation.
- X31** No standard assignment preset; make the assignment by means of firmware documentation (see Functional Description, index entry "Digital inputs/outputs")
- X47.1, X47.2** For the "ready for operation" message of the device, the Bb relay contact (X47.1, X47.2) has to be wired
- X47.3...6** Module bus only available at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices
- X77** DC bus connection (L+, L-) only available at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices

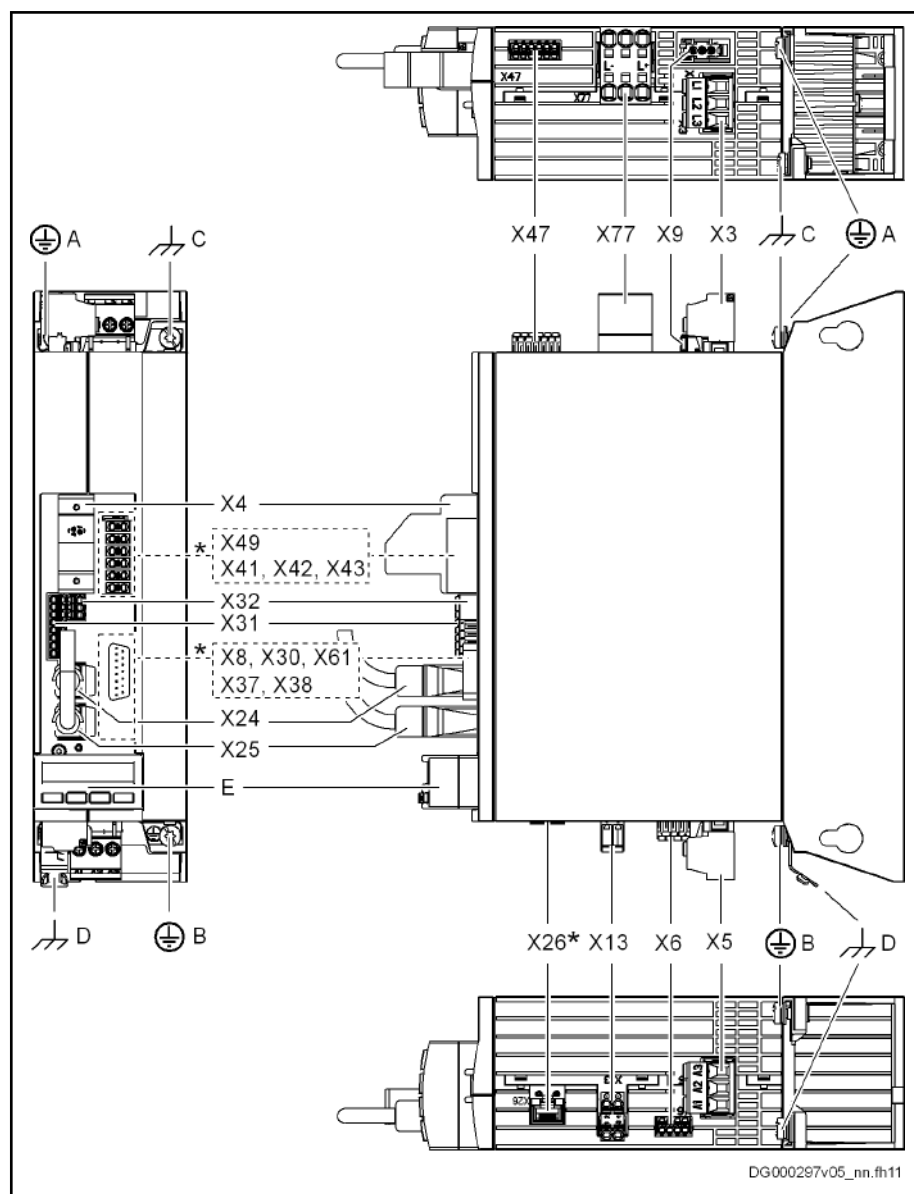
Fig. 6-2: Connection diagram

## Mounting and installation

### 6.2.2 Connection points

### Arrangement of the HCS01 connection points

### HCS01 connection points (ECONOMY, BASIC)



**\***

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| <b>*</b>   | Optional connection point                                     |
| <b>A</b>   | Connection point of equipment grounding conductor, mains      |
| <b>B</b>   | Connection point of equipment grounding conductor, motor      |
| <b>C</b>   | Control line shield connection                                |
| <b>D</b>   | Motor cable shield connection                                 |
| <b>E</b>   | Control panel   |
| <b>X3</b>  | Mains connection  |
| <b>X4</b>  | Motor encoder   |
| <b>X5</b>  | Motor connection  |
| <b>X6</b>  | Motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake             |
| <b>X8</b>  | Encoder evaluation (EC option); encoder emulation (EM option) |
| <b>X9</b>  | Integrated/external braking resistor                          |
| <b>X13</b> | 24V supply (control voltage)                                  |

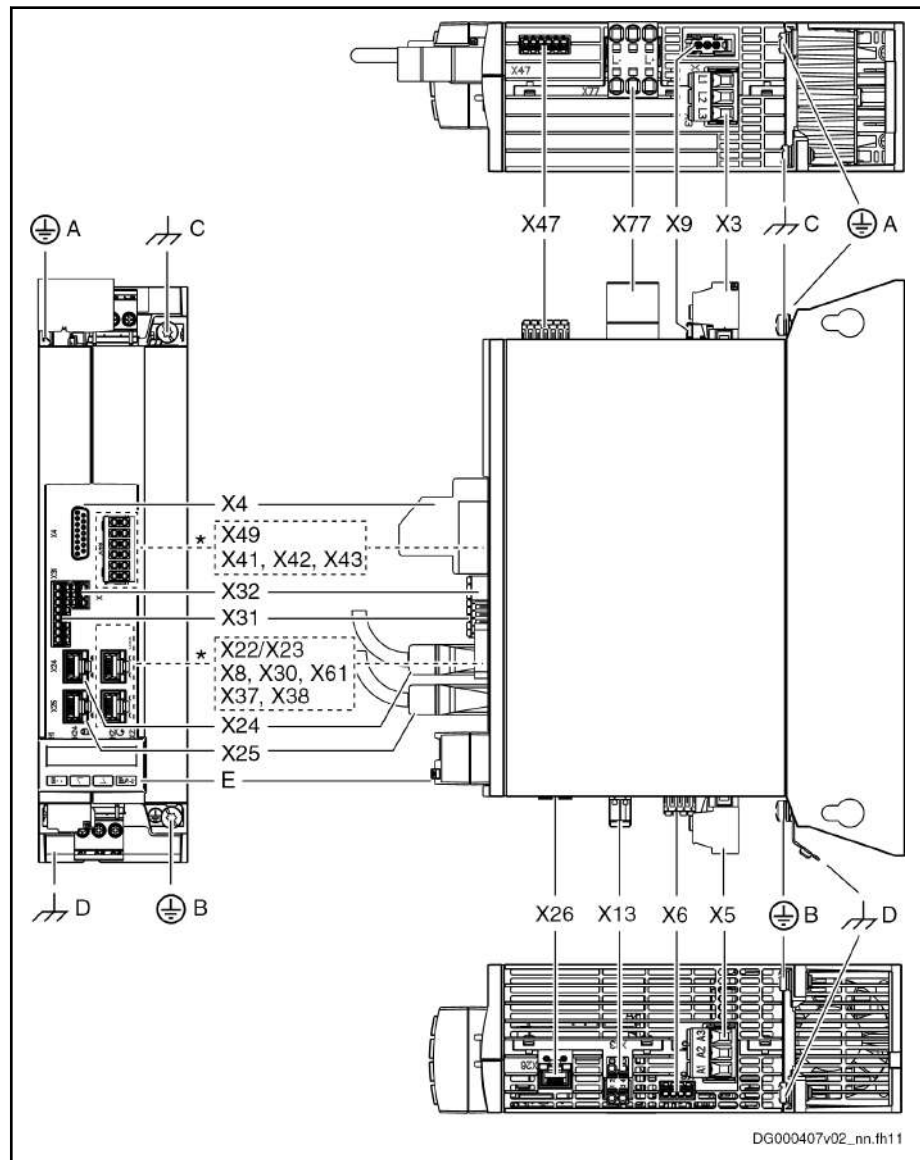
Mounting and installation

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>X24 / X25</b>     | <b>ECONOMY:</b> sercos III communication; <b>BASIC:</b> Multi-Ethernet communication   |
| <b>X26</b>           | Engineering interface  |
| <b>X30</b>           | PROFIBUS communication (PB option)   |
| <b>X31</b>           | Digital inputs, digital output   |
| <b>X32</b>           | Analog input   |
| <b>X37</b>           | Digital inputs/outputs (DA option)   |
| <b>X38</b>           | Analog inputs/outputs (DA option)  |
| <b>X41, X42, X43</b> | Safety technology (S4, S5 option: Safe Motion)   |
| <b>X47</b>           | Bb relay contact, module bus (module bus at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices only)  |
| <b>X49</b>           | Safety technology (L3 option: Safe Torque Off; L4 option: Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)   |
| <b>X61</b>           | CANopen communication (CN option)  |
| <b>X77</b>           | DC bus connection (at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices only);<br>DC bus connector optionally available (if the DC bus connector is not used, the DC bus connection must be covered with the supplied touch guard) |

*Fig. 6-3: HCS01 connection points*

## Mounting and installation

## HCS01 connection points (ADVANCED)



- \* Optional connection point
- A Connection point of equipment grounding conductor, mains
  - B Connection point of equipment grounding conductor, motor
  - C Control line shield connection
  - D Motor cable shield connection
  - E Control panel
  - X3 Mains connection
  - X4 Motor encoder
  - X5 Motor connection
  - X6 Motor temperature monitoring, motor holding brake
  - X8 Encoder evaluation (EC option); encoder emulation (EM option)
  - X9 Integrated/external braking resistor
  - X13 24V supply (control voltage)
  - X22 / X23 Multi-Ethernet communication (ET option)
  - X24 / X25 sercos III master
  - X26 Engineering interface
  - X30 PROFIBUS communication (PB option)



|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>X31</b>           | Digital inputs, digital output   |
| <b>X32</b>           | Analog input   |
| <b>X37</b>           | Digital inputs/outputs (DA option)   |
| <b>X38</b>           | Analog inputs/outputs (DA option)  |
| <b>X41, X42, X43</b> | Safety technology (S4, S5 option: Safe Motion)   |
| <b>X47</b>           | Bb relay contact, module bus (module bus at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices only)  |
| <b>X49</b>           | Safety technology (L3 option: Safe Torque Off; L4 option: Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)   |
| <b>X61</b>           | CANopen communication (CN option)  |
| <b>X77</b>           | DC bus connection (at HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 devices only);<br>DC bus connector optionally available (if the DC bus connector is not used, the DC bus connection must be covered with the supplied touch guard) |

Fig. 6-4: HCS01 connection points

## 6.2.3 On-board connection points

### Connection of Equipment Grounding Conductor

#### WARNING

High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!

- Before switching on and before commissioning, ground or connect the components of the electric drive and control system to the equipment grounding conductor at the grounding points.
- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the components of the electric drive and control system permanently to the main power supply at all times. The leakage current is greater than 3.5 mA.
- Establish an equipment grounding connection with a copper wire of a cross section of at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup> (8 AWG) or additionally run a second equipment grounding conductor of the same cross section as the original equipment grounding conductor.

#### WARNING

Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!

Exclusively operate the device

- with plugged on connectors (even if there haven't been any lines connected to the connectors) and
- with connected equipment grounding conductor!

## Mounting and installation

**Equipment grounding conductor: Material and cross section**

For the equipment grounding conductor, use the same metal (e.g. copper) as for the outer conductors.

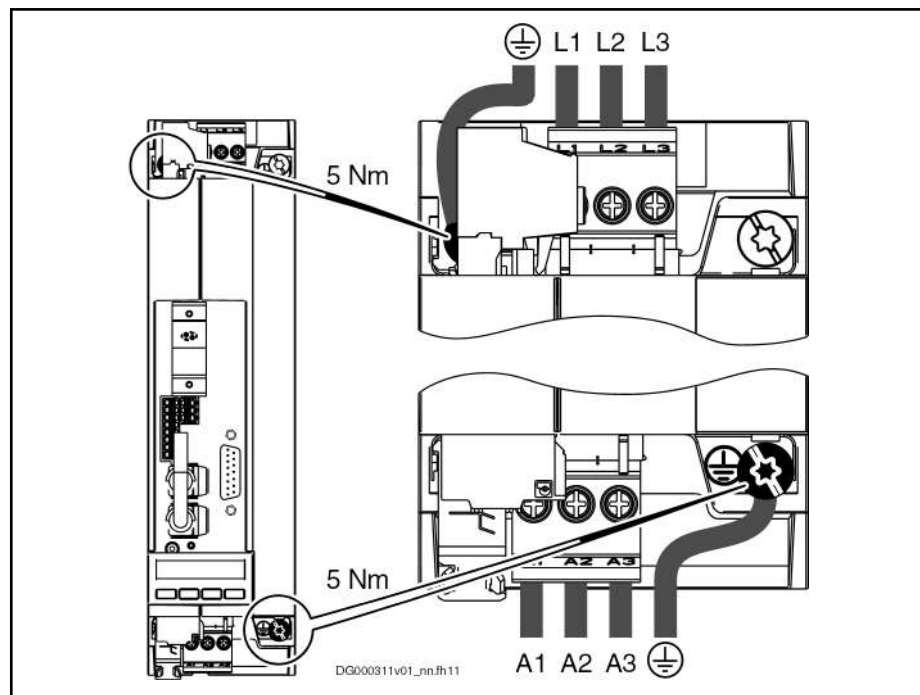
For the connections from the equipment grounding conductor connection of the device to the equipment grounding conductor system in the control cabinet, make sure the cross sections of the lines are sufficient.

Cross sections of the equipment grounding connections:

For **HCS01** drive controllers, **at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup>**, but not smaller than the cross sections of the outer conductors of the mains supply feeder.

Additionally, mount the housing to a bare metal mounting plate. Connect the mounting plate, too, with at least the same cross section to the equipment grounding conductor system in the control cabinet.

**Installation** Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the mains or motor cable via thread **M5** to the housing of the device (identification mark ; tightening torque: **5 Nm**). The screws **M5×12** required for this purpose are part of the supplied accessory **HAS09**.



L1, L2, L3  
A1, A2, A3

Mains connection  
Motor connection

Fig. 6-5:

Connection Point of Equipment Grounding Conductor

## X3, mains connection

### Important notes

#### **WARNING**

Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!

Exclusively operate the device

- with plugged on connectors (even if there haven't been any lines connected to the connectors) and
- with connected equipment grounding conductor!

#### Notes on installation

- The **equipment grounding conductor is connected** directly to the device and not via the connection point X3 (see [chapter "Connection of Equipment Grounding Conductor" on page 127](#)).
- Measure the **necessary cross section** of the connection cables according to the determined phase current  $I_{LN}$  and the mains fuse.
- **Single-phase mains connection** (outer conductor and neutral conductor): Connection to X3 can be made via L1, L2 or L3.


#### **NOTICE**

**Risk of damage to the device!**

Provide strain relief for the terminal connectors of the device in the control cabinet.


## Mounting and installation

**X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0003...W0013-x-02, -W0005-x-03, -W0008-x-03**

| View  | Identification  | Function  |      |
|---|-----------------|---|------|
|  | L1              | Connection to mains power supply (L1)                                       |      |
|   | L2              | Connection to mains power supply (L2)                                       |      |
|   | L3              | Connection to mains power supply (L3)                                       |      |
|   |                 |   |      |
| Terminal block  | Unit            | min.  | max. |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0.25  | 2.5  |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 24  | 14   |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 8   |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm              | 0.5   | 0.6  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section              |                 | See technical data of device used (I <sub>LN</sub> and A <sub>LN</sub> )    |      |
| Occurring voltage load  |                 | See technical data of device used (U <sub>LN</sub> or U <sub>LN,nom</sub> ) |      |


Tab. 6-1: Function, pin assignment, properties

**X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0018-x-02, -W0018-x-03, -W0028-x-03**

| View  | Identification | Function   |      |
|---|----------------|--|------|
|  | L1             | Connection to supply mains (L1)                                  |      |
|   | L2             | Connection to supply mains (L2)                                  |      |
|   | L3             | Connection to supply mains (L3)                                  |      |
|   |                |  |      |
| Terminal block  | Unit           | Min.   | Max. |
| Connection cable  | mm²            | 0,25   | 6,0  |
| Stranded wire   | AWG            | 24   | 10   |
| Stripped length   | mm             | 10   |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm             | 0,5  | 0,8  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section                |                | See technical data of device used ( $I_{LN}$ and $A_{LN}$ )      |      |
| Occurring voltage load  |                | See technical data of device used ( $U_{LN}$ or $U_{LN\_nenn}$ ) |      |

Tab. 6-2: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

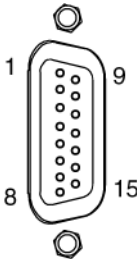
### X3, mains connection HCS01.1E-W0054-x-03

| View  | Identification  | Function   |      |
|---|-----------------|--|------|
|  | L1              | Connection to mains power supply (L1)                          |      |
|   | L2              | Connection to mains power supply (L2)                          |      |
|   | L3              | Connection to mains power supply (L3)                          |      |
|   |                 |  |      |
| Terminal block  | Unit            | min.   | max. |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0.75   | 10.0 |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 18   | 8    |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 14   |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm              | 1.5  | 1.7  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section              |                 | See technical data of device used ( $I_{LN}$ and $A_{LN}$ )    |      |
| Occurring voltage load  |                 | See technical data of device used ( $U_{LN}$ or $U_{LN,nom}$ ) |      |

Tab. 6-3: Function, pin assignment, properties

Mounting and installation

X4, motor encoder connection

| View  | Identifica-<br>tion | Function                 |      |
|---|---------------------|--------------------------|------|
|  <p>DA000053v01_nn.FH9</p> | X4                  | Motor encoder connection |      |
|   |                     |                          |      |
| D-Sub, 15-pin, female   | Unit                | min.                     | max. |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire   | mm <sup>2</sup>     | 0.25                     | 0.5  |
| Type of encoder evaluation  |                     | EC                       |      |

Tab. 6-4: Function, properties

Technical data
 [chapter 7.1.1 "EC - standard encoder evaluation" on page 181](#)

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Supported encoder systems | Encoder systems with a supply voltage of <b>5 and 12 V</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MSM motor encoder</li> <li>MS2N motor encoder</li> <li>MSK motor encoder</li> <li>1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; HIPERFACE®</li> <li>1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; EnDat 2.1; EnDat 2.2</li> <li>1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; with reference track</li> <li>5V TTL square-wave encoder; with reference track</li> <li>SSI</li> <li>Combined encoder for SSI (combination of SSI and 1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder)</li> <li>Resolver (resolvers are <b>not</b> supported if optional "Safe Motion" safety technology is also in use)</li> <li>Hall sensor box SHL02.1</li> <li>Digital Hall sensor in conjunction with Hall sensor adapter box SHL03.1</li> </ul> |
|---------------------------|--|

Mounting and installation

Pin Assignment

| Connection        | Signal       | Function                                     |
|-------------------|--------------|--|
| 1                 | GND_shld     | Connection signal shields (internal shields) |
| 2                 | A+           | Track A analog positive                      |
| 3                 | A-           | Track A analog negative                      |
| 4                 | GND_Encoder  | Reference potential power supplies           |
| 5                 | B+           | Track B analog positive                      |
| 6                 | B-           | Track B analog negative                      |
| 7                 | EncData+     | Data transmission positive                   |
|                   | A+TTL        | Track A TTL positive                         |
| 8                 | EncData-     | Data transmission negative                   |
|                   | A-TTL        | Track A TTL negative                         |
| 9                 | R+           | Reference track positive                     |
| 10                | R-           | Reference track negative                     |
| 11                | +12V         | Encoder supply 12V                           |
| 12                | +5V          | Encoder supply 5V                            |
| 13                | EncCLK+      | Clock positive                               |
|                   | B+TTL        | Track B TTL positive                         |
| 14                | EncCLK-      | Clock negative                               |
|                   | B-TTL        | Track B TTL negative                         |
| 15                | Sense-       | Return of reference potential (Sense line)   |
|                   | VCC_Resolver | Resolver supply                              |
| Connector housing |              | Overall shield                               |

Tab. 6-5: Pin Assignment

## Mounting and installation

## X5, Motor Connection

## Important Notes

**⚠ WARNING**

Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!

Exclusively operate the device

- with plugged on connectors (even if there haven't been any lines connected to the connectors) and
- with connected equipment grounding conductor!

**NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the device!

Provide strain relief for the terminal connectors of the device in the control cabinet.

## Notes on Installation

The equipment grounding conductor is connected directly to the device and not via the connection point X5.

The indicated connection cross sections are the cross sections which can be connected. Dimension the **required cross section** of the connection lines according to the occurring current load.





- For optimum shield contact of the motor power cable, use the supplied accessory [HAS09](#).
- For the connection between drive controller and motor, use our ready-made motor power cables, where possible.
- When using NFD03.1 mains filters, the maximum allowed conductor cross section is limited to 4 mm<sup>2</sup>.



Mounting and installation



**X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0003...W0013-x-02, -W0005-x-03, -W0008-x-03**

| View  | Identification  | Function   |      |
|---|-----------------|--|------|
|  | A1              | For power connection U1 at motor   |      |
|   | A2              | For power connection V1 at motor   |      |
|   | A3              | For power connection W1 at motor   |      |
|   |                 |  |      |
| Screw connection at connector   | Unit            | Min.   | Max. |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25   | 2,5  |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 24   | 12   |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 8  |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm              | 0,5  | 0,6  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section              | A               | See technical data of device used ( <i>I</i> <sub>out</sub> )  |      |
| Occurring voltage load  | V               | See technical data of device used ( <i>U</i> <sub>out</sub> )  |      |
| Short circuit protection  |                 | A1, A2, A3 against each other and each of them against ground  |      |
| Connection of equipment grounding conductor                                       |                 | Via connection point of equipment grounding conductor  at device (see index entry " <a href="#">Connection → Equipment grounding conductor</a> ") |      |

Tab. 6-6: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

## Mounting and installation



**X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0018-x-02, -W0018-x-03, -W0028-x-03**

| View  | Identification  | Function   |      |
|---|-----------------|--|------|
|  | A1              | For power connection U1 at motor   |      |
|   | A2              | For power connection V1 at motor   |      |
|   | A3              | For power connection W1 at motor   |      |
|   |                 |  |      |
| Screw connection at connector   | Unit            | Min.   | Max. |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25   | 6,0  |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 24   | 10   |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 10   |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm              | 0,5  | 0,8  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section              | A               | See technical data of device used ( $I_{out}$ )  |      |
| Occurring voltage load  | V               | See technical data of device used ( $U_{out}$ )  |      |
| Short circuit protection  |                 | A1, A2, A3 against each other and each of them against ground  |      |
| Connection of equipment grounding conductor                                       |                 | Via connection point of equipment grounding conductor <br>at device |      |

Tab. 6-7: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

Mounting and installation

X5, Motor Connection HCS01.1E-W0054-x-03

| View  | Identification  | Function  |      |
|---|-----------------|---|------|
|  | A1              | For power connection U1 at motor  |      |
|   | A2              | For power connection V1 at motor  |      |
|   | A3              | For power connection W1 at motor  |      |
|   |                 |   |      |
| Screw connection at connector   | Unit            | Min.  | Max. |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,75  | 10,0 |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 18  | 8    |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 14  |      |
| Tightening torque   | Nm              | 1,5   | 1,7  |
| Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section              | A               | See technical data of device used ( <i>I<sub>out</sub></i> )  |      |
| Occurring voltage load  | V               | See technical data of device used ( <i>U<sub>out</sub></i> )  |      |
| Short circuit protection  |                 | A1, A2, A3 against each other and each of them against ground   |      |
| Connection of equipment grounding conductor                                       |                 | Via connection point of equipment grounding conductor at device  |      |

Tab. 6-8: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

Mounting and installation

X6, Motor Temperature Monitoring and Motor Holding Brake


 **WARNING**

**Dangerous movements! Danger to persons from falling or dropping axes!**

The standard motor holding brake provided or an external motor holding brake controlled directly by the drive controller are not sufficient on their own to guarantee personal safety!

Personal safety must be achieved using higher-level, fail-safe measures:

- Block off danger zones with safety fences or safety guards
- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes
  - adding external braking/arrester/clamping mechanisms
  - ensuring sufficient equilibration of the vertical axes

 **WARNING**

**Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**


The input of the motor temperature evaluation is **not** galvanically isolated from the housing. If the voltage applied to the input is impermissibly high (e.g. because of a flashover of the motor winding voltage), this voltage may come into contact with the housing. Ensure that the temperature sensor of the connected motor has a **double** isolation against the motor winding.

**NOTICE**

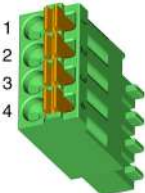
**Excessive voltage at the input of the motor temperature evaluation may cause damage to the device!**

The voltage allowed at the input of the motor temperature evaluation must correspond to the allowed control voltage of the device. If the voltage applied to the input is impermissibly high, the device may be damaged.

- Function**      Connection point X6 contains the connections for
- monitoring the motor temperature
  - controlling the motor holding brake



Via an integrated contact element (BR), the power section switches the voltage of the **external** 24-V supply to the output for controlling the motor holding brake.

| View   | Con-<br>nec-<br>tion | Signal name | Function  |
|--|----------------------|-------------|---|
| <br><small>DG800288v01_en.tif</small> | 1                    | MotTemp+    | Motor temperature evaluation in-<br>put           |
|  | 2                    | MotTemp-    |   |
|  | 3                    | +24VBr      | Output for controlling the motor<br>holding brake |
|  | 4                    | 0VBr        |   |

## Mounting and installation

| Spring terminal (connector)                                     | Unit            | Min.   | Max. |
|---|-----------------|--|------|
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire                               | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25   | 1,5  |
|   | AWG             | 24   | 16   |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 10   |      |
| Current carrying capacity of outputs X6                         | A               | -  | 1,25 |
| Time constant of load   | ms              | -  | 50   |
| Number of switching operations at maximum time constant of load |                 | Wear-free electronic contact                                       |      |
| Switching frequency   | Hz              | -  | 0,5  |
| Short circuit protection  |                 | X6.3 against X6.4 (output for controlling the motor holding brake) |      |
| Overload protection   |                 | X6.3 against X6.4 (output for controlling the motor holding brake) |      |

Tab. 6-9: Function, pin assignment

### Motor holding brake: selection

Maximum current carrying capacity of outputs X6: 1.25 A

$$\Rightarrow R_{br (min)} = U_{br (max)} / 1.25 \text{ A}$$

$R_{br (min)}$ : Minimum allowed resistance of the motor holding brake

$U_{br (max)}$ : Maximum supply voltage of the motor holding brake

If  $U_{br (max)} = 24 \text{ V} + 5\% = 25.2 \text{ V}$ , this results in:

$$R_{br (min)} = 20.16 \text{ } \Omega \text{ (applicable to all operating and ambient conditions)}$$

### Motor holding brake: installation instructions

Make sure the **power supply** for the motor holding brake at the motor is sufficient. You have to take into account that voltage drops on the supply line. Use connection lines with the highest possible cross section of the single strands.

Use an **external contact element in accordance with the required safety category**, if you wish to supply motor holding brakes with higher currents than the allowed current load at X6. Make sure to comply with the required minimum current consumption of 100 mA when using the external contact element. Otherwise, the brake current monitoring unit signals an error.

## Mounting and installation

## Connection diagram

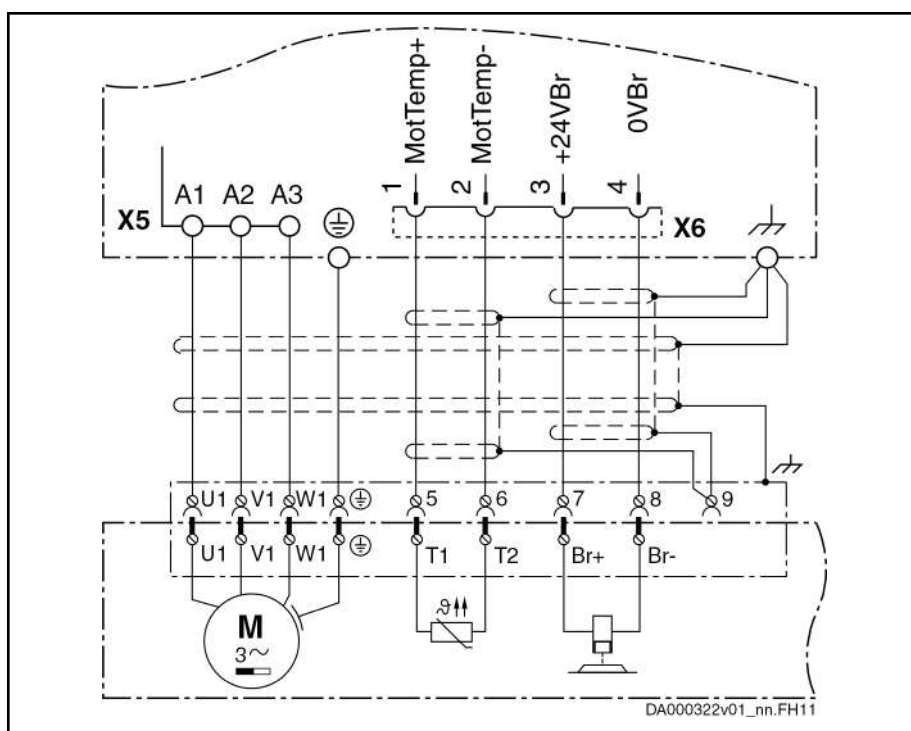


Fig. 6-6: Connection of motor temperature monitoring and motor holding brake

## X9, integrated/external braking resistor

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Exclusively operate the device

- with plugged on connectors (even if there haven't been any lines connected to the connectors) and
- with connected equipment grounding conductor!

### Function

X9 is used to connect the integrated or external braking resistor **HLR**. By means of an internal switch, the braking resistor is connected to the DC bus.



**Parameterize the external braking resistor** by means of the firmware to protect the drive controller and the braking resistor against overload:

- P-0-0860, Converter configuration
- P-0-0858, Data of external braking resistor

### Connection (HCS01.1E-W0003...W0028)

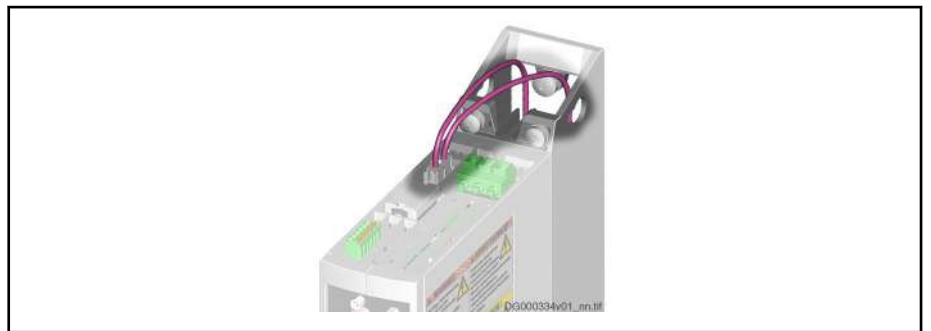


Fig. 6-7: Connecting the braking resistor (HCS01.1E-W0003...W0028)

### Connection (HCS01.1E-W0054)

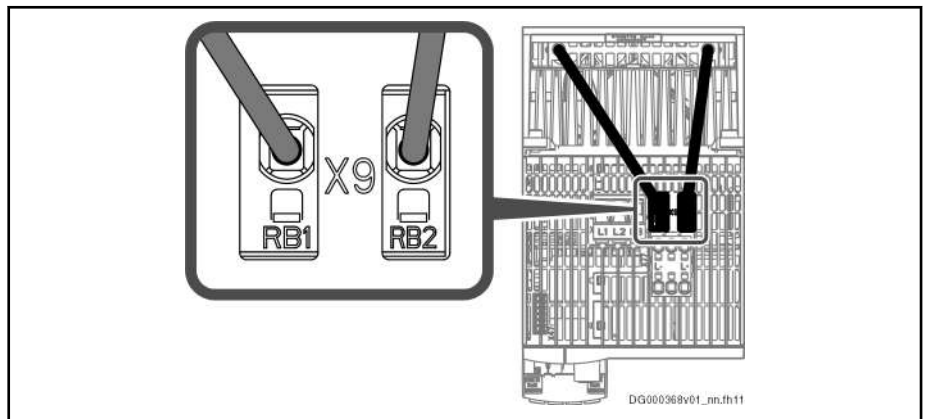


Fig. 6-8: Connecting the braking resistor (HCS01.1E-W0054)

### Notes on installation

Maximum allowed line length to external braking resistor: **5 m**  
**Twist** unshielded lines.

## Mounting and installation

The accessory HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN (snap-on ferrite) ensures that Class C3 of the EMC Directive EN 61800-3 is complied with for braking resistors installed outside of the control cabinet.

The snap-on ferrite is designed for the following components:

- HCS01.1E-W0018 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0028 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0054 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N28R0-E-007

**⚠ WARNING**

**Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

**Risk of burns by hot housing surfaces! Risk of fire!**

The temperature of the housing surface of an external HLR braking resistor can rise up to 150 °C. Run the connection lines with a sufficient distance (> 200 mm) to the housing of the HLR braking resistor to avoid damaging the insulation of the connection lines. Outside of the control cabinet, run the connection lines of an HLR braking resistor in a metal pipe with a wall thickness of at least 1 mm.

Do not touch hot housing surfaces! Mount the HLR braking resistor on a temperature-resistant mounting surface. Provide a sufficient distance between the HLR braking resistor and heat-sensitive materials. Make sure the cooling air supply is unrestricted. Take care that the environment can discharge the dissipation heat.

**NOTICE**

**Danger by insufficient installation!**

Protect the lines with the appropriate fusing elements in the supply feeder.

For the connection lines at X9, use at least the cross section of the lines for mains connection at X3. If this is impossible, select the cross section of the connection line at X9 in accordance with the continuous power of the braking resistor.




## X13, 24V Supply (Control Voltage)

### Function, Pin Assignment

The external 24V supply is applied via connection point X13 for

- the control section and power section of the drive controller
- brake control via X6
- the digital inputs and the digital output to X31 / X32

| View  | Conne-<br>ction | Signal name   | Function                             |
|---|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
|  | 1               | 0V  | Reference potential for power supply |
|   | 2               | 0V  |                                      |
|   | 3               | +24V  | Power supply                         |
|   | 4               | +24V  |                                      |
|   |                 |   |                                      |
| Spring terminal (connector)   | Unit            | Min.  | Max.                                 |
| <b>Connection cable</b><br>Stranded wire  | mm²             | 1,0   | 2,5                                  |
|   | AWG             | 16  | 12                                   |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 10  |                                      |
| Power consumption   | W               | P <sub>N3</sub> (see <a href="#">data for control voltage</a> ) |                                      |
| Voltage load capacity   | V               | U <sub>N3</sub> (see <a href="#">data for control voltage</a> ) |                                      |
| <b>Current carrying capacity "looping through"</b> from 0V to 0V, 24V to 24V      | A               | 10  |                                      |
| Polarity reversal protection  |                 | Within the allowed voltage range by internal protective diode   |                                      |
| Insulation monitoring   |                 | Possible  |                                      |

Tab. 6-10: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

### Notes on Installation

Requirements on the connection to the 24V supply:

- Minimum cross section: 1 mm<sup>2</sup>
- Maximum allowed inductance: 100 µH (2 twisted single strands, 75 m long)
- Parallel line routing where possible

Depending on the power consumption of the devices and the current carrying capacity of the connector X13, check via how many devices one line for 24V supply can be looped through. You might possibly have to connect another device directly to the 24V supply and then loop through the control voltage from this device to other devices.

Mounting and installation

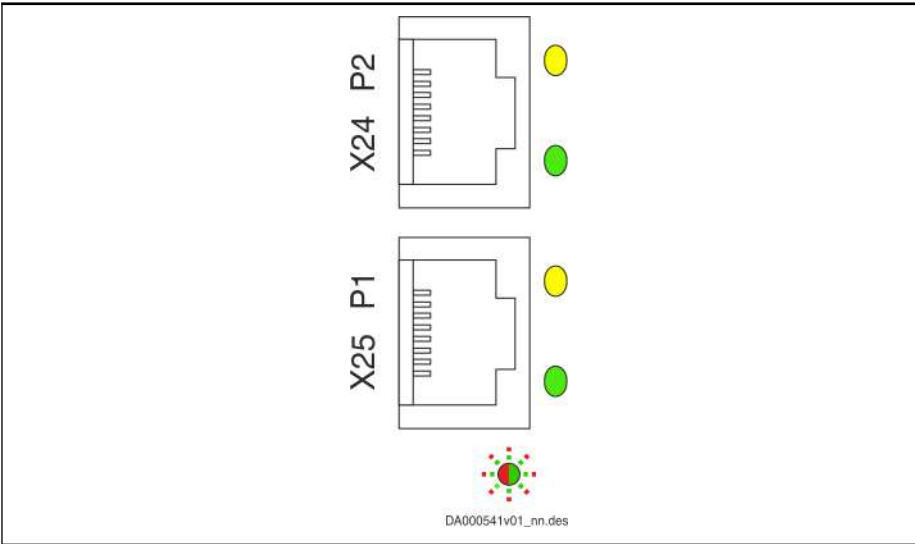
X24 P2, X25 P1, communication

| Control section type | Function   |
|----------------------|--|
| ECONOMY              | sercos III, EtherCAT (S3)<br>Communication module for sercos III and EtherCAT field bus systems  |
| BASIC                | Multi-Ethernet (ET)<br>With the Multi-Ethernet communication module "ET", drive controllers can be integrated in different Ethernet field bus systems (e.g. sercos III, EtherCAT, EtherNet/IP or PROFINET IO).   |
| ADVANCED             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sercos III master (CC)<br/>Is used as "master" for cross communication (CC = Cross Communication)</li> <li>Multi-Ethernet (ET)<br/>With the Multi-Ethernet communication module "ET", drive controllers can be integrated in different Ethernet field bus systems (e.g. sercos III, EtherCAT, EtherNet/IP or PROFINET IO).</li> </ul> |

Tab. 6-11: X24 P2, X25 P1, communication

Description

The connection point complies with IEEE 802.3 standard.



Tab. 6-12: Connection point

**P1, P2** P1 means "Port 1" and P2 means "Port 2". Thereby, the error counter of the firmware can be directly assigned to a Port.

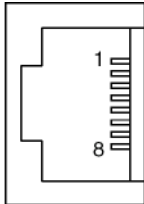
**Connection** sercos III, EtherNet/IP, PROFINET:

- Input: arbitrary
- Output: arbitrary

EtherCAT:

- Input: X25 P1
- Output: X24 P2

## Mounting and installation

| View   | Connection   | Signal name | Function                        |
|--|--|-------------|---------------------------------|
|  <p>DA000041v01_nn.FH</p> | 1  | TD+         | Transmit, differential output A |
|  | 2  | TD-         | Transmit, differential output B |
|  | 3  | RD+         | Receive, differential input A   |
|  | 4  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 5  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 6  | RD-         | Receive, differential input B   |
|  | 7  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 8  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | Housing  |             | Shield connection               |
| <b>Properties</b>  |  |             |                                 |
| Standard   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ethernet</li> <li>Type: RJ-45, 8-pin</li> </ul>   |             |                                 |
| Compatibility  | 100Base-TX according to IEEE 802.3u  |             |                                 |
| Recommended cable type   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>According to <b>CAT5e</b>; type of shield ITP (Industrial Twisted Pair)</li> <li>Ready-made cables which can be ordered: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>RKB0011</b><br/>Long cables (100 m at maximum) to connect the drive system to the higher-level control unit or remote communication nodes.<br/>Minimum bending radius: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>48.75 mm if laid flexibly</li> <li>32.50 mm if laid permanently</li> </ul> Order code for a 30 m long cable: RKB0011/030,0</li> <li><b>RKB0013</b><br/>Short cables to connect devices arranged side by side in the control cabinet.<br/>4 lengths available: 0.19 m; 0.25 m; 0.35 m; 0.55 m<br/>Order code for a 0.55 m long cable: RKB0013/00,55<br/>Minimum bending radius: 30.75 mm</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |             |                                 |

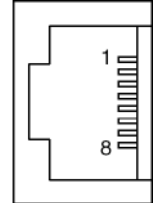
Tab. 6-13: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

**LEDs** [chapter 7.1.3 "ET - Multi-Ethernet" on page 207](#)

## Mounting and installation

## X26, Engineering interface

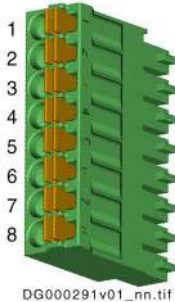
**Description** Exclusively at ADVANCED devices and devices with EP option.

| View   | Connection   | Signal name | Function                        |
|--|--|-------------|---------------------------------|
|  <p>DA000041v01_nn.FH</p> | 1  | TD+         | Transmit, differential output A |
|  | 2  | TD-         | Transmit, differential output B |
|  | 3  | RD+         | Receive, differential input A   |
|  | 4  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 5  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 6  | RD-         | Receive, differential input B   |
|  | 7  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | 8  | n. c.       | -                               |
|  | Housing  |             | Shield connection               |
| <b>Properties</b>  |  |             |                                 |
| Standard   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ethernet</li> <li>Type: RJ-45, 8-pin</li> </ul>   |             |                                 |
| Compatibility  | 100Base-TX according to IEEE 802.3u  |             |                                 |
| Recommended cable type   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>According to <b>CAT5e</b>; type of shield ITP (Industrial Twisted Pair)</li> <li>Ready-made cables which can be ordered: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>RKB0011</b><br/>Long cables (100 m at maximum) to connect the drive system to the higher-level control unit or remote communication nodes.<br/>Minimum bending radius: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>48.75 mm if laid flexibly</li> <li>32.50 mm if laid permanently</li> </ul> Order code for a 30 m long cable: RKB0011/030,0</li> <li><b>RKB0013</b><br/>Short cables to connect devices arranged side by side in the control cabinet.<br/>4 lengths available: 0.19 m; 0.25 m; 0.35 m; 0.55 m<br/>Order code for a 0.55 m long cable: RKB0013/00,55<br/>Minimum bending radius: 30.75 mm</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |             |                                 |

Tab. 6-14: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

**LEDs** [chapter 7.1.3 "ET - Multi-Ethernet" on page 207](#)

## X31, Digital Inputs, Digital Output

| View  | Con-<br>nection | Signal<br>name | Function             | Default assignment                                 |
|---|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|--|
| <br>DG000291v01_nn.tif | 1               | I_1            | Digital input        | Probe 1 <sup>1)</sup>                              |
|   | 2               | I_2            |                      | Probe 2 <sup>1)</sup>                              |
|   | 3               | I_3            |                      | E-Stop input <sup>2)</sup>                         |
|   | 4               | I_4            |                      | Travel range limit switch in-<br>put <sup>2)</sup> |
|   | 5               | I_5            |                      | Travel range limit switch in-<br>put <sup>2)</sup> |
|   | 6               | I_6            |                      | Not assigned <sup>2)</sup>                         |
|   | 7               | I_7            |                      | Not assigned <sup>2)</sup>                         |
|   | 8               | I/O_8          | Digital input/output | Not assigned                                       |
|   |                 |                |                      |  |
| Spring terminal (connector)   | Unit            | Min.           | Max.                 |  |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire   | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,2            | 1,5                  |  |
|   | AWG             | 24             | 16                   |  |
| Stripped length   | mm              | -              | 10                   |  |
| Input current   | A               | -              | 0,01                 |  |
| Input voltage   | V               | -              | 24                   |  |
| Output current I/O_8  | A               | -              | 0,5                  |  |

1) Digital Inputs Type B (Probe)  
2) Digital Inputs Type A (Standard)  
Tab. 6-15: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties



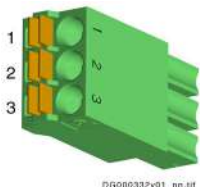
The **reference potential** for the digital inputs and the digital input/output is applied to **X13.1** and **X13.2**.

### Technical Data

- chapter "Digital Inputs Type A (Standard)" on page 218
- chapter "Digital inputs type B (probe)" on page 219
- chapter "Digital Outputs (Standard)" on page 222

## Mounting and installation

## X32, analog input


| View   | Conne-<br>ction | Signal name | Function   |
|--|-----------------|-------------|--|
| <br><small>DG080332v01_en.tif</small> | 1               | GND_100     | Connection for inner cable shield                  |
|  | 2               | I_a_1-      | Analog input                                       |
|  | 3               | I_a_1+      |  |
|  |                 |             |  |
| <b>Spring terminal (con-<br/>nector)</b>   | <b>Unit</b>     | <b>min.</b> | <b>max.</b>  |
| <b>Connection cable</b>  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0.2         | 1.5  |
| Stranded wire  | AWG             | 24          | 16   |
| Stripped length  | mm              | -           | 10   |
| Shielding  | -               | -           | Only use shielded cables for cable lengths > 30 m. |

Tab. 6-16: Function, pin assignment, properties

**Shield connection** [chapter "Analog inputs/outputs: Shield connection" on page 157](#)

**Technical data** [chapter 7.1.8 "Analog Voltage Input" on page 226](#)

## X47, Bb relay contact, module bus

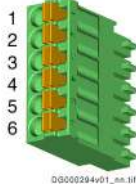
| HCS01.1E-xxxxx-x-02   |                      |             |                                |
|---|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| View  | Con-<br>nec-<br>tion | Signal name | Function                       |
|  | 1                    | Rel1        | Bb relay contact <sup>1)</sup> |
|   | 2                    | Rel2        | Bb relay contact <sup>1)</sup> |
|   |                      |             |                                |
| Spring terminal (connector)   | Unit                 | min.        | max.                           |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup>      | 0.2         | 1.5                            |
| Stranded wire   | AWG                  | 24          | 16                             |
| Stripped length   | mm                   | 10          |                                |
| Contact rating  | V                    |             | 30                             |
|   | A                    | 0.01        | 1                              |

- 1) Wire the Bb relay contact in the control circuit for mains connection (see [chapter "Control Circuit for the Mains Connection" on page 104](#)). When the contact opens, the mains contactor must interrupt the power supply.

Tab. 6-17: Function, pin assignment, properties

Technical data [chapter "Relay Contact Type 2" on page 229](#)

## Mounting and installation

| HCS01.1E-xxxx-x-03  |                 |             |                                |
|---|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| View  | Con-<br>nection | Signal name | Function                       |
|  | 1               | Rel1        | Bb relay contact <sup>1)</sup> |
|   | 2               | Rel2        | Bb relay contact <sup>1)</sup> |
|   | 3               | Mod1        | Module bus <sup>2)</sup>       |
|   | 4               | Mod2        | Module bus <sup>2)</sup>       |
|   | 5               | 0V_Mod      | Module bus GND <sup>2)</sup>   |
|   | 6               | 0V_Mod      | Module bus GND <sup>2)</sup>   |
|   |                 |             |                                |
| Spring terminal (connector)   | Unit            | min.        | max.                           |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire   | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0.2         | 1.5                            |
|   | AWG             | 24          | 16                             |
| Stripped length   | mm              | 10          |                                |
| Contact rating  | V               |             | 30                             |
|   | A               | 0.01        | 1                              |

- 1) Wire the Bb relay contact in the control circuit for mains connection (see [chapter "Control Circuit for the Mains Connection" on page 104](#)). When the contact opens, the mains contactor must interrupt the power supply. If multiple devices supply the DC bus (group supply), connect the Bb relay contacts (X47) of all supplying devices in series.
- 2) The pins 3, 4 and 5, 6 are jumpered. This allows the module bus to be looped through from one device to the next.

Tab. 6-18: Function, pin assignment, properties

- Module bus connections** Maximum allowed length of an individual module bus connection: **10 m**
- In the following cases, use **shielded cables** for the module bus connection:
- The length of **an individual** module bus connection is **> 0.5 m**.
  - The total length of **all** module bus connections of the drive system is **> 3 m**.

Use shielded **cables** with a conductor gauge  $\geq 2 \times 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ .

Accessory for shield connection: HAS09.1-001-NNN-NN (see [chapter "Module bus cable shield connection" on page 256](#)).

**Technical data** [chapter "Relay Contact Type 2" on page 229](#)



## X77, L+ L-, DC Bus Connection

### WARNING

**Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Before accessing the device, wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages **to allow discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

**Never operate the drive controller without touch guard or without DC bus connector.** Only remove the touch guard, if you want to use the DC bus connector at the drive controller. If you do not use the DC bus connector any longer, you have to cover the DC bus connection with the supplied touch guard.

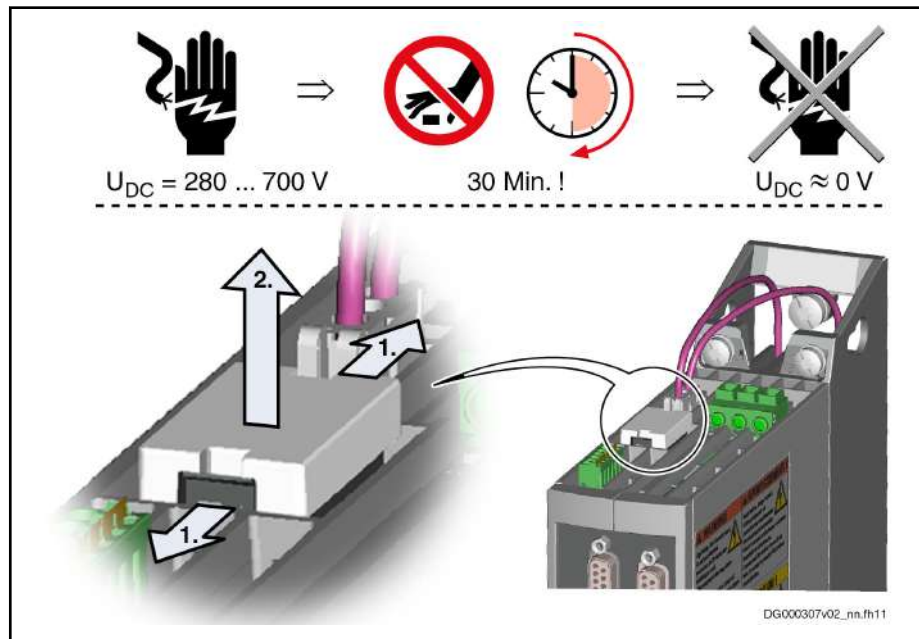


Observe the information on DC bus coupling (see [chapter 4.6.4 "DC bus coupling" on page 105](#)).

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Function, Pin Assignment | The DC bus connection connects <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• several HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 to each other</li><li>• one drive controller to a DC bus capacitor unit (to backup the DC bus voltage)</li></ul> |
| Touch Guard              | The DC bus connection has been provided with a touch guard at the factory. To plug the DC bus connector, you have to remove the touch guard.  |

## Mounting and installation

## How to Remove the Touch Guard:

 $U_{DC}$ 

30 Min. !

DC bus voltage

Before accessing the device, wait at least 30 minutes after switching off the supply voltages to allow discharging.

1. With a small screwdriver (blade width < 3 mm), push the fixing device outwards and simultaneously lever out the touch guard.
2. Pull off touch guard.
3. Store the touch guard in a place where you can find it later on. If you want to operate the device without DC bus connector, you have to plug the touch guard on connection point X77 again.

Fig. 6-9:

How to Remove the Touch Guard

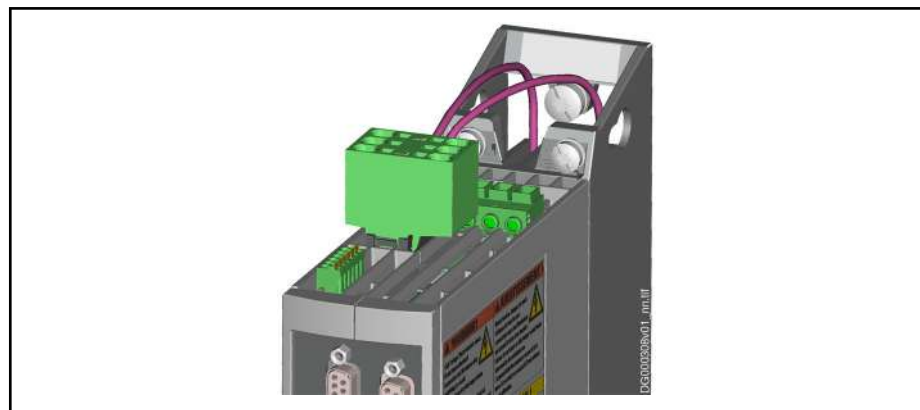
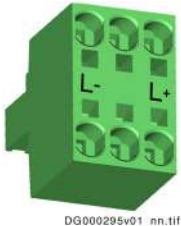


Fig. 6-10:

DC bus connector at device

## Mounting and installation

| View   | Identification  | Function   |
|--|-----------------|--|
|   | L-              | Connection points for connecting DC bus connections of several devices<br>(The DC bus connector is available as an accessory; see <a href="#">chapter 8.2.2 "DC Bus Connector (RLS0778/K06)" on page 258</a> ) |
|  | L-              |  |
|  | n. c.           |  |
|  | n. c.           |  |
|  | L+              |  |
|  | L+              |  |
|  |                 |  |
|  | <b>Unit</b>     |  |
| Maximum connection cross section (stranded wire)                                   | mm <sup>2</sup> | 6  |
|  | AWG             | 8  |
| Stripped length  | mm              | 15   |
| Short circuit protection   |                 | Via fusing elements connected in the incoming circuit to the mains connection  |
| Overload protection  |                 | Via fusing elements connected in the incoming circuit to the mains connection  |
| Maximum <b>current carrying capacity "looping through"</b> from L+ to L+, L- to L- | A               | 31   |

Tab. 6-19: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

### Notes on Installation

To wire the DC bus, use the shortest possible flexible, **twisted** wires.  
When the DC buses of several devices have been coupled, the lines **mustn't be run outside of the control cabinet**.

### NOTICE

**Risk of damage by reversing the polarity of the DC bus connections L- and L+**

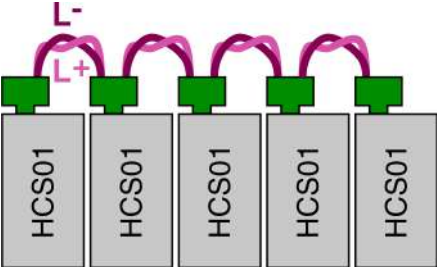
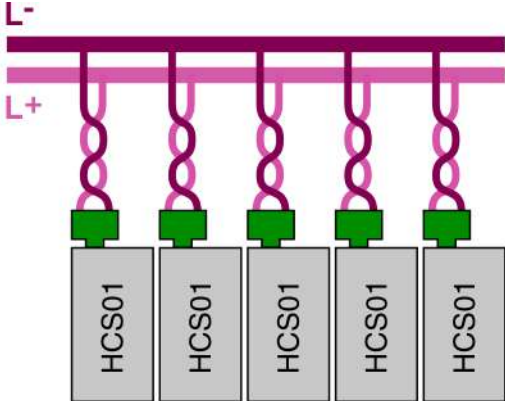
Make sure the polarity is correct.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Length of twisted wire                              | Max. 2 m  |
| Line cross section                                  | Min. 6 mm <sup>2</sup> ,<br>but not smaller than cross section of supply feeder |
| Line protection                                     | By means of fuses in the mains connection                                       |
| Dielectric strength of single strand against ground | ≥ 750 V (e.g.: strand type - H07)   |

Tab. 6-20: DC Bus Line

Mounting and installation

Options for interconnecting the DC buses of several devices:

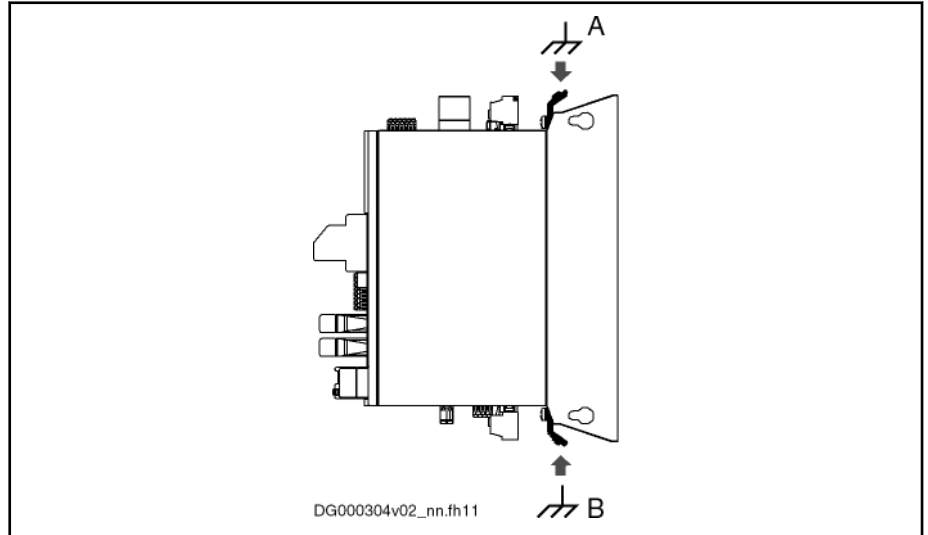
| Direct connection  | Indirect connection via connecting bars   |
|--|---|
|  <p>DA000325v01_nn.FH11</p> |  <p>DA000326v01_nn.FH11</p> |

Tab. 6-21:      DC Bus Connection

## Shield connection

### Shield connection plates

Special plates are used for shield connection of cables that are connected to the device. The plates are part of the **HAS09** accessories and are screwed to the device.



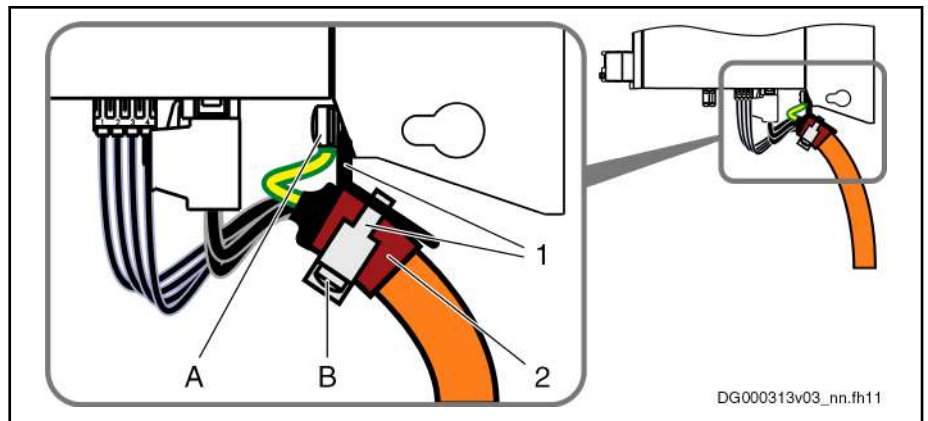
- A Control line shield connection
- B Motor cable shield connection

Fig. 6-11: Shield connection



The shield connection should not be used for strain relief of the cables. Mount a separate strain relief near the drive controller.

### Motor cable shield connection



- 1 Plates
- 2 Shield of motor cable
- A Screw (M5×12 or M5×16); tightening torque: 5 Nm
- B Screw (M5×30); tightening torque: 1 Nm

Fig. 6-12: Motor cable shield connection

## Mounting and installation

## Control line shield connection

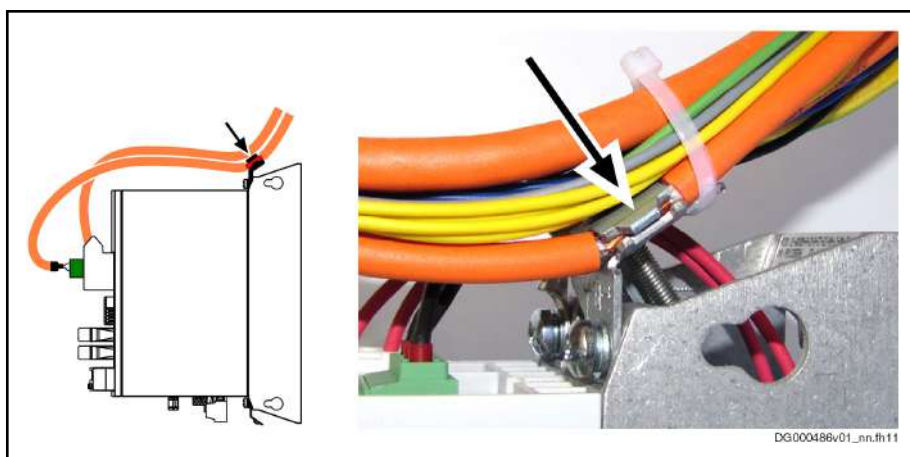
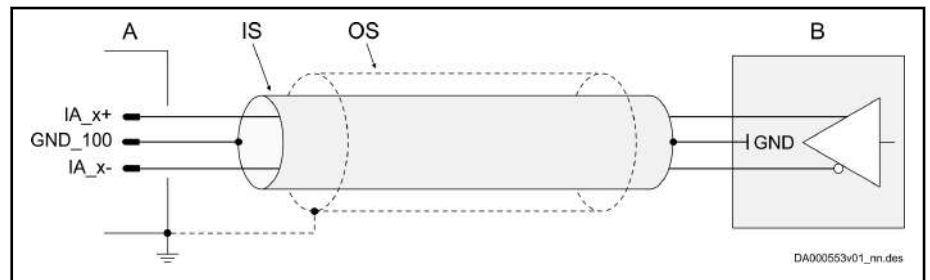


Fig. 6-13: Shield Connection of Shielded Lines at the Top of the Device

## Analog inputs/outputs: Shield connection

### Analog input



**A** Analog input of the drive controller; **only connect the inner shield of the connection cable to the drive controller if GND has not been connected to ground in the external device.**

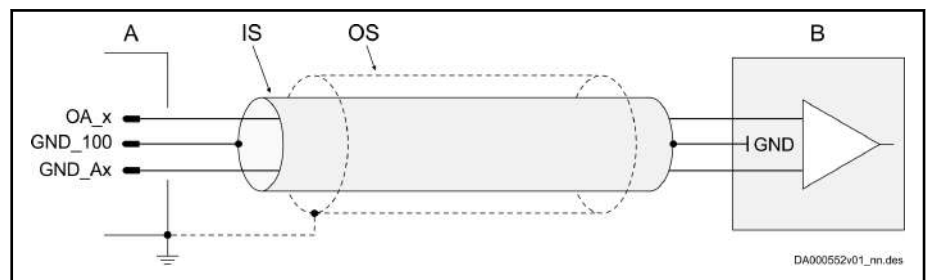
**B** External device

**IS** Inner shield of the connection cable

**OS** Overall shield of the connection cable

Fig. 6-14: Shield connection for analog inputs

### Analog output



**A** Analog output of drive controller

**B** External device; **only connect the inner shield of the connection cable to the external device if GND has not been connected to ground in the external device.**

**IS** Inner shield of the connection cable

**OS** Overall shield of the connection cable

Fig. 6-15: Shield connection for analog outputs

## Mounting and installation

### Ground connection

The ground connection of the housing is used to provide functional safety of the drive controllers and protection against contact in conjunction with the equipment grounding conductor.

Ground the housings of the drive controllers:

1. Connect the bare metal back panel of the drive controller in conductive form to the mounting surface in the control cabinet. To do this, use the supplied mounting screws.
2. Connect the mounting surface of the control cabinet in conductive form to the equipment grounding system.
3. For the ground connection, observe the maximum allowed ground resistance.



## 6.2.4 Optional connection points

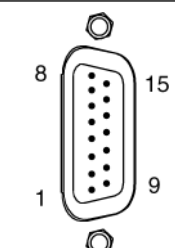
### X8, Optional Encoder (Option EC)

You can connect an optional encoder to connection point X8.

Technical data: See [description of connection point X4](#).

### X8, Encoder Emulation (Option EM)

**Description** Emulation of absolute value and incremental encoder signals for further evaluation by a control unit. The signals are galvanically isolated from the circuit board.

| View  | Identification  | Function          |             |
|---|-----------------|-------------------|-------------|
|  <p>DA000056v01_nn.FH9</p> | X8              | Encoder emulation |             |
| <b>D-Sub 15-pin, male</b>   | <b>Unit</b>     | <b>Min.</b>       | <b>Max.</b> |
| <b>Connection cable</b><br>Stranded wire  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25              | 0,5         |

Tab. 6-22: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

#### Emulated Encoder Systems

- Incremental encoder
- SSI encoder
- Incremental encoder with signal level converter

#### Pin Assignment

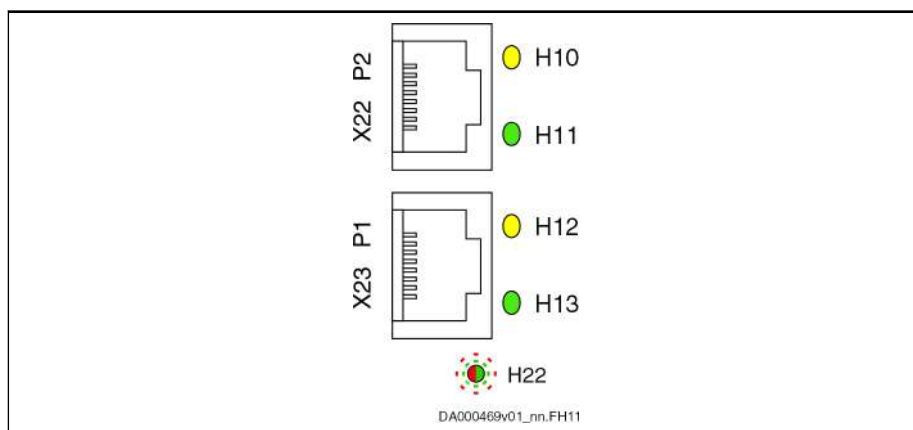
| Connection | Signal   | Level      | Input/Output | Function                       | Incremental encoder | SSI encoder | Incremental encoder with signal level converter |
|------------|----------|------------|--------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|---|
| 1          | n. c.    | -          | -            | Not assigned                   |                     |             |   |
| 2          | UL       | 5 ... 30 V | In           | Power supply for output driver |                     |             | ✓   |
| 3          | SSI_CLK+ | RS422      | In           | SSI clock positive             |                     | ✓           |   |
| 4          | SSI_CLK- | RS422      | In           | SSI clock negative             |                     | ✓           |   |
| 5          | n. c.    | -          | -            | Not assigned                   |                     |             |   |
| 6          | ULA0     | UL         | Out          | Reference track with UL level  |                     |             | ✓   |
| 7          | ULA1     | UL         | Out          | Track A1 with UL level         |                     |             | ✓   |

## Mounting and installation

| Con-<br>nection      | Signal    | Level | Input/<br>Output | Function                           | Incremen-<br>tal encod-<br>er | SSI en-<br>coder | Incremen-<br>tal encod-<br>er with<br>signal lev-<br>el convert-<br>er |
|----------------------|-----------|-------|------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|--|
| 8                    | ULA2      | UL    | Out              | Track A2 with UL level             |                               |                  | ✓  |
| 9                    | ULA0+     | RS422 | Out              | Reference track positive           | ✓                             |                  |  |
|                      | SSI_Data+ | RS422 | Out              | SSI data positive                  |                               | ✓                |  |
| 10                   | 0 V       | 0 V   | -                | Reference potential / inner shield | ✓                             | ✓                | ✓  |
| 11                   | ULA0-     | RS422 | Out              | Reference track negative           | ✓                             |                  |  |
|                      | SSI_Data- | RS422 | Out              | SSI data negative                  |                               | ✓                |  |
| 12                   | UA1+      | RS422 | Out              | Track A1 positive                  | ✓                             |                  |  |
| 13                   | UA1-      | RS422 | Out              | Track A1 negative                  | ✓                             |                  |  |
| 14                   | UA2+      | RS422 | Out              | Track A2 positive                  | ✓                             |                  |  |
| 15                   | UA2-      | RS422 | Out              | Track A2 negative                  | ✓                             |                  |  |
| Connector<br>housing | -         | -     | -                | Overall shield                     |                               |                  |  |

Tab. 6-23: Pin Assignment

## X22 P2, X23 P1, Multi-Ethernet (ET option)



Tab. 6-24: Connection point

Technical data [chapter "X24 P2, X25 P1, communication" on page 144](#)

## X26, Engineering interface

See [chapter "X26, Engineering interface" on page 146](#).

Mounting and installation

X30, PROFIBUS PB

Description

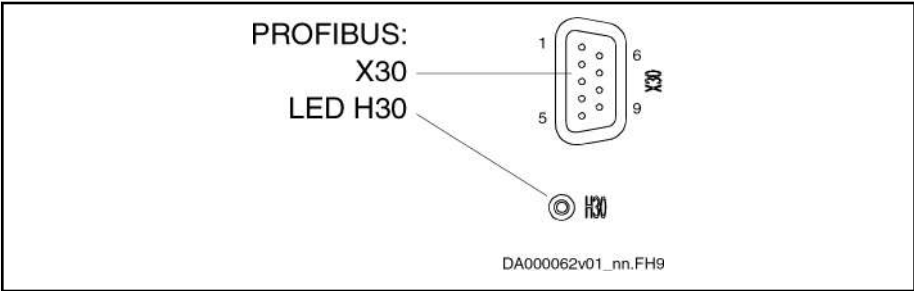
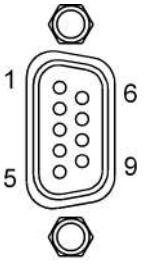


Fig. 6-16: PROFIBUS Interface

| View  | Identification  | Function    |      |
|---|-----------------|-------------|------|
| <br>DA000054v01_nn.FH9 | X30             | PROFIBUS PB |      |
| D-Sub, 9-pin, female  | Unit            | Min.        | Max. |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire   | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,08        | 0,5  |

Tab. 6-25: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

Pin Assignment

| Pin | DIR | Signal | Function                       |
|-----|-----|--------|--------------------------------|
| 1   |     | -      | n. c.                          |
| 2   |     | -      | n. c.                          |
| 3   | I/O | RS485+ | Receive/transmit data-positive |
| 4   | O   | CNTR-P | Repeater control signal        |
| 5   |     | 0 V    | 0 V                            |
| 6   | O   | +5 V   | Repeater supply                |
| 7   |     | -      | n. c.                          |
| 8   | I/O | RS485- | Receive/transmit data-negative |
| 9   |     | 0V     | 0 V                            |

Tab. 6-26: Signal Assignment

Shield Connection

Via D-sub mounting screws and metallized connector housing.

Compatibility of the Interface

According to DIN EN 50 170

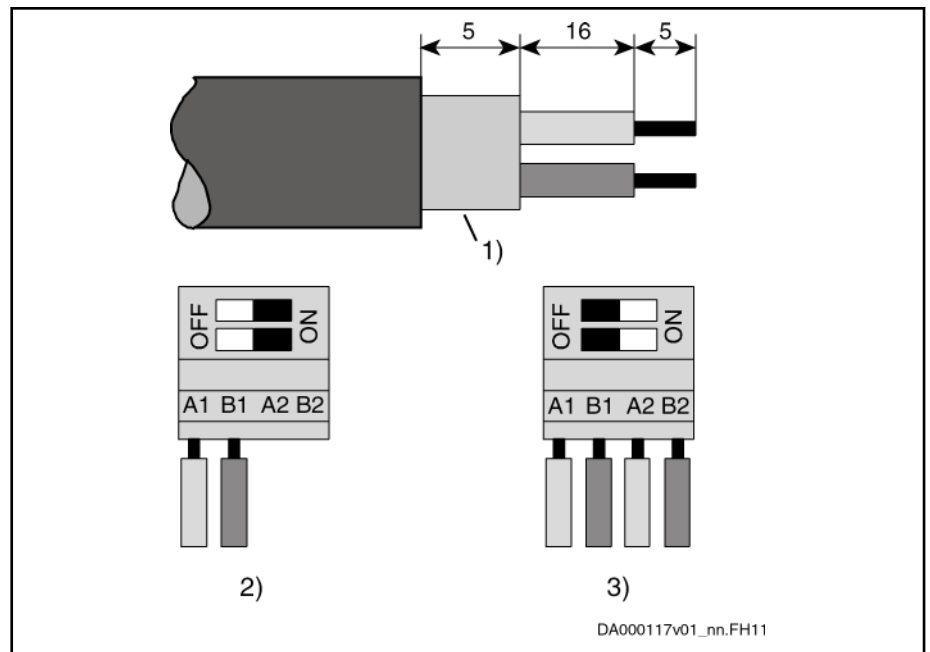
Recommended Cable Type

According to DIN EN 50 170 - 2, cable type A

Bus Connectors

The PROFIBUS connectors each have a connectable terminating resistor. The terminating resistor must always be active at both the first and last bus node. Carry out the connection as shown in the figures below.

## Mounting and installation



- 1) Shield  
2) Bus connection and switch position for first node and last node  
3) Bus connection and switch position for all other nodes

Fig. 6-17: Preparing a Cable for Connecting a Bus Connector

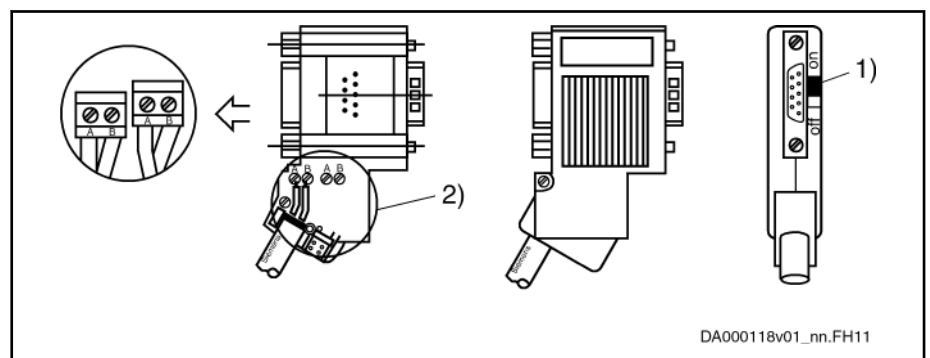
To assemble the bus cable, proceed as follows:

- Use cable according to DIN EN50170 / 2 edition 1996
- Strip cable (see figure above)
- Insert both cores into screw terminal block



Do not interchange the cores for A and B.

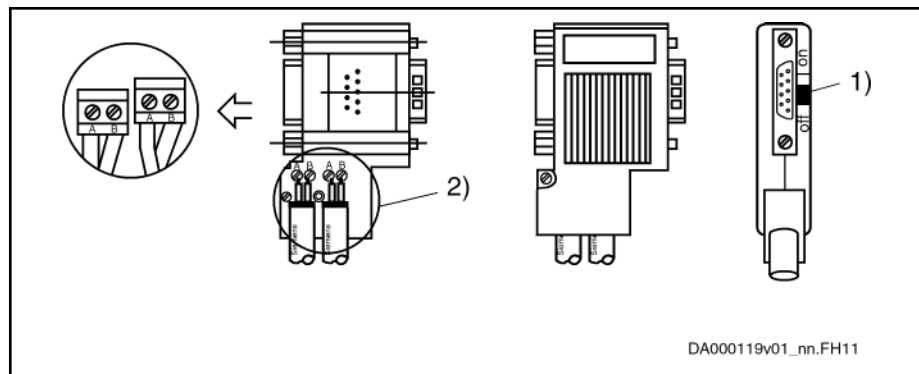
- Press cable sheath between both clamps
- Screw on both cores in screw terminals



- 1) Switch position for first slave and last slave in PROFIBUS-DP  
2) Cable shield must have direct contact to metal

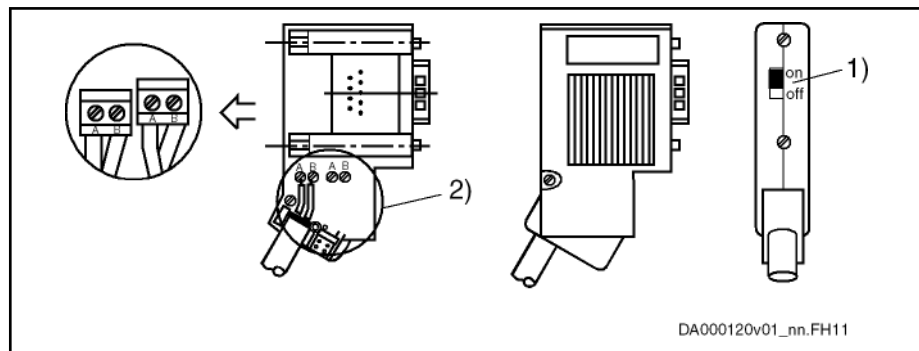
Fig. 6-18: Bus Connection for First and Last Slave, Bus Connector With 9-pin D-Sub Female Connector, INS0541

## Mounting and installation



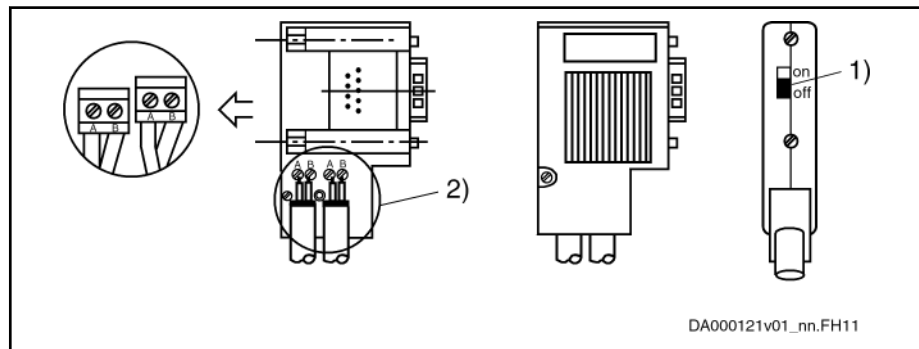
- 1) Terminating resistor is off
- 2) Cable shield must have direct contact to metal

Fig. 6-19: Bus Connection for all Other Slaves, Bus Connector With 9-pin D-Sub Female Connector, INS0541



- 1) Switch position for first slave and last slave in PROFIBUS-DP
- 2) Cable shield must have direct contact to metal

Fig. 6-20: Bus Connection for First and Last Slave, Without 9-pin D-Sub Female Connector, INS0540



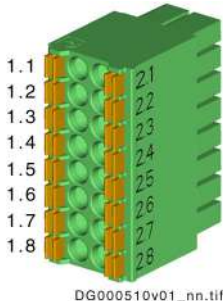
- 1) Terminating resistor is off
- 2) Cable shield must have direct contact to metal

Fig. 6-21: Bus Connection for all Other Slaves, Without 9-pin D-Sub Female Connector, INS0540

Connect the drive controller to a control unit using a shielded two-wire line in accordance with DIN 19245/Part 1.

Signal Specification [chapter 7.1.4 "PB - PROFIBUS" on page 214](#)

## X37, Digital Inputs/Outputs (DA Option)

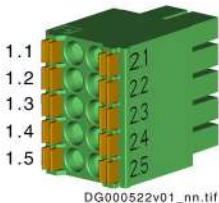
| View  | Conne-<br>ction | Signal name | Function                         | Conne-<br>ction | Signal name | Function             |
|---|-----------------|-------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------------|
|  | 1.1             | I_3         | Digital input                    | 2.1             | IO_1        | Digital input/output |
|   | 1.2             | I_4         |                                  | 2.2             | IO_2        |                      |
|   | 1.3             | I_5         |                                  | 2.3             | O_3         | Digital output       |
|   | 1.4             | I_6         |                                  | 2.4             | O_4         |                      |
|   | 1.5             | I_7         |                                  | 2.5             | O_5         |                      |
|   | 1.6             | I_8         |                                  | 2.6             | O_6         |                      |
|   | 1.7             | 24V_Ext     | Power supply (U <sub>ext</sub> ) | 2.7             | O_7         |                      |
|   | 1.8             | 0V_Ext      |                                  | 2.8             | O_8         |                      |
|   |                 |             |                                  |                 |             |                      |
| Spring terminal (con-<br>nector)  | Unit            | Min.        | Max.                             |                 |             |                      |
| Connection cable  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,2         | 1,5                              |                 |             |                      |
| Stranded wire   | AWG             | 24          | 16                               |                 |             |                      |
| Stripped length   | mm              | -           | 10                               |                 |             |                      |

Tab. 6-27: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

- Technical Data
- [chapter "Digital Inputs Type A \(Standard\)" on page 218](#)
  - [chapter "Digital Outputs \(Standard\)" on page 222](#)

Mounting and installation

X38, analog inputs/outputs (DA option)

| View   | Con-<br>nection | Signal name        | Function                          | Con-<br>nection | Signal name       | Function                         |
|--|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|
|  | 1.1             | GND_AnaEA          | GND reference                     | 2.1             | IA_2+             | Analog input                     |
|  | 1.2             | OA_1               | Analog output                     | 2.2             | IA_2-             |                                  |
|  | 1.3             | GND_100_An<br>aOut | GND reference of<br>analog output | 2.3             | GND_100_An<br>aIn | GND reference of<br>analog input |
|  | 1.4             | OA_2               | Analog output                     | 2.4             | IA_1+             | Analog input                     |
|  | 1.5             | GND_AnaEA          | GND reference                     | 2.5             | IA_1-             |                                  |
|  |                 |                    |                                   |                 |                   |                                  |
| Spring terminal (con-<br>nector)   | Unit            | min.               | max.                              |                 |                   |                                  |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0.2                | 1.5                               |                 |                   |                                  |
|  | AWG             | 24                 | 16                                |                 |                   |                                  |
| Stripped length  | mm              | -                  | 10                                |                 |                   |                                  |


Tab. 6-28:      Function, pin assignment, properties

Shield connection      [chapter "Analog inputs/outputs: Shield connection" on page 157](#)

- Technical data
- [chapter 7.1.8 "Analog Voltage Input" on page 226](#)
  - [chapter 7.1.9 "Analog current input" on page 227](#)
  - [chapter 7.1.10 "Analog Output" on page 228](#)



## X41, Safe Motion safety technology

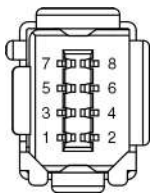
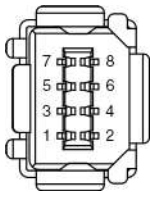
| View  | Con-<br>nec-<br>tion | Signal name | Function                                     |
|---|----------------------|-------------|--|
|  | 1.1                  | SI_Out_Ch2  | Safe output channel 2                        |
|   | 1.2                  | 0V          | Power supply of inputs/outputs ( $U_{ext}$ ) |
|   | 1.3                  | SI_Out_Ch1  | Safe output channel 1                        |
|   | 2.1                  | SI_In_Ch2   | Input 2                                      |
|   | 2.2                  | 24V         | Power supply of inputs/outputs ( $U_{ext}$ ) |
|   | 2.3                  | SI_In_Ch1   | Input 1                                      |
|   |                      |             |  |
| Spring terminal (connector)   | Unit                 | Min.        | Max.   |
| Connection cable<br>Stranded wire   | mm <sup>2</sup>      | 1           | 1.5  |
|   | AWG                  | 16          | 16   |
| Stripped length   | mm                   | -           | 10   |
| Polarity reversal protection<br>for power supply                                  | -                    | Available   |  |
| Overvoltage protection  | -                    | Available   |  |

Tab. 6-29: X41, Safe Motion safety technology

**Technical data** [chapter "Digital inputs \(safety technology S options\)" on page 221](#)  
[chapter "Digital outputs \(safety technology S options\)" on page 224](#)

## Mounting and installation

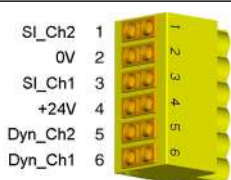
## X42, X43, Safe Motion safety technology (communication)

| View   | Identification        | Function   |
|--|-----------------------|--|
|  <p>X42:</p>  <p>X43:</p>  | <p>X42</p> <p>X43</p> | <p>Connection points for connecting the HSZ01 <sup>1)</sup> safety zone module and the safety zone nodes:</p> <p>X42: Input</p> <p>X43: Output</p> |
| <p><b>Connection cable</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum total length of <b>all</b> cables of a safety zone: <b>2500 m</b></li> <li>Maximum length of <b>one</b> cable between two connection points: <b>100 m</b></li> <li>Number of safety zone nodes (without HSZ01): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum: 35</li> <li>Minimum: 1</li> </ul> </li> <li>Ready-made cables that can be ordered: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>RKB0051</b><br/>Short cables to connect devices arranged side by side in the control cabinet.<br/>Available lengths: 0.19 m; 0.25 m; 0.35 m; 0.55 m<br/>Minimum bending radius: 4xD (= 4x6 mm = 24 mm)<br/>Order code for a 0.55 m long cable: RKB0051/00,55</li> <li><b>RKB0052</b><br/>Long cables to connect remote communication nodes, also outside of the control cabinet.<br/>Available lengths: 1 m; 2 m; 5 m<br/>Minimum bending radius: 8xD (= 8x6 mm = 48 mm)<br/>Order code for a 5 m long cable: RKB0052/005,0<br/>Flexible installation of the cable is not allowed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |                       |  |

1) See Project Planning Manual "IndraDrive Additional Components and Accessories" (R911306140).

Tab. 6-30: X42, X43

## X49, optional safety technology L3 or L4

| View   | Con-<br>nec-<br>tion | Signal name | Function                            |
|--|----------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
|  <p>SI_Ch2 1<br/>0V 2<br/>SI_Ch1 3<br/>+24V 4<br/>Dyn_Ch2 5<br/>Dyn_Ch1 6</p> | 1                    | SI_Ch2      | Input for selection of channel 2    |
|  | 2                    | 0V          | GND reference of inputs and outputs |
|  | 3                    | SI_Ch1      | Input for selection of channel 1    |
|  | 4                    | +24V        | Dynamization outputs power supply   |
|  | 5                    | Dyn_Ch2     | Channel 2 dynamization output       |
|  | 6                    | Dyn_Ch1     | Channel 1 dynamization output       |
| Spring terminal (connector)  | Unit                 | min.        | max.                                |
| Connection cable   | mm <sup>2</sup>      | 1           | 1.5                                 |
| Stranded wire  | AWG                  | 16          | 16                                  |
| Stripped length  | mm                   | -           | 8                                   |

Tab. 6-31: X49, optional safety technology Safe Torque Off

### Technical data

- [chapter "Digital inputs \(safety technology L options\)" on page 220](#)
- [chapter "Digital Outputs \(Safety Technology L Options\)" on page 223](#)



When the dynamization outputs do not work, check the power supply connection. The polarity might possibly have been reversed.

Mounting and installation

X61, CANopen (CN Option)

Description

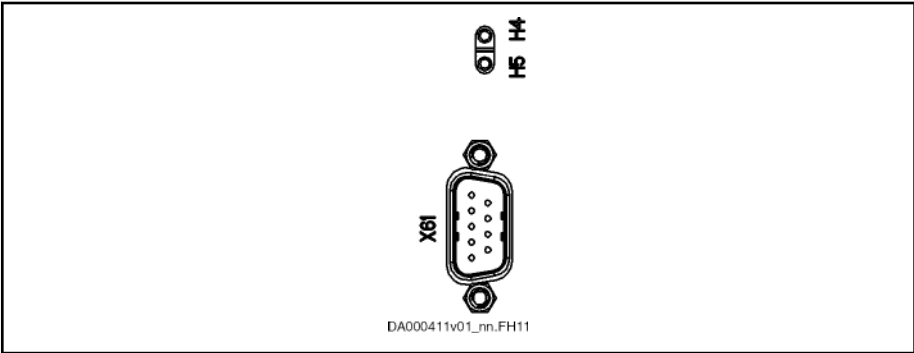


Fig. 6-22:      CANopen

Connection Point

| Conne-<br>ction point | Type  | Num-<br>ber of<br>poles | Type of de-<br>sign | Stranded wire<br>[mm²] | Figure                     |
|-----------------------|-------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| X61                   | D-Sub | 9                       | Pins on de-<br>vice | 0,25-0,5               | <p>DA000194v01_nn.FH11</p> |

Tab. 6-32:      Connection point

Pin Assignment

| Pin | Signal       | Function                            |
|-----|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1   | n. c.        | -                                   |
| 2   | CAN-L        | Negated CAN signal (Dominant Low)   |
| 3   | CAN-GND      | Reference potential of CAN signals  |
| 4   | n. c.        | -                                   |
| 5   | Drain/Shield | Shield connection                   |
| 6   | GND          | Reference potential of device       |
| 7   | CAN-H        | Positive CAN signal (Dominant High) |
| 8   | n. c.        | -                                   |
| 9   | n. c.        | -                                   |

Tab. 6-33:      Signal Assignment

Technical Data      [chapter 7.1.5 "CN - CANopen" on page 215](#)

## 6.2.5 EMC measures for design and installation

### Rules for designing installations with drive controllers in compliance with EMC

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>The following rules are the basics for designing and installing drives in compliance with EMC.</p>   |
| <b>Mains filter</b>                      | <p>Properly use a mains filter recommended by Rexroth for radio interference suppression in the supply feeder of the drive system.</p>  |
| <b>Control cabinet grounding</b>         | <p>Connect all metal parts of the cabinet with one another over the largest possible surface area to establish a good electrical connection. This also applies to mounting the mains filter. If required, use serrated washers which cut through the paint surface. Connect the cabinet door to the control cabinet using the shortest possible grounding straps.</p>   |
| <b>Line routing</b>                      | <p>Avoid coupling routes between lines with high potential of noise and noise-free lines; therefore, route signal, mains and motor lines, and power cables separately from another. Minimum distance: 10 cm. Provide separating sheets between power and signal lines. Ground separating sheets several times.</p> <p>Lines with a high potential of noise include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Lines at the mains connection (incl. synchronization connection)</li><li>• Lines at the motor connection</li><li>• Lines at the DC bus connection</li></ul> <p>Generally, interference injections are reduced by routing cables close to grounded sheet steel plates. For this reason, cables and wires should not be routed freely in the cabinet, but close to the cabinet housing or mounting plates. Separate the incoming and outgoing cables for the radio interference suppression filter.</p> |
| <b>Interference suppression elements</b> | <p>Equip the following components in the control cabinet with interference suppression combinations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Contactors</li><li>• Relays</li><li>• Solenoid valves</li><li>• Electromechanical operating hours counters</li></ul> <p>Connect these combinations directly at each coil.</p>  |
| <b>Twisted wires</b>                     | <p>Twist unshielded wires belonging to the same circuit (feeder and return cable) or keep the surface between feeder and return cable as small as possible. Wires that are not used have to be grounded at both ends.</p>   |
| <b>Lines for measuring systems</b>       | <p>Lines for measuring systems have to be shielded. Connect the shield to ground at both ends and over the largest possible surface area. The shield should not be interrupted, e.g., using intermediate terminals.</p>   |
| <b>Digital signal lines</b>              | <p>Ground the shields of digital signal lines at both ends (transmitter <b>and</b> receiver) over the largest possible surface area and with low impedance. In the case of bad ground connection between transmitter and receiver, also route a bonding conductor (min. 10 mm<sup>2</sup>). Braided shields are better than foil shields.</p>   |
| <b>Analog signal lines</b>               | <p>Ground the shields of analog signal lines at one end (transmitter <b>or</b> receiver) over the largest possible surface area and with low impedance. This avoids low-frequency interference current (in the mains frequency range) on the shield.</p>  |
| <b>Connecting the mains choke</b>        | <p>Keep connection lines of the mains choke at the drive controller as short as possible and twist them.</p>  |

## Mounting and installation

### Installing the motor power cable

With regenerative supply units, use shielded lines with the shield grounded at both ends for the connection between supply unit and mains choke.

- Use shielded motor power cables or run motor power cables in a shielded duct
- Use the shortest possible motor power cables
- Ground motor power cable shield at both ends over the largest possible surface area to establish a good electrical connection
- Run shielded motor lines inside the control cabinet
- Do not use any steel-shielded lines
- The shield of the motor power cable cannot be interrupted by mounted components, such as output chokes, sine filters or motor filters

## EMC-optimal installation in system and control cabinet

### General information

For EMC-optimal installation, it is recommended to spatially separate the area free from interference (mains connection) from the area prone to interference (drive components), as shown in the figures below.



Recommendation: For EMC-optimal installation in the control cabinet, use a separate control cabinet panel for the drive components.

### Division into areas (zones)

Sample arrangements in the control cabinet: See section [Control cabinet design according to interference areas - exemplary arrangements](#), page 173.

There are three areas:

#### 1. Control cabinet area free from interference (**area A**):

This includes:

- Supply feeder, input terminals, fuse, main switch, mains side of mains filter for drives and corresponding connecting lines
- Control voltage or auxiliary voltage connection with power supply unit, fuse and other parts unless connection is run through the mains filter of the AC drives
- All components that are not electrically connected to the drive system

#### 2. Area prone to interference (**area B**):

- Mains connections between drive system and mains filter for drives, mains contactor
- Interface lines for drive controller

#### 3. Area highly prone to interference (**area C**):

- Motor power cables including single cores

Never run lines from one of these areas along lines from another area to eliminate any unwanted interference injection from one area to the other and jumper the filter with regard to high frequency. Use the shortest possible connecting lines.

Recommendation for complex systems: Install drive components in one cabinet and the control units in a second, separate cabinet.

## Mounting and installation

Poorly grounded control cabinet doors can act as antennas. For this reason, connect the control cabinet doors to the cabinet on top, in the middle and on the bottom with short equipment grounding conductors with a cross section of at least 6 mm<sup>2</sup> or, even better, with grounding straps of the same cross section. Make sure connection points have good contact.

### Control cabinet design according to interference areas - exemplary arrangements

---



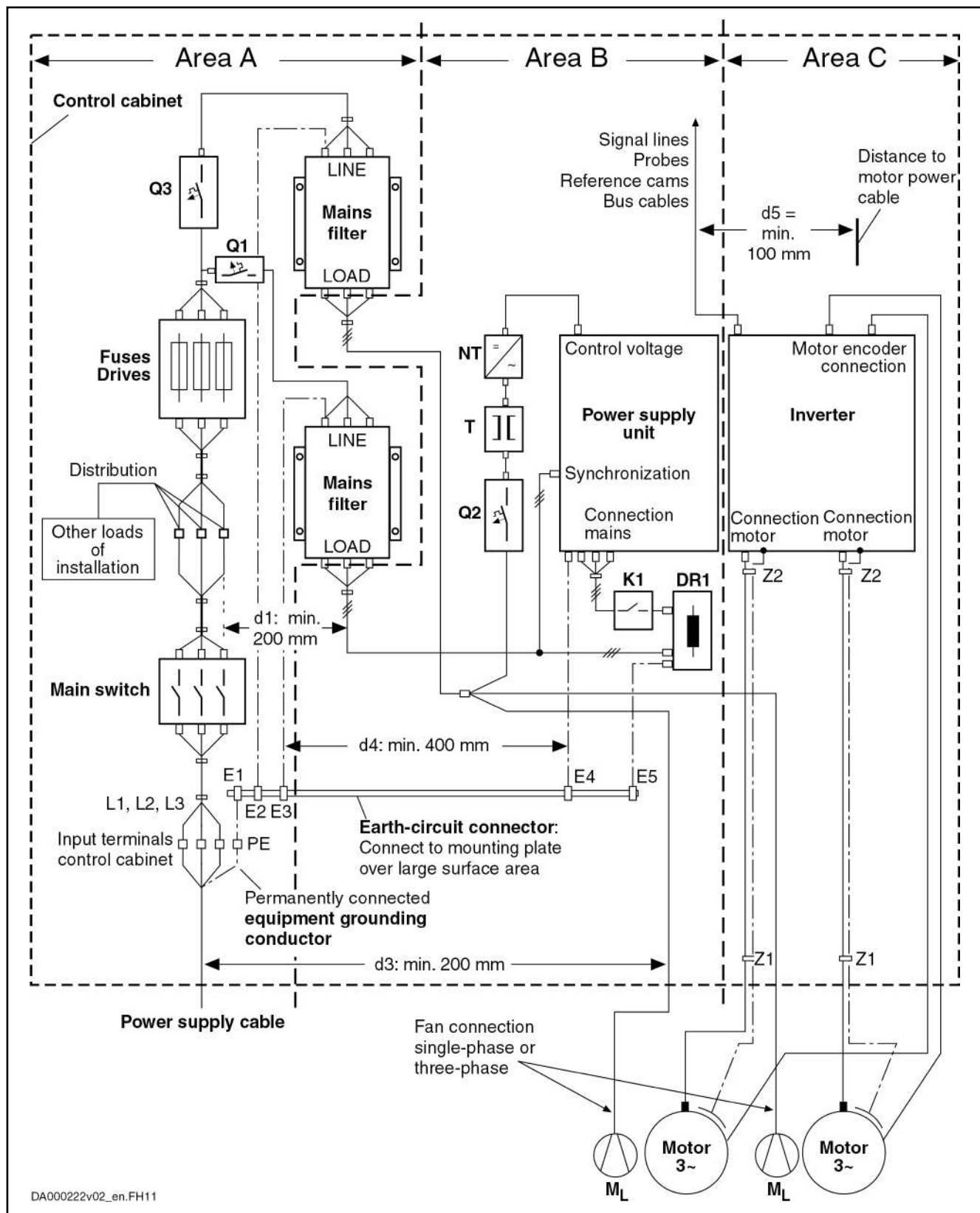
#### **Do not operate any additional loads at the mains filter!**

Do not run any other loads at the connection from the mains filter output to the mains connection of the supply unit.

Use separate mains filters for, e.g., motor fans and power supply units.

---

## Mounting and installation



DR1  
E1...E5

Mains choke  
Equipment grounding conductor of the components



|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>K1</b>            | External mains contactor for supply units without integrated mains contactor |
| <b>M<sub>L</sub></b> | Motor fan  |
| <b>NT</b>            | Power supply unit  |
| <b>Q1, Q2, Q3</b>    | Fusing   |
| <b>T</b>             | Transformer  |
| <b>Z1, Z2</b>        | Shield connection points for cables  |

Fig. 6-23: EMC areas in control cabinet

### Design and installation in area A - control cabinet area free from interference

#### Arranging the components in the control cabinet

Maintain the recommended distance of at least **200 mm** (distance d1 in the figure):

- Between components and electrical elements (switches, pushbuttons, fuses, terminal connectors) in interference-free area A and the components in the two other areas B and C

Maintain the recommended distance of at least **400 mm** (distance d4 in the figure):

- Between magnetic components (such as transformers, mains chokes and DC bus chokes that are directly connected to the power connections of the drive system) and the components and lines free from interference between mains and filter including the mains filter in area A

If these distances are not maintained, the magnetic leakage fields are injected onto the components and lines free from interference connected to the mains, and the limit values at the mains connection are exceeded in spite of the installed filter.

#### Cable routing for interference-free lines to the mains connection

Maintain the recommended distance of at least **200 mm** (distances d1 and d3 in the figure):

- Between supply feeder or lines between filter and control cabinet exit point in area A and the lines in area B and C

If this is not possible, there are two alternatives:

1. Install shielded lines and connect the shield at several points (at least at the beginning and end of the line) to the mounting plate or the control cabinet housing over a large surface area.
2. Separate lines from the other lines prone to interference in areas B and C with a grounded distance plate vertically attached to the mounting plate.

Install the shortest possible lines within the control cabinet and install them directly on the grounded metal surface of the mounting plate or control cabinet housing.

Mains supply lines from areas B and C cannot be connected to the mains without a filter.



Failure to observe the information on cable routing given in this section will partially or completely neutralize the effect of the mains filter. This will cause the noise level of the interference emission to be higher within the 150 kHz to 40 MHz range and the limit values at the connection points of the machine or system will be exceeded. The specified distances are recommendations, provided the dimensions of the control cabinet allow the lines to be installed accordingly.

## Mounting and installation

**Routing and connecting a neutral conductor (N)**

If a neutral conductor is used together with a three-phase connection, it cannot be installed unfiltered in areas B and C in order to keep interference off the mains.

**Motor fan at mains filter**

Single-phase or three-phase supply lines for motor fans that are usually routed parallel to motor power cables or lines prone to interference must be filtered:

- In drive systems with **regenerative supply units** through a **separate** single-phase (NFE type) or three-phase filter (NFD type) near the mains connection of the control cabinet
- In drive systems with **only feeding supply units** through the available three-phase filter of the drive system

On the load side of the mains filter, voltage against ground with a high rise of voltage  $dv/dt$  can be present and interfere with the additional loads connected there.

When switching power off, make sure the fan is not switched off.

**Loads at drive system mains filter****Only operate allowed loads at the mains filter of the drive system!**

At the three-phase filter for the power connection of regenerative supply units, it is only allowed to operate the following loads:

- HMV supply unit with mains choke and, if necessary, mains contactor

Do not operate any motor fans, power supply units etc. at the mains filter of the drive system.

**Shielding mains supply lines in control cabinet**

If there is still a high degree of interference injection on the mains supply line in the control cabinet although you have observed the above instructions (determine using EMC measurement to standard), proceed as follows:

- Only use shielded lines in area A
- Connect shields to the mounting plate at the beginning and end of the line with clips

The same procedure may be required for cables longer than 2 m between the point of power supply connection for the control cabinet and the filter in the control cabinet.

**Mains filters for AC drives**

Ideally, mount the mains filter on the parting line between areas A and B. Make sure the ground connection between filter housing and drive controller housing is electrically highly conductive.

If **single-phase** loads are connected on the load side of the filter, their current may be a maximum of 10% of the three-phase operating current. A highly imbalanced load on the filter would reduce its interference suppression capacity.

If the mains voltage is more than 480 V, connect the filter to the output side of the transformer and not to the supply side of the transformer.

**Grounding**

In the case of bad ground connections in the system, the distance between the lines to grounding points E1 and E2 in area A and the other grounding points of the drive system should be at least  $d_4 = 400$  mm in order to minimize interference injection from ground and ground cables to the mains supply lines.

See also [Division into areas \(zones\), page 172](#).


**Equipment grounding conductor connection point at machine, system, control cabinet**

The equipment grounding conductor of the power cable for the machine, system or control cabinet has to be **permanently connected** at point PE and have a **cross section of at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup>**, or be complemented by a second equipment grounding conductor using separate terminal connectors (according to

## Mounting and installation

EN 61800-5-1:2007, Section 4.3.5.5.2). If the cross section of the outer conductor is bigger, the cross section of the equipment grounding conductor must also be bigger.

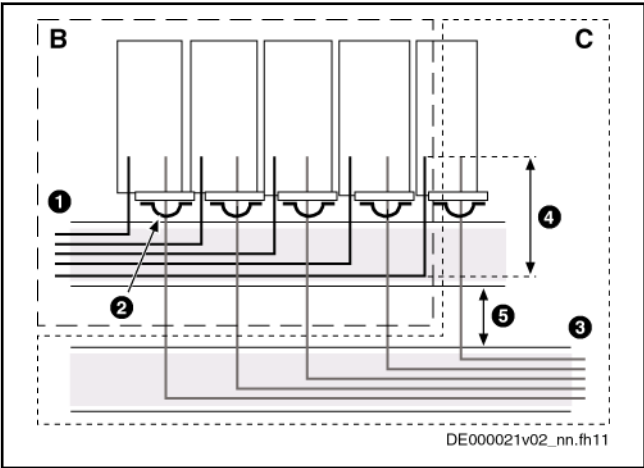
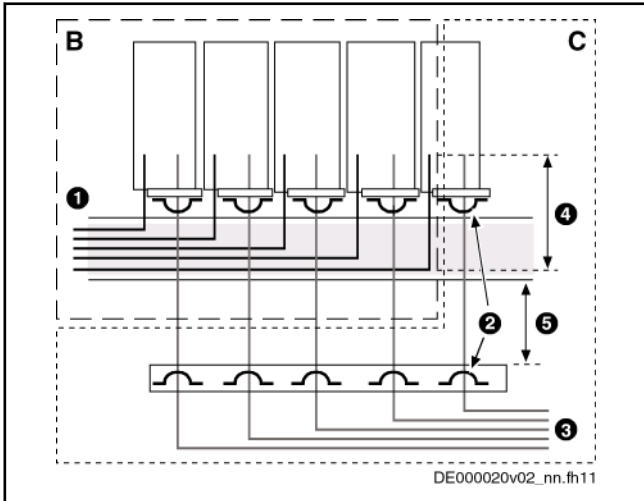
### Design and installation in area B - control cabinet area prone to interference

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Arranging components and lines                        | <p>Modules, components and lines in area B should be placed at a distance of at least <b>d1 = 200 mm</b> from modules and lines in area A.</p> <p>Alternative: Shield modules, components and lines in area B using distance plates mounted vertically on the mounting plate from modules and lines in area A or use shielded lines.</p> <p>Only connect power supply units for auxiliary or control voltage connections in the drive system to the mains with a mains filter. See <a href="#">Division into areas (zones)</a>, page 172.</p> <p>Install the shortest possible lines between drive controller and filter.</p>       |
| Control voltage or auxiliary voltage connection       | <p>Only in exceptional cases should you connect power supply unit and fusing for the control voltage connection to phase and neutral conductor. In this case, mount and install these components in area A far away from the areas B and C of the drive system. For details, see section <a href="#">Design and installation in area A - control cabinet area free from interference</a>, page 175.</p> <p>Run the connection between the control voltage connection of the drive system and the power supply unit used through area B over the shortest distance.</p>  |
| Line routing  | <p>Run the lines along grounded metal surfaces in order to minimize radiation of interference fields to area A (transmitting antenna effect).</p>   |
|   | <h3>Design and installation in area C - control cabinet area highly prone to interference</h3>  |
|   | <p>Area C mainly concerns the motor power cables, especially at the connection point at the drive controller.</p>   |
| Influence of the motor power cable                    | <p>The longer the motor power cable, the greater its leakage capacitance. To comply with a certain EMC limit value, the allowed leakage capacitance of the mains filter is limited. For the calculation of the leakage capacitance, see the documentation on the drive system of the drive controller used.</p>   |
|   | <hr/> <div>  </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Run the shortest possible motor power cables.</li> <li>• Only use <b>shielded</b> motor power cables from Rexroth.</li> </ul> <hr/>   |
| Routing motor power and motor encoder cables          | <p>Route the motor power and motor encoder cables along grounded metal surfaces both inside and outside the control cabinet in order to minimize radiation from interference fields. If possible, route the motor power and motor encoder cables in metal-grounded cable ducts.</p> <p>Route the motor power and motor encoder cables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With a distance of at least <b>d5 = 100 mm</b> from interference-free lines, as well as to signal cables and signal lines<br/>(alternatively separated by a grounded distance plate)</li> <li>• In separate cable ducts, if possible</li> </ul> |
| Routing motor power cables and mains connection lines | <p>For converters (drive controllers with individual mains connection), route motor power cables and (unfiltered) mains connection lines <b>parallel to one another for a maximum distance of 300 mm</b>. After that distance, route motor power cables and power supply cables in opposite directions and preferably in separate <b>cable ducts</b>.</p>   |

Mounting and installation

Ideally, the motor power cables should exit the control cabinet at a distance of at least **d3 = 200 mm** from the (filtered) power supply cable.

Converter - routing motor power cables

| With cable duct  | Without cable duct   |
|--|--|
|  <p>DE000021v02_nn.fh11</p>  |  <p>DE000020v02_nn.fh11</p>  |
| <p><b>B</b> Area B<br/><b>C</b> Area C<br/><b>1</b> Cable duct for mains connection lines<br/><b>2</b> Shield connection of motor power cable with clips at least at one point; alternatively, at the device or control cabinet mounting plate<br/><b>3</b> Cable duct for motor power cables<br/><b>4</b> Parallel routing of mains connection lines and motor power cables over a maximum of 300 mm<br/><b>5</b> Distance of at least 100 mm or separated by a grounded distance plate</p> <p><i>Fig. 6-24: Routing motor power cables with cable duct</i></p> | <p><b>B</b> Area B<br/><b>C</b> Area C<br/><b>1</b> Cable duct for mains connection lines<br/><b>2</b> Shield connection of motor power cable with clips at least at one point; alternatively, at the device or control cabinet mounting plate<br/><b>3</b> Control cabinet outlet of motor power cables<br/><b>4</b> Parallel routing of mains connection lines and motor power cables over a maximum of 300 mm<br/><b>5</b> Distance of at least 100 mm or separated by a grounded distance plate</p> <p><i>Fig. 6-25: Routing motor power cables without cable duct</i></p> |

Tab. 6-34: Routing converter cables

Ground connections

Housing and mounting plate

It is possible to avoid the emission of interference with proper ground connections because interference is discharged to ground through the most direct route.

Ground connections of the metal housings for EMC-critical components (such as filters, devices of the drive system, connection points of the cable shields, devices with microprocessor and switching power supply units) have to be solidly contacted over a large surface area. This also applies to all screw connections between mounting plate and control cabinet wall and to mounting a ground bar to the mounting plate.

The best solution is to use a zinc-coated mounting plate. Compared to a varnished plate, the connections in this case have good long-term stability.

Connection elements

For varnished mounting plates, always use screw connections with tooth lock washers and zinc-coated, tinned screws as connection elements. At the connection points, remove the varnish so that there is safe electrical contact over a large surface area. Achieve contact over a large surface area using bare connection surfaces or several connection screws. For screw connections,

## Mounting and installation

you can establish the contact to varnished surfaces by using tooth lock washers.

### Metal surfaces

Always use connection elements (screws, nuts, plain washers) with a highly conductive surface.

**Highly conductive** surfaces are those with bare, zinc-coated or tinned metal surfaces.

**Poorly conductive** surfaces are those with anodized, yellow chromated, black gunmetal finished or lacquered metal surfaces.

### Ground wires and shield connections

When connecting ground wires and shield connections, what is important is not the cross section of the wire, but the area of the contact surface, since high-frequency interference currents mainly flow on the surface of the conductor.

Always connect cable shields, especially shields for the motor power cables, to ground potential over a large surface area.

## Installing signal lines and signal cables

### Line routing

For measures to prevent interference, see the Project Planning Manuals for each device. We also recommend the following:

- Route signal and control lines away from power cables at a minimum distance of **d5 = 100 mm** (see [Division into areas \(zones\)](#), page 172) or with a grounded separating sheet. The best way is to route them in separate cable ducts. If possible, only route signal lines into the control cabinet at one point.
- If signal lines cross power cables, route them at an angle of 90° in order to avoid interference injection.
- Ground unused and connected spare cables at both ends at least in order to avoid an antenna effect.
- Do not use more line than is necessary.
- Run cables as close to grounded metal surfaces as possible (reference potential). Closed, grounded cable ducts or metal pipes are ideal, but are only needed to meet strict requirements (sensitive instrument leads).
- Avoid suspended lines or lines routed along synthetic carriers, because they function like reception antennas (noise immunity) and transmitting antennas (emission of interference). Exceptional cases are flexible cable tracks over short distances of at most 5 m.

### Shielding

Connect the cable shield immediately at the devices in the shortest and most direct way possible and over the largest possible surface area.

Connect the shield of **analog signal lines** at one end over a large surface area, normally in the control cabinet at the analog device. Make sure the connection to ground/housing is short and over a large surface area.

Connect the shield of **digital signal lines** at both ends over a large surface area and in short form. In case of potential differences between line beginning and end, run an additional bonding conductor in parallel. This prevents compensating current from flowing via the shield. The recommended cross section is 10 mm<sup>2</sup>.

Separable connections absolutely must be equipped with connectors that have a grounded metal housing.

In case of unshielded lines belonging to the same circuit, twist feeder and return cable.

## Mounting and installation

**General interference suppression measures for relays, contactors, switches, chokes and inductive loads**

If inductive loads, such as chokes, contactors or relays are switched by contacts or semiconductors in conjunction with electronic devices and components, suitable interference suppression has to be provided for them:

- By arranging free-wheeling diodes for DC operation
- By arranging commercial RC interference suppression elements based on contactor type directly on the inductance for AC operation

Only the interference suppression element arranged immediately on the inductance serves this purpose. Otherwise, the emitted noise level is too high and can affect the function of the electronic system and the drive.

## 7 Technical data of the components

### 7.1 Control section

#### 7.1.1 EC - standard encoder evaluation

##### Supported encoder systems

Supported encoder systems Encoder systems with a supply voltage of **5 and 12 V**:

- MSM motor encoder
- MS2N motor encoder
- MSK motor encoder
- 1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; HIPERFACE®
- 1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; EnDat 2.1; EnDat 2.2
- 1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder; with reference track
- 5V TTL square-wave encoder; with reference track
- SSI
- Combined encoder for SSI (combination of SSI and 1V<sub>pp</sub> sin-cos encoder)
- Resolver (resolvers are **not** supported if optional "Safe Motion" safety technology is also in use)
- Hall sensor box SHL02.1
- Digital Hall sensor in conjunction with Hall sensor adapter box SHL03.1

##### Encoder type

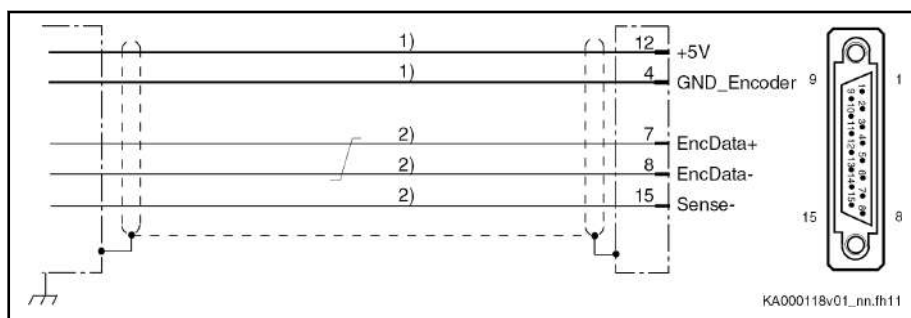
##### IndraDyn S MSM motors (5V supply voltage)

###### Properties

Encoder systems of the MSM motors are digital encoder systems that can be evaluated in absolute form.

The optionally available battery box (SUP-E0x-MSM-BATTERYBOX) facilitates the multi-turn functionality.

###### Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-1: EC connection diagram with encoder system of IndraDyn S MSM motors



For **direct** connection to the encoder system, use our **RKG0033** or **RKG0062** cable.

Power supply 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

## Technical data of the components

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable length**    **40 m** at most

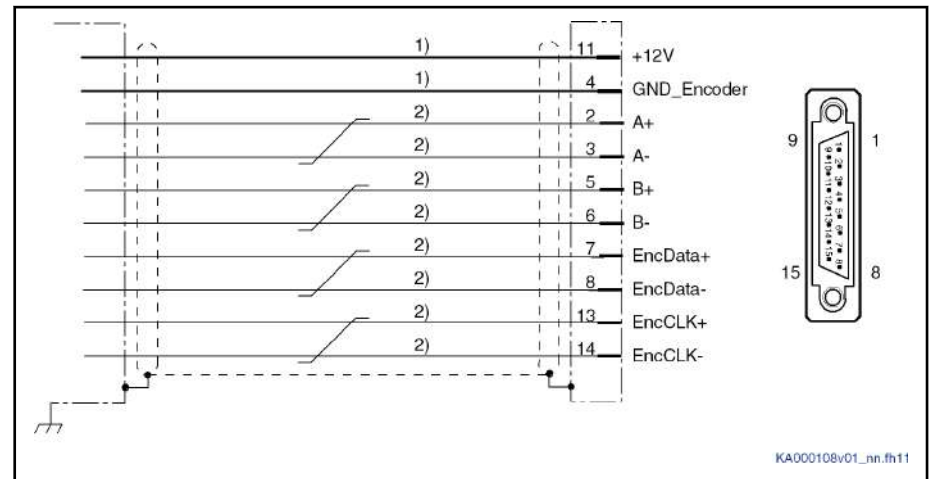


## IndraDyn S MSK/QSK motors S1/M1, S2/M2, S3/M3, S5/M5 (12 V supply voltage)

**Properties** Encoder systems of the MSK/QSK motors are HIPERFACE® (S1/M1, S3/M3, S5/M5) or EnDat 2.1 (S2/M2) encoder systems.

The type code of the motor shows whether or not the encoder system supports the single-turn (Sx) or multi-turn (Mx) functionality. Example: The MSK050C-0600-NN-S1-UG0-NNNN motor has a single-turn HIPERFACE® encoder system.

### Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-2: MSK/QSK encoder interface connection diagram for S1/M1, S2/M2, S5/M5 encoder systems



For **direct** connection to the encoder system, use our **RKG4200** cable.

**Power supply** 12 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

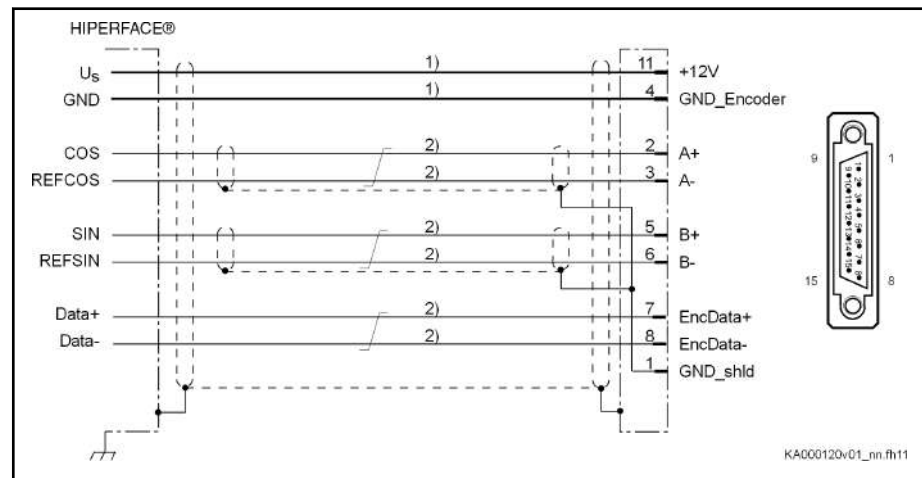
Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable length** The maximum allowed cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

## Technical data of the components

**HIPERFACE® (12 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

**Connection diagram****Power supply**

The HIPERFACE® encoder system needs a supply voltage of 12 V. This supply voltage is made available via the EC interface.

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

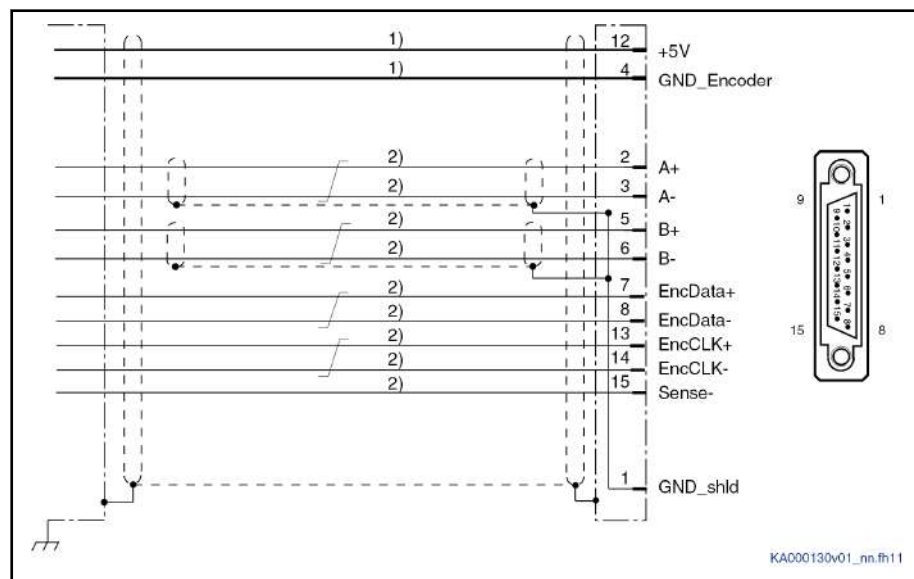
Please observe that the third-party encoder used has to be suited for the voltage available at the EC interface as the encoder supply voltage.

**Cable length**The maximum possible cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

## EnDat 2.1 according to Heidenhain standard (5 V supply voltage)

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

### Connection diagram



- 1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length
- 2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-4: EC connection diagram with EnDat 2.1 encoder system



For **direct** connection to the encoder system, use our **RKG0036** cable.

**Power supply** 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable Length** 75 m at most (when using the Sense function)

When you do not use the Sense function, the maximum cable length is reduced (see [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)).

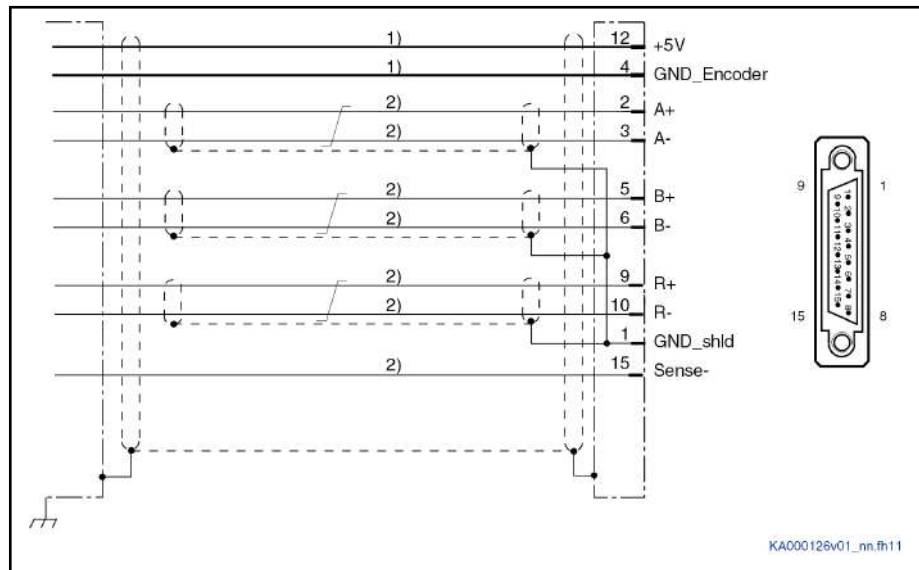
**Technical properties** Use the Sense function to ensure stable power supply at the encoder. Description of the Sense function: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

## Technical data of the components

**1V<sub>pp</sub> according to Heidenhain standard (5 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

## Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-5: EC connection diagram with 1V<sub>pp</sub> encoder system



For **direct** connection to the encoder system, use our **RKG0035** cable.

**Power supply** 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable Length** 75 m at most (when using the Sense function)

When you do not use the Sense function, the maximum cable length is reduced (see [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)).

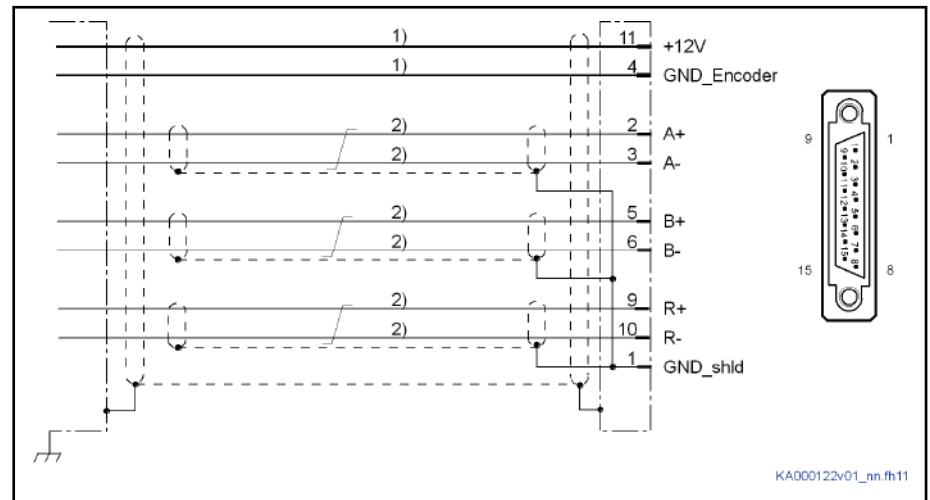
**Technical properties** Use the Sense function to ensure stable power supply at the encoder. Description of the Sense function: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

Technical data of the components

**1V<sub>pp</sub> (12 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

**Connection diagram**



**Power supply** 12 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

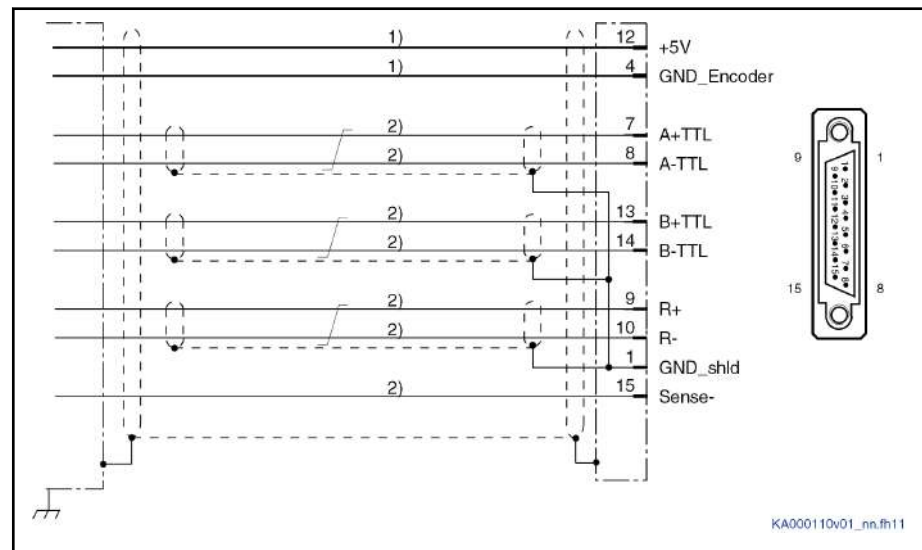
Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable length** The maximum allowed cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

## Technical data of the components

**TTL (5 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

**Connection diagram**

1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-7: EC connection diagram with TTL encoder system

**Power supply** 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable Length** 75 m at most (when using the Sense function)

When you do not use the Sense function, the maximum cable length is reduced (see [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)).

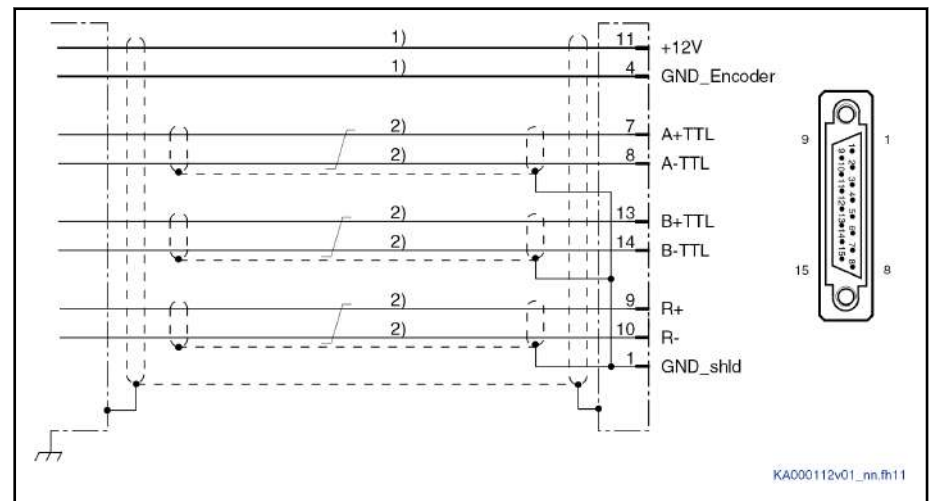
**Technical properties** Use the Sense function to ensure stable power supply at the encoder. Description of the Sense function: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

Technical data of the components

## TTL (12 V supply voltage)

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

### Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-8: TTL encoder system connection diagram

**Power supply** 12 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

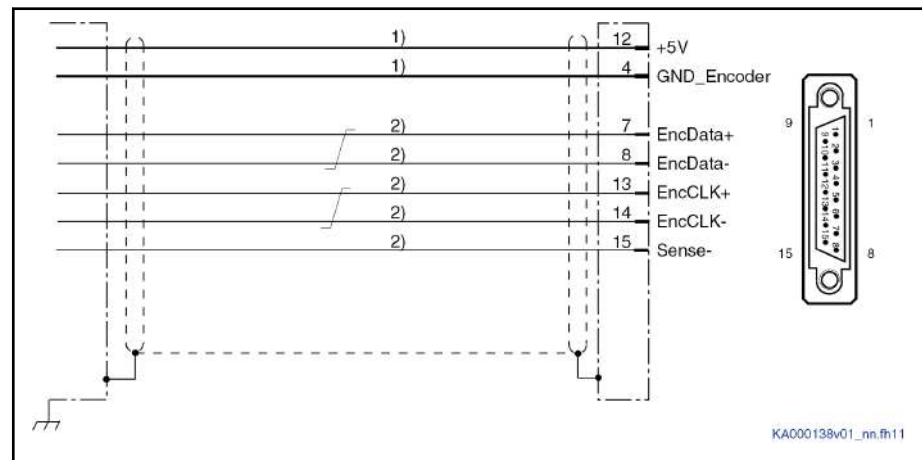
Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable length** The maximum allowed cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

## Technical data of the components

**SSI (5 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

**Connection diagram**

1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-9: EC connection diagram with SSI encoder system

**Power supply** 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable Length** 75 m at most (when using the Sense function)

When you do not use the Sense function, the maximum cable length is reduced (see [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)).

**Technical properties** Use the Sense function to ensure stable power supply at the encoder. Description of the Sense function: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

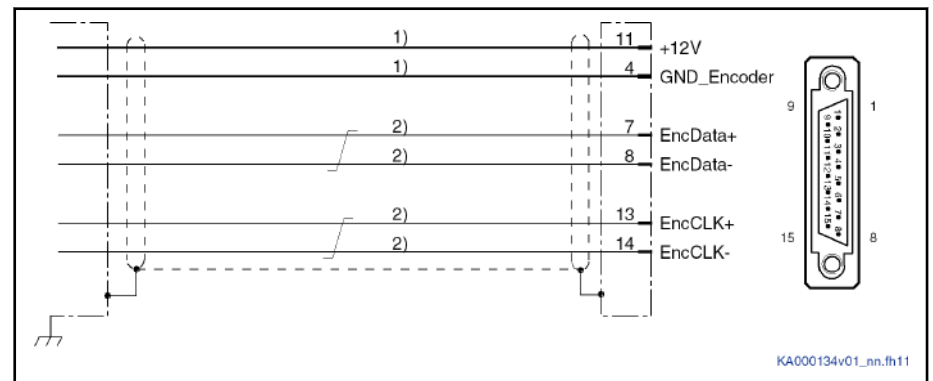


Technical data of the components

## SSI (12 V supply voltage)

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

### Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-10: SSI encoder system connection diagram

**Power supply** 12 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

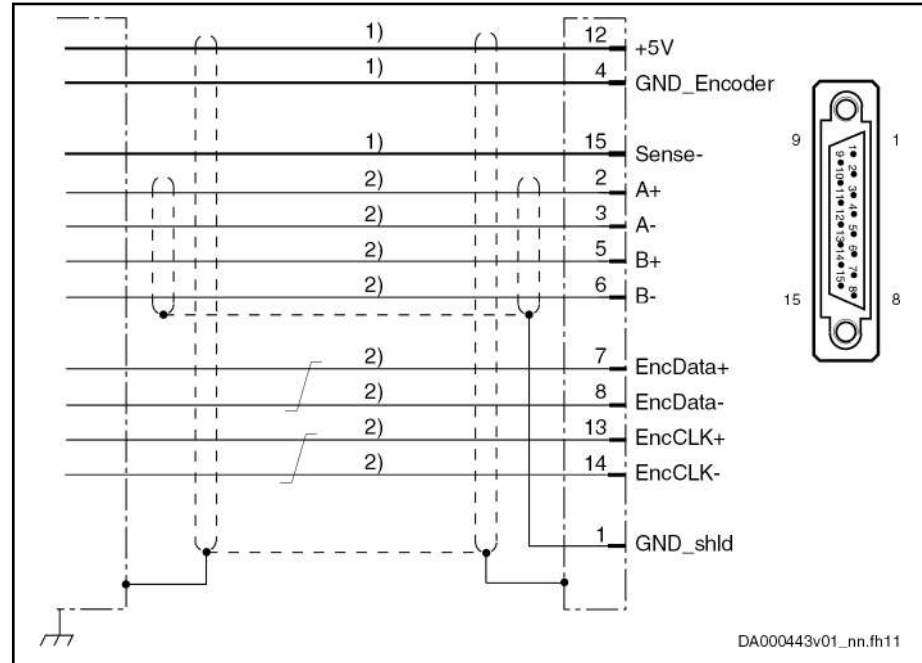
**Cable length** The maximum allowed cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

## Technical data of the components

**Combined encoder for SSI (5 V supply voltage)**

The combined encoder for SSI is a combination of SSI and sin-cos encoder  $1V_{pp}$ .

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

**Connection diagram**

- 1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length  
 2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-11: EC connection diagram with SSI encoder system

**Power supply** 5 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable Length** 75 m at most (when using the Sense function)

When you do not use the Sense function, the maximum cable length is reduced (see [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)).

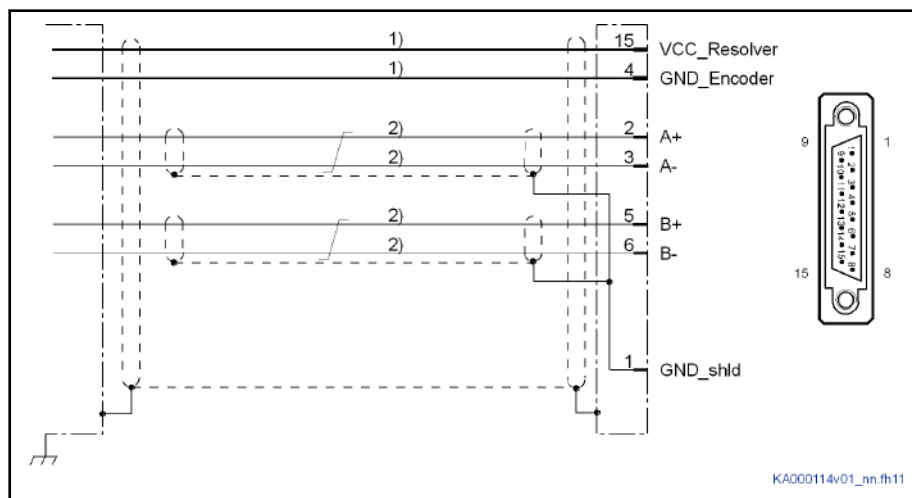
**Technical properties** Use the Sense function to ensure stable power supply at the encoder. Description of the Sense function: See [chapter "5 V power supply" on page 195](#)

## Technical data of the components

### Resolver without encoder data memory

See the connection diagram for how to connect the encoder system.

#### Connection diagram



1) Line cross section  $\geq 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ ; observe allowed encoder cable length

2) Line cross section  $\geq 0.14 \text{ mm}^2$

Fig. 7-12: EC connection diagram with resolver encoder system

#### Power supply

The EC interface supplies the resolver encoder system with a carrier voltage amplitude of  $11 \text{ V}_{pp}$ .

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "Resolver power supply" on page 195](#)



Please observe that the resolver encoder used has to be suited for the voltage available at the EC interface as the encoder supply voltage.

#### Cable length

75 m at most

#### Specific technical features

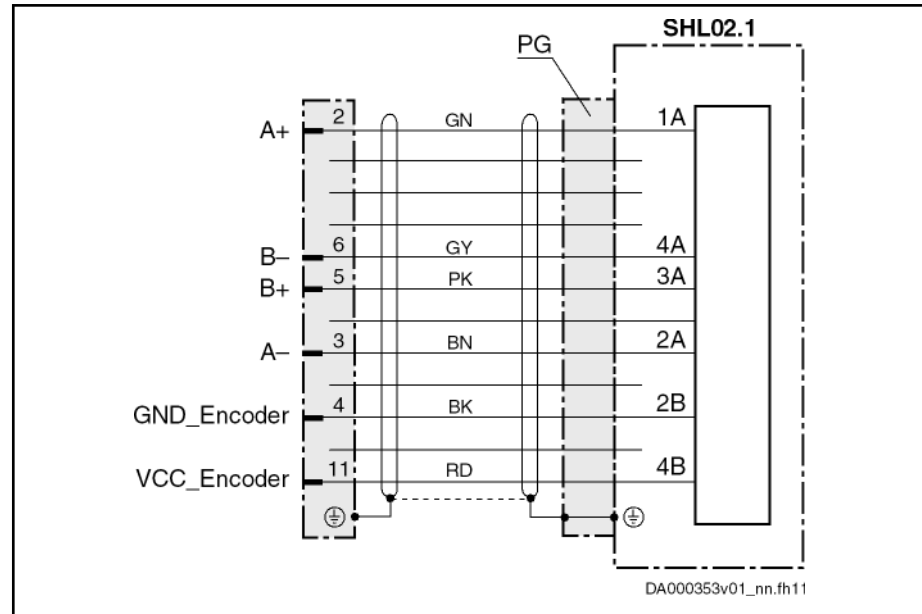
The encoder evaluation has been sized for resolvers with a **transfer ratio** of 0.5.

Resolvers are **not** supported if an optional "Safe Motion" safety technology is available at the same time.

## Technical data of the components

**Hall sensor box SHL02.1 (12 V supply voltage)**

See the connection diagram for how to connect the Hall sensor box SHL02.1.

**Connection diagram**

**VCC\_Encoder +12 V**

Fig. 7-13: Hall sensor box SHL02.1 connection diagram

**Power supply** 12 V (the voltage is made available via the EC interface)

Technical specification of the power supply: See [chapter "12 V power supply" on page 195](#)

**Cable length** The maximum allowed cable length depends on several factors: See [chapter "Encoder cable length" on page 197](#)

**Specific technical features** For detailed information on the Hall sensor box SHL02.1, see the Functional Description "Rexroth Hall sensor box SHL02.1" (R911292537).

## Power supply

### 5 V power supply

#### 5 V power supply

| Data                  | Unit | min. | typ. | max.              |
|-----------------------|------|------|------|-------------------|
| DC output voltage +5V | V    | 5.0  |      | 5.25              |
| Output current        | mA   |      |      | 500 <sup>1)</sup> |

1) The sum of the power consumptions of all connected encoder systems (5 V / 12 V) should not exceed **6 W**..

Tab. 7-1: 5 V power supply

#### Switching off power supply via firmware

The "parking axis" firmware command (C1600) causes the encoder power supply to be switched off.

#### Sense function

The EC encoder evaluation allows correcting the 5 V supply voltage at the encoder. It is thereby possible, within certain limits, to compensate for voltage drops on the encoder cable.

**Functional principle:** The current consumption of the connected encoder system generates a voltage drop due to the ohmic resistance of the encoder cable (line cross section and line length). This reduces the signal at the encoder input. The actual value of the 0 V encoder potential at the encoder is measured via a separate "Sense" line (Sense-) and fed back to the drive controller. Thus, the drive controller can influence the voltage of the encoder supply.



For correct "Sense" evaluation, the encoder supply lines "+5V" and "GND\_Encoder" have to have the same line cross section.

If the encoder has a "Sense-" connection, connect the "Sense" line at this connection. A possibly existing "Sense+" connection is not used.

If the encoder has no "Sense" connection, apply the 0 V encoder potential to the "Sense-" line on the encoder side.

### 12 V power supply

#### 12 V power supply

| Data                       | Unit | min. | typ. | max.              |
|----------------------------|------|------|------|-------------------|
| Voltage for encoder supply | V    | 10.7 | 12   | 12.3              |
| Output current             | mA   |      |      | 500 <sup>1)</sup> |

1) The sum of the power consumptions of all connected encoder systems (5 V / 12 V) should not exceed **6 W**..

Tab. 7-2: 12 V power supply

#### Switching off power supply via firmware

The "parking axis" firmware command (C1600) causes the encoder power supply to be switched off.

### Resolver power supply

#### Resolver encoder system

| Data   | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|--|------|------|------|------|
| AC output voltage VCC_Resolver (peak-peak value) | V    | 8.3  | 10   | 12   |
| Output frequency sine                            | kHz  |      | 8    |      |

## Technical data of the components

| Data                        | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|-----------------------------|------|------|------|------|
| Output current (peak value) | mA   |      |      | 60   |
| Output current (rms value)  | mA   |      |      | 40   |

*Tab. 7-3: Resolver encoder supply***Switching off power supply via  
firmware**

The "parking axis" firmware command (C1600) causes the encoder power supply to be switched off.

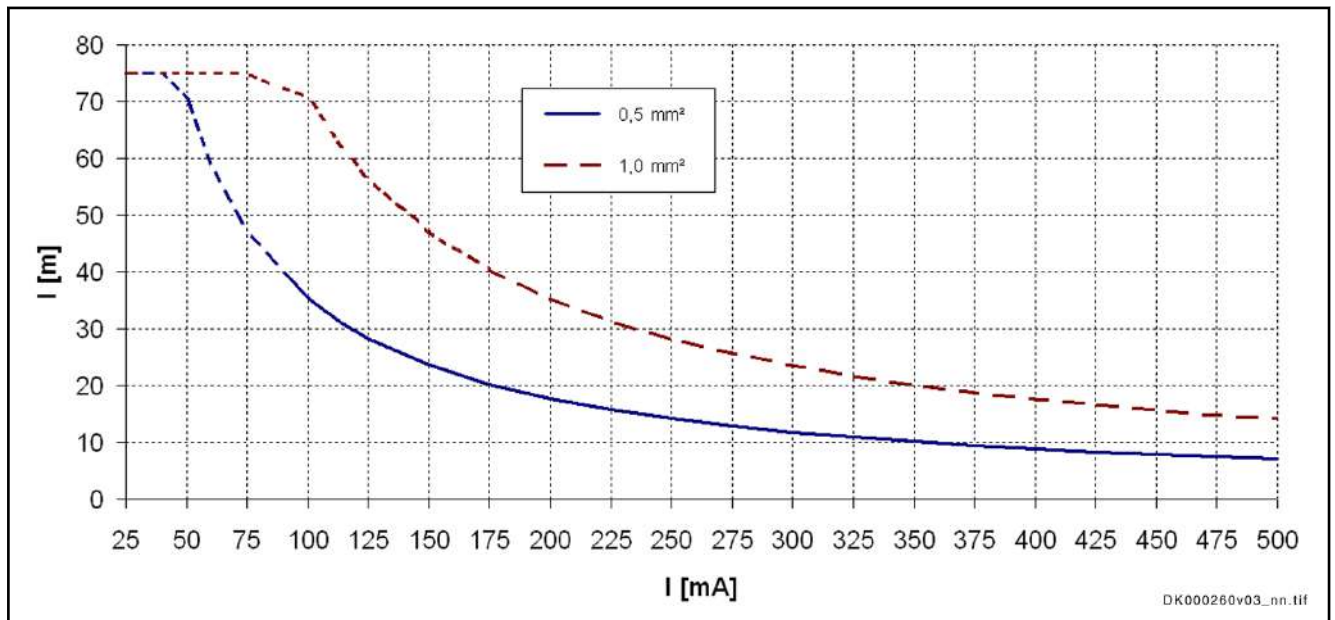
## Encoder cable length



Use lines with the same line cross section for encoder supply.

Allowed encoder cable length for  
5 V encoder systems without  
Sense function

If the encoder system used does not support the Sense function, the maximum possible cable length results from the diagram below.



I [mA]

Encoder current consumption

l [m]

Cable length

0.5 mm²; 1.0 mm² Line cross sections

Fig. 7-14:

Maximum allowed encoder cable lengths for 5 V encoder systems without Sense connection depending on line cross section

Allowed encoder cable length for  
5 V encoder systems with Sense  
function

75 m at most; (exception: 40 m at most for IndraDyn S MSM motors)

(Besides, the maximum allowed cable lengths depend on the motor size. See documentation of motor used.)

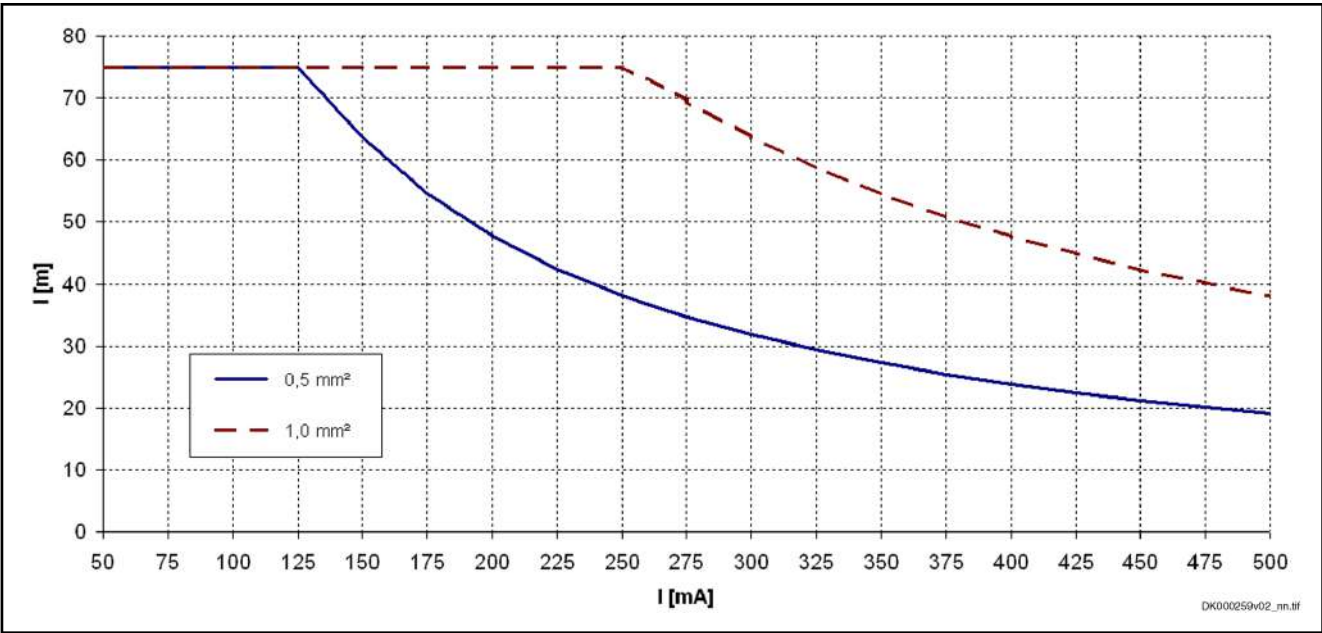
The cross section of the supply voltage lines has to be at least 0.5 mm².

Allowed encoder cable length for  
12 V encoder systems

Requirements:


- The **cross section** of the supply voltage lines is at least **0.5 mm²**
- The minimum allowed **supply voltage** at the encoder is **10 V**

Technical data of the components



I [mA]                      Encoder current consumption  
l [m]                        Cable length  
0.5 mm²; 1.0 mm²      Line cross sections

Fig. 7-15:                      Maximum allowed encoder cable lengths for 12 V encoder systems depending on line cross section at supply voltage of 10 V

                      Nominal current consumption of the MSK motor encoders: 60 mA

Allowed encoder cable length for resolver encoder systems      75 m at most (The cross section of the supply voltage lines has to be at least 0.5 mm².)



## Technical data of the components

### Technical data of EC encoder evaluation

Input circuit for sine signals A+, A-,  
B+, B-, R+, R-

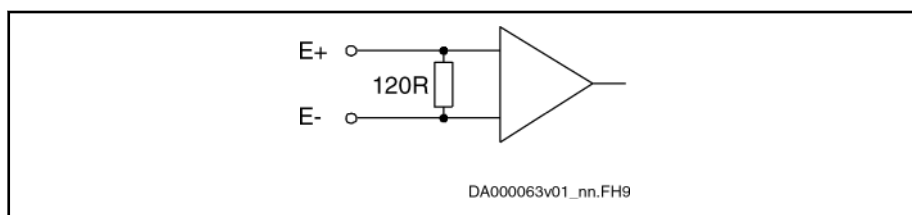


Fig. 7-16: Input circuit for sine signals (block diagram)

Properties of differential input for  
sine signals

| Data   | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|--|------|------|------|------|
| Amplitude of encoder signal peak-peak ( $U_{PP\text{encodersignal}}$ ) | V    | 0.8  | 1.0  | 1.2  |
| Cut-off frequency (-3 dB)  | kHz  |      | 400  |      |
| Converter width A/D converter  | Bit  |      | 12   |      |
| Input resistance   | ohm  |      | 120  |      |

Tab. 7-4: Differential input sine

Resolver input circuit for A+, A-, B  
+, B-

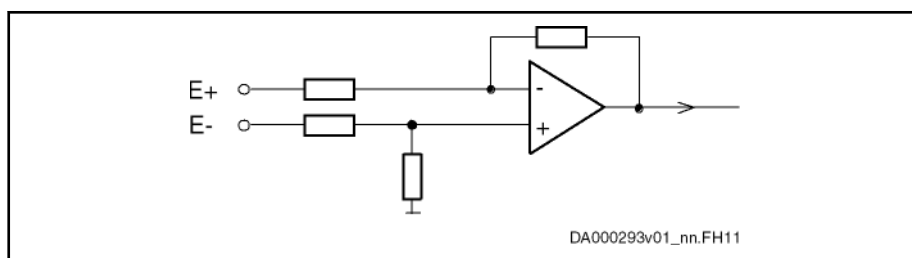


Fig. 7-17: Input circuit for resolver evaluation (block diagram)

Input circuit for square-wave signals

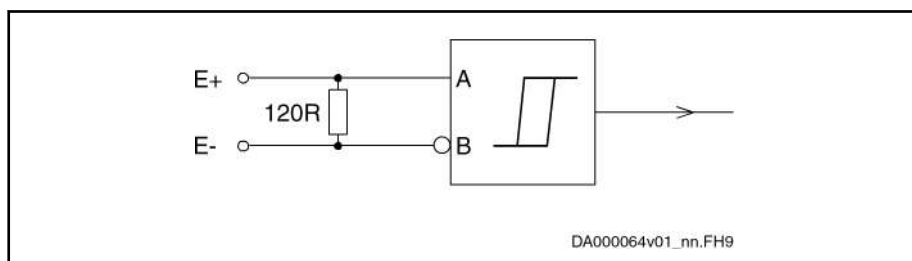


Fig. 7-18: Input circuit for square-wave signals (block diagram)

Properties of differential input for  
square-wave signals

| Data                 | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|----------------------|------|------|------|------|
| Input voltage "high" | V    | 2.4  |      | 5.0  |
| Input voltage "low"  | V    | 0    |      | 0.8  |
| Input frequency      | kHz  |      |      | 1000 |
| Input resistance     | ohm  |      | 120  |      |

Tab. 7-5: Differential input square-wave signals

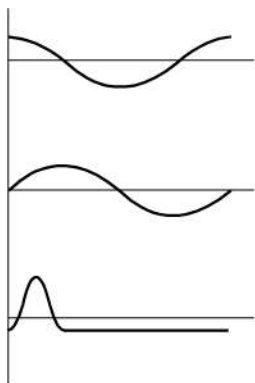
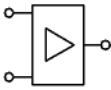
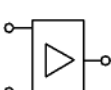

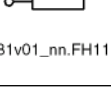
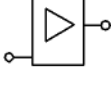
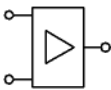
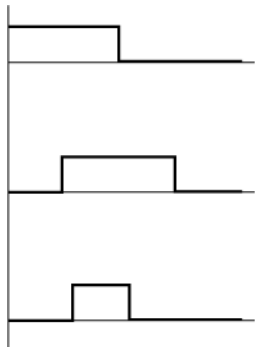
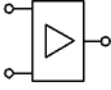
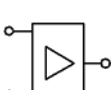

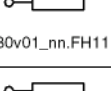

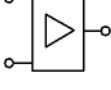
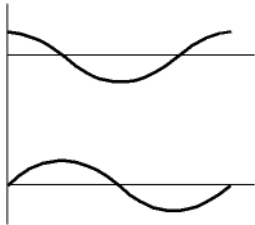
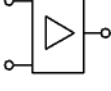
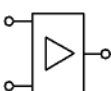
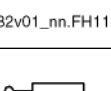
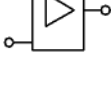
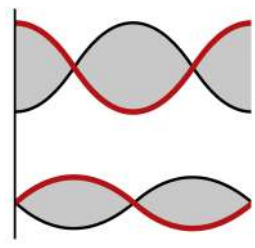
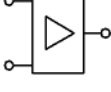
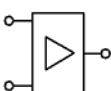
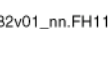
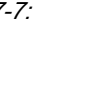
## Technical data of the components

## Differential input for resolver operation

| Data                                       | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|--|------|------|------|------|
| Amplitude encoder signal sine ( $U_{pp}$ ) | V    |      | 5    | 6    |
| Input resistance                           | kOhm |      | 12   |      |
| Converter width A/D converter              | Bit  |      | 12   |      |

Tab. 7-6: Resolver operation input data

## Signal assignment to the actual position value

| Signal assignment <sup>1)</sup>  | Signal designation  | Signal shape  | Actual position value (with default setting)  |
|--|---|---|---|
|  <p>DK000089v01_nn.FH9</p>                                      | <p>A+ </p> <p>A- </p> <p>B+ </p> <p>B- </p> <p>R+ </p> <p>R- </p> <p>DF000381v01_nn.FH11</p>                     | <p>Sine (1 V<sub>pp</sub>)</p> <p>Without absolute value</p>            | <p><b>Rotary motor:</b></p> <p>Increasing actual position values with clockwise motor motion (when viewed from the front toward the A-side shaft end)</p> <p><b>Linear Rexroth motor:</b></p> <p>Increasing actual position values with motor motion in the direction of cable outlet</p> |
|  <p>DK000090v01_nn.FH9</p>                                     | <p>A+TTL </p> <p>A-TTL </p> <p>B+TTL </p> <p>B-TTL </p> <p>R+ </p> <p>R- </p> <p>DF000380v01_nn.FH11</p> | <p>Square-wave (TTL)</p> <p>Without absolute value</p>                  |   |
|  <p>DK000088v01_nn.FH9</p>                                    | <p>A+ </p> <p>A- </p> <p>B+ </p> <p>B- </p> <p>DF000382v01_nn.FH11</p>  | <p>Sine (1 V<sub>pp</sub>)</p> <p>With absolute value (e.g., EnDat)</p> |   |
|  <p>DK000365v01_nn.FH11</p> <p>Amplitude-modulated signal</p> | <p>A+ </p> <p>A- </p> <p>B+ </p> <p>B- </p> <p>DF000382v01_nn.FH11</p>  | <p>Resolver</p>   |   |

<sup>1)</sup> See following note  
Tab. 7-7: Signal assignment to the actual position value

## Technical data of the components



---

The encoder signal assignment to the inputs is based on clockwise rotation (front view toward motor shaft).

- Track A (A+, A-, "cos") advances track B (B+, B-, "sin") 90° electrically.
  - The actual position value increases (prerequisite: negation of the encoder signals was not parameterized).
  - If available, the reference track R (R+, R-) provides the reference mark pulse at positive signals of track A and track B (in the so-called "0-th" quadrant).
- 



---

Standard setting: See Functional Description of firmware.

---

## 7.1.2 EM - encoder emulation

### Cables

| Data                      | Symbol                | Unit | max. |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------|------|
| Length (shielded cable)   | $l_{\text{shield}}$   | m    | 40   |
| Length (unshielded cable) | $l_{\text{unshield}}$ | m    | 30   |
| Capacitance               | C                     | pF/m | 60   |

Tab. 7-8: Cables

### Incremental encoder emulation

#### Connection

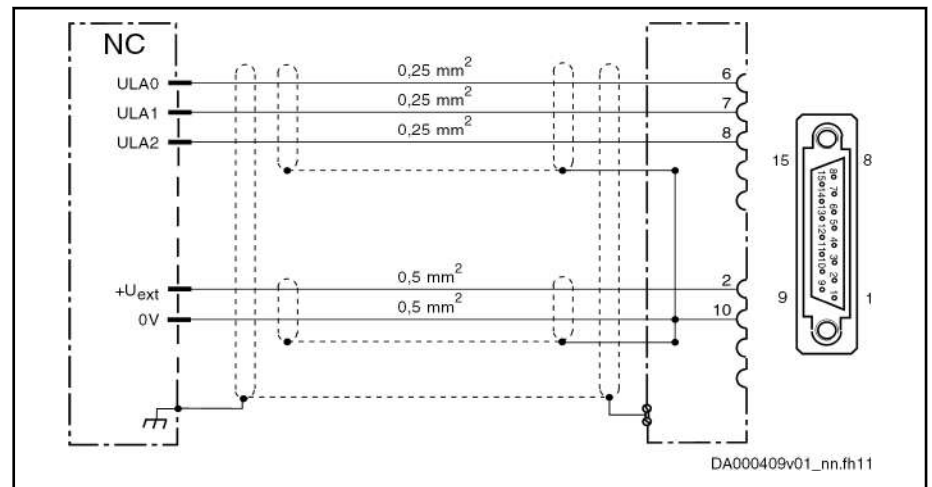


Fig. 7-19: Incremental encoder with signal level conversion (single-ended)

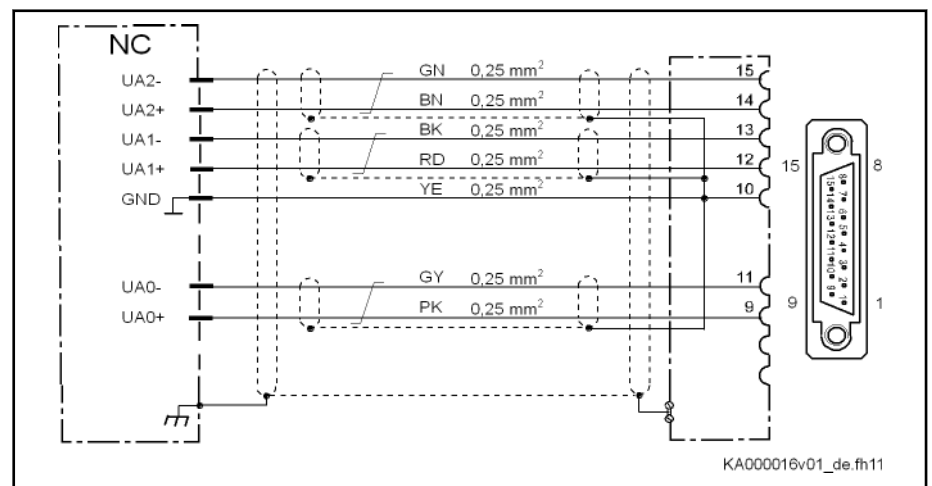


Fig. 7-20: Incremental encoder (RS422)

## Technical data of the components

**Electrical data****Single-ended**

| Data                                    | Symbol                 | Unit | min.                         | typ. | max.                           |
|---|------------------------|------|------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|
| Input voltage                           | $U_{\text{ext}}$       | V    | 5                            | -    | 30                             |
| Current consumption at $U_{\text{ext}}$ | $I_{\text{ext}}$       | mA   | 25                           | -    | $25 + 3 \times I_{\text{out}}$ |
| Output voltage "high"                   | $U_{\text{Out\_High}}$ | V    | $U_{\text{ext}} - 2\text{V}$ | -    | $U_{\text{ext}}$               |
| Output voltage "low"                    | $U_{\text{Out\_Low}}$  | V    | -                            | -    | 1.5                            |
| Output current                          | $I_{\text{Out}}$       | mA   | -                            | -    | 40                             |
| Output frequency                        | f                      | MHz  | -                            | 1    | -                              |
| Overload protection                     | -                      | -    | Present                      |      |                                |
| Short circuit protection                | -                      | -    | Present                      |      |                                |

Tab. 7-9: Single-ended

**RS422**

| Data                     | Symbol                 | Unit | min.    | typ. | max. |
|--------------------------|------------------------|------|---------|------|------|
| Output voltage "high"    | $U_{\text{Out\_High}}$ | V    | 2.5     | -    | 5    |
| Output voltage "low"     | $U_{\text{Out\_Low}}$  | V    | 0       | -    | 0.5  |
| Output current           | $I_{\text{Out}}$       | mA   | -       | -    | 20   |
| Output frequency         | f                      | MHz  | -       | 4    | -    |
| Overload protection      | -                      | -    | Present |      |      |
| Short circuit protection | -                      | -    | Present |      |      |

Tab. 7-10: Outputs, RS422

| Data                          | Symbol                | Unit | min.    | typ. | max. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|------|---------|------|------|
| Input voltage "high"          | $U_{\text{In\_High}}$ | V    | 2.5     | -    | 5    |
| Input voltage "low"           | $U_{\text{In\_Low}}$  | V    | 0       | -    | 0.5  |
| Input resistance (difference) | $R_{\text{In\_D}}$    | ohm  | 110     | -    | 130  |
| Input resistance              | $R_{\text{In}}$       | kOhm | -       | 150  | -    |
| Output frequency              | f                     | MHz  | -       | 4    | -    |
| Overload protection           | -                     | -    | Present |      |      |
| Short circuit protection      | -                     | -    | Present |      |      |

Tab. 7-11: Inputs, RS422

## Absolute encoder emulation (SSI format)

### Connection

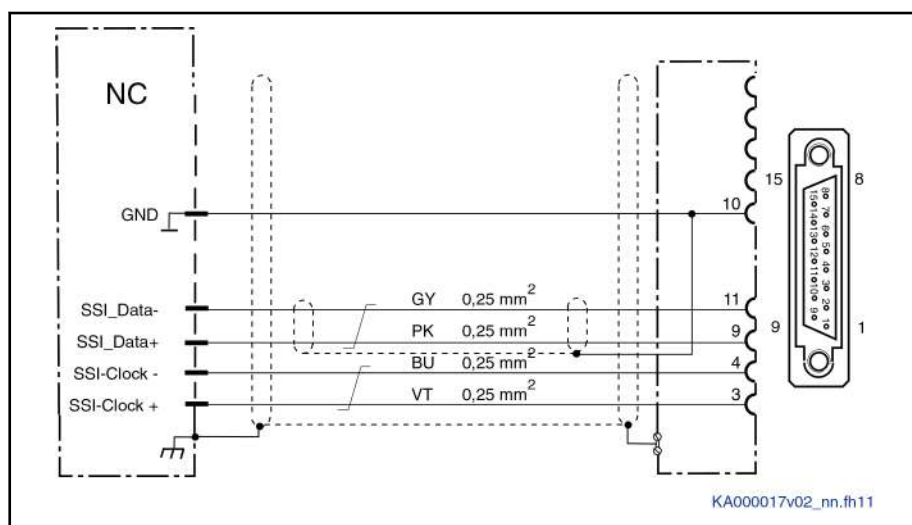


Fig. 7-21: Output of absolute actual position values according to SSI format

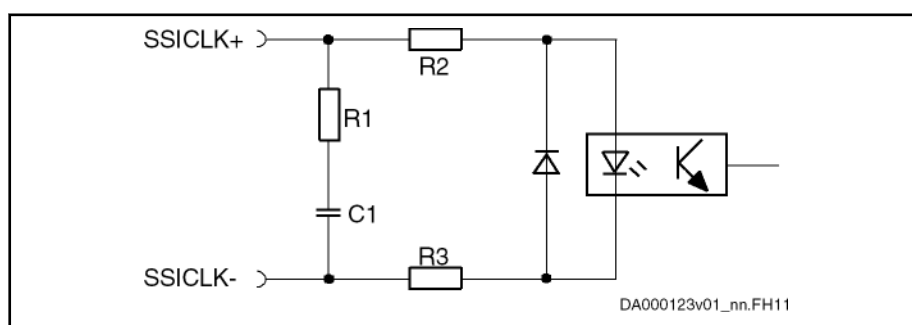


Fig. 7-22: Differential input circuit (block diagram)

### Electrical data

Differential inputs, absolute encoder emulation

| Data                          | Symbol         | Unit | min.     | typ. | max. |
|-------------------------------|----------------|------|----------|------|------|
| Input voltage "high"          | $U_{In\_High}$ | V    | 2.5      | -    | 5    |
| Input voltage "low"           | $U_{In\_Low}$  | V    | 0        | -    | 0.5  |
| Input resistance (difference) | $R_{In\_D}$    | ohm  | 110      | -    | 130  |
| Input resistance              | $R_{In}$       | kOhm | 150      |      |      |
| Clock frequency               | f              | kHz  | 100-1000 |      |      |
| Overload protection           | -              | -    | Present  |      |      |
| Short circuit protection      | -              | -    | Present  |      |      |

Tab. 7-12: Differential inputs

Differential outputs, absolute encoder emulation

| Data                  | Symbol          | Unit | min. | typ. | max. |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------|------|------|------|
| Output voltage "high" | $U_{Out\_High}$ | V    | 2.5  | -    | 5    |
| Output voltage "low"  | $U_{Out\_Low}$  | V    | 0    | -    | 0.5  |

Technical data of the components

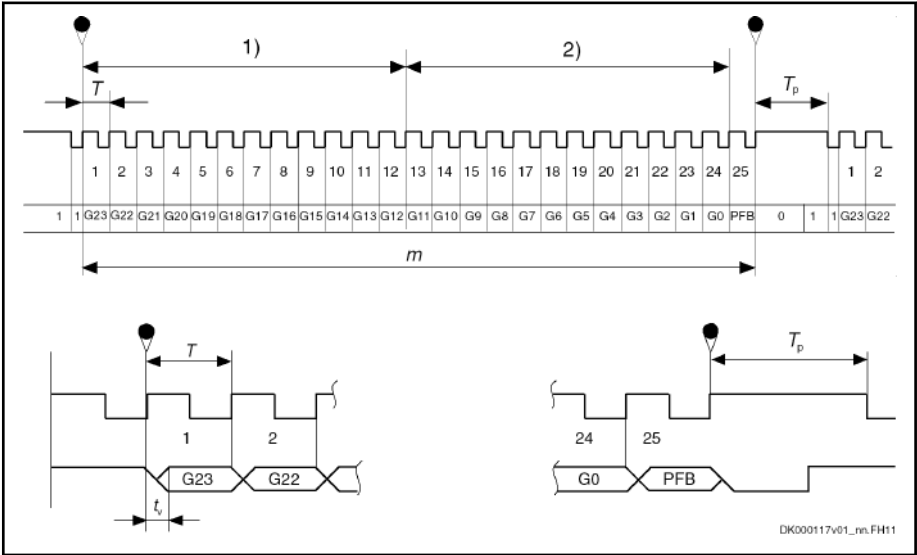
| Data                                    | Symbol     | Unit | min.    | typ. | max. |
|---|------------|------|---------|------|------|
| Output current                          | $I_{Out}$  | mA   | -       | -    | 20   |
| Output frequency                        | f          | MHz  | -       | -    | 1    |
| Load capacitance between output and 0 V |            | nF   | -       | -    | 10   |
| Terminating resistor at load            | $R_{Term}$ | ohm  | 150-180 |      |      |
| Overload protection                     | -          | -    | Present |      |      |
| Short circuit protection                | -          | -    | Present |      |      |

Tab. 7-13:      Differential outputs



The differential output corresponds to the RS422 specifications. On the control side, a line terminating resistor has to be available for the SSI data signal. If this resistor is not available, connect an external line terminating resistor (150-180 ohm).

Pulse diagram



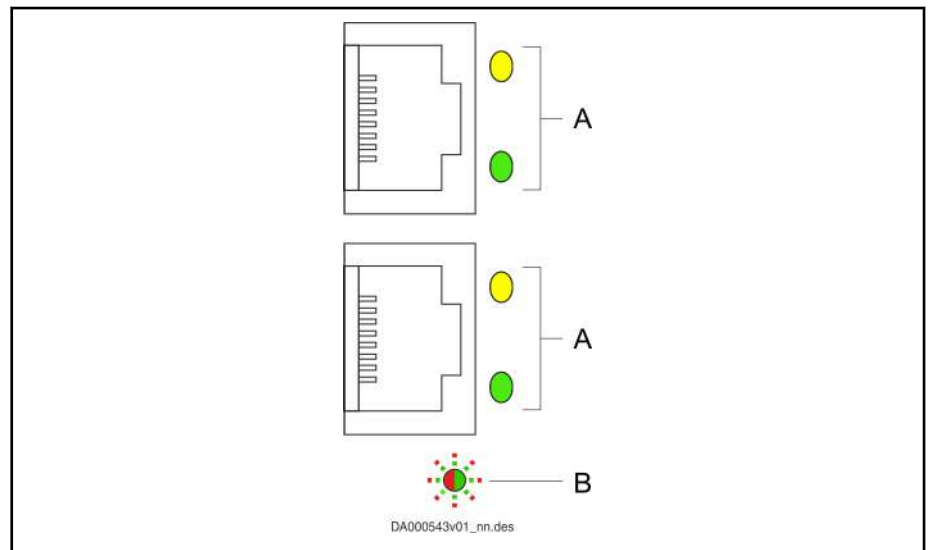
- 1) Resolution for 4096 revolutions
- 2) Resolution for 1 revolution
- G0 Least significant bit in Gray code
- G23 Most significant bit in Gray code
- m Stored parallel information
- T Clock time
- $T_p$  Clock break  $\geq 20 \mu s$
- $t_v$  Max. delay 200 ns
- PFB Power failure bit (not used and always logically LOW)

Fig. 7-23:      Pulse diagram with absolute actual position value output (SSI format)



### 7.1.3 ET - Multi-Ethernet

#### Display elements



- A** Two unicolor port LEDs  
Identification: e.g. H10, H11, H12, H13
- B** Multicolor diagnostic LED  
Identification: e.g. H24, NET ST

Fig. 7-24: ET, display elements

The LED display depends on the field bus system.




- Port LED**
- [chapter "EtherNet/IP" on page 208](#)
  - [chapter "EtherCAT" on page 208](#)
  - [chapter "sercos III" on page 208](#)
  - [chapter "PROFINET IO" on page 209](#)

- Diagnostic LED**
- [chapter "EtherNet/IP" on page 210](#)
  - [chapter "EtherCAT" on page 211](#)
  - [chapter "sercos III" on page 212](#)
  - [chapter "PROFINET IO" on page 213](#)

## Technical data of the components

## Port LED




## EtherNet/IP

| LED: Color / flashing pattern   | Significance                          |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <br>Off                    | No connection<br>No data transmission |
| <br>Permanently lit yellow | Data transmission running             |
| <br>Permanently lit green  | Connection to network available       |

Tab. 7-14: Port LED




## EtherCAT

EtherCAT has only one active LED per port.

| LED: Color / flashing pattern  | Significance  |
|--|---|
| <br>Off                    | No connection   |
| <br>Permanently lit green | Connection to network available, but no telegram exchange (EtherCAT bus inactive) |
| <br>Flashing green        | Connection to network available with telegram exchange (EtherCAT bus active)      |




Tab. 7-15: Port LED

## sercos III

| LED: Color / flashing pattern   | Significance                          |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <br>Off                    | No connection<br>No data transmission |
| <br>Permanently lit yellow | Data transmission running             |
| <br>Permanently lit green  | Connection to network available       |

Tab. 7-16: Port LED

## PROFINET IO







| LED: Color / flashing pattern   | Significance                          |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <br>Off                    | No connection<br>No data transmission |
| <br>Permanently lit yellow | Data transmission running             |
| <br>Permanently lit green  | Connection to network available       |

Tab. 7-17: Port LED

Technical data of the components

## Diagnostic LED








### EtherNet/IP

| LED: Color / flashing pattern  | Significance   |
|--|--|
| <br>Off                   | The device does not have a valid IP address or has been switched off.                                    |
| <br>Flashing green        | The device has run up with a valid IP address, but does not have a cyclic connection.                    |
| <br>Permanently lit green | The I/O connection has been established without error.   |
| <br>Flashing red          | The existing I/O connection was unexpectedly aborted (e.g., watchdog).                                   |
| <br>Permanently lit red   | The "Duplicate-IP-Address-Check" showed that the IP address which was set already exists in the network. |
| <br>Flashing red-green   | The device is running up and carries out a self test.  |

Tab. 7-18: Diagnostic LED

Technical data of the components

EtherCAT












| LED: Color / flashing pattern <sup>1)</sup>  | Significance               | Description  |
|--|----------------------------|--|
| <br>Off                         | Status<br>INIT             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cyclic process data and acyclic data channel are not transmitted</li> <li>No error</li> </ul>   |
| <br>Flashing green              | Status<br>PRE-OPERATIONAL  | Acyclic data channel is transmitted  |
| <br>Green, one LED lighting up  | Status<br>SAFE-OPERATIONAL | Acyclic data channel is transmitted  |
| <br>Permanently lit green       | Status<br>OPERATIONAL      | Cyclic process data and acyclic data channel are transmitted   |
| <br>Flashing red                | Configuration error        | General EtherCAT configuration error   |
| <br>Red, one LED lighting up    | Synchronization error      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The drive controller has not been synchronized to the EtherCAT master</li> <li>Communication error of the drive controller</li> </ul> |
| <br>Red, two LEDs lighting up | Timeout - watchdog         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Timeout while cyclic process data are monitored</li> <li>Watchdog of the EtherCAT master</li> </ul>                                   |

1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 200 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off

Tab. 7-19: Diagnostic LED







## Technical data of the components

## sercos III

| LED: Color / flashing pattern <sup>1)</sup>   | Description   | Prio <sup>2)</sup> |
|---|---|--------------------|
| <br>Off                    | NRT mode (no sercos communication) <sup>3)</sup>                              | 6                  |
| <br>Permanently lit orange | CP0 (communication phase 0 active)  | 6                  |
| <br>Flashing orange-green  | CP1 (communication phase 1 active)  | 6                  |
| <br>Flashing orange-green  | CP2 (communication phase 2 active)  | 6                  |
| <br>Flashing orange-green  | CP3 (communication phase 3 active)  | 6                  |
| <br>Permanently lit green  | CP4 (communication phase 4 active)  | 6                  |
| <br>Flashing green        | Transition from Fast forward to Loopback                                      | 5                  |
| <br>Flashing red-orange  | Application error<br>(Sub-device/device error [C1D])                          | 4                  |
| <br>Flashing red-green   | MST warning <sup>4)</sup><br>(S-0-1045, sercos: Device Status [S-Dev], bit15) | 3                  |
| <br>Permanently lit red  | Communication error<br>(Sub-device/device error [C1D])                        | 2                  |
| <br>Flashing orange      | Identification<br>(S-0-1044, sercos: Device Control [C-Dev], bit15)           | 1                  |
| <br>Flashing red         | Internal watchdog   | 0                  |

- 1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 250 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, OG = LED permanently lit orange, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off
- 2) Display priority (1 = highest priority); the state of the highest priority is displayed
- 3) NRT = **N**one **R**eal **T**ime
- 4) MST = **M**aster **s**ynchronization **t**elegram
- Tab. 7-20: *Diagnostic LED*

## PROFINET IO

| LED: Color / flashing pattern  | Significance  |
|--|---|
| <br>Off                   | The device does not have a valid IP address or has been switched off.                                   |
| <br>Flashing green        | The device has run up with a valid IP address, but does not have a cyclic connection.                   |
| <br>Permanently lit green | The I/O connection has been established without error.  |
| <br>Flashing red          | The existing I/O connection was unexpectedly aborted (e.g., watchdog).                                  |
| <br>Permanently lit red   | The "Duplicate-IP-Adress-Check" showed that the IP address which was set already exists in the network. |
| <br>Flashing red-green    | The device is running up and carries out a self test.   |

Tab. 7-21: Diagnostic LED

Technical data of the components

7.1.4PB - PROFIBUS

| Signal Specification | Signal                  | Specification  |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                      | +5V                     | +5 V (±10%)  |
|                      | Repeater supply         | Max. 75 mA   |
|                      | Repeater control signal | TTL-compatible: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 1: Transmit</li><li>• 0: Receive</li></ul> Output resistance: 350R<br>$V_{OL} \leq 0.8\text{ V at } I_{OL} \leq 2\text{ mA}$<br>$V_{OH} \geq 3.5\text{ V at } I_{OH} \leq 1\text{ mA}$ |
|                      | Receive/transmit data   | EIA-RS485 standard   |

Tab. 7-22: Signal Specification

NOTICE

Danger of destroying output  
"+5V repeater supply" by overload!



Do not short-circuit the output.  
Do not exceed the maximum current.

Diagnostic Displays For the significance of the diagnostic displays, see firmware documentation.



## 7.1.5 CN - CANopen

### Display Elements CANopen

| LED | Significance | Color   | Description  |
|-----|--------------|---|--|
| H4  | Run          | <br>Green | Signals operating states; see Functional Description of firmware |
| H5  | Error        | <br>Red   | Signals error states; see Functional Description of firmware     |

Tab. 7-23: Significance of Display Elements for CANopen

### Main Features

| Feature                         | CANopen   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Compatibility                   | According to EN 50325-4   |
| Max. possible number of nodes   | 127 nodes   |
| Bus Topology                    | Line topology   |
| Bus terminator (ISO 11898)      | 124 ohm each, 1%, 200 mW; connect at both bus ends to X61.2 and X61.7 |
| Transmission medium             | 2 twisted two-wire lines (4-pin) with shield                          |
| Max. allowed bus (line) lengths | Depending on bit rate   |
| Recommended connection cable    | Our RKS number or third-party type                                    |

Tab. 7-24: Main Features

### Bus Lengths Depending on Bit Rates

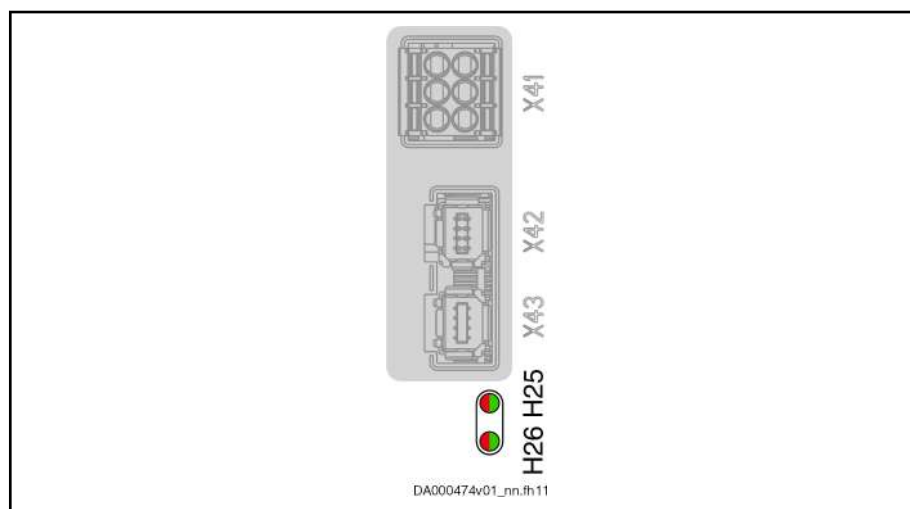
| Bit rate<br>[kBaud] | Max. allowed network dimension<br>[m] |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1000                | 25                                    |
| 800                 | 50                                    |
| 500                 | 100                                   |
| 250                 | 250                                   |
| 125                 | 500                                   |
| 50                  | 1000                                  |
| 20                  | 2500                                  |
| 10                  | 5000                                  |

Tab. 7-25: Network Dimension

Technical data of the components









## 7.1.6 Sx - Safe Motion, Safe Motion Bus

### Display elements



- H25** Bicolor LED: Safety technology status  
**H26** Bicolor LED: Connection status  
**X41, X42, X43** Not available for "Safe Motion Bus" option  
*Fig. 7-25: Safe Motion, display elements*

Technical data of the components

| Color / flashing pattern <sup>1)</sup>   | Safety technology status <sup>3)</sup><br>(Safety Supervisor State / Event)  | Connection status <sup>3)</sup>  |
|--|--|--|
| <br>Off                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not active</li> <li>Safety bus communication not configured</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not ready</li> <li>Safety bus communication not configured</li> </ul>   |
| <br>Flashing green        | Active, no connection (safety default)   | Ready and no active connection   |
| <br>Permanently lit green | Active, at least one safe connection   | Ready and at least one active connection   |
| <br>Flashing red-green    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Waiting for TUNID <sup>2)</sup></li> <li>Self test and initialization</li> <li>Identifying the axis identifier</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Waiting for TUNID <sup>2)</sup></li> <li>Self test and initialization</li> <li>Identifying the axis identifier</li> </ul> |
| <br>Flashing red-green    | Identifying the safety technology  | -  |
| <br>Flashing red-green    | TUNID <sup>2)</sup> not yet set  | -  |
| <br>Flashing red        | Abortion of connections  | Faulty abortion of at least one active connection  |
| <br>Permanently lit red | Critical error   | Critical connection error  |

- 1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 250 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off
- 2) TUNID = Target Unique Network Identifier
- 3) The LED display is only active with safety bus communication via the master communication


Tab. 7-26: LED display

Technical data of the components

7.1.7      Digital inputs/outputs

General Information

The digital inputs/outputs correspond to "IEC 61131".



Do not operate digital outputs at low-resistance sources!

In the Functional Description of the firmware, observe the Notes on Commissioning for digital inputs/outputs.

Digital inputs

Digital Inputs Type A (Standard)

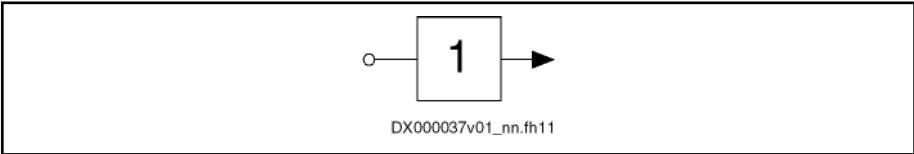


Fig. 7-26:      Symbol

| Data                  | Unit | Min. | Max.  |
|-----------------------|------|------|---|
| Allowed input voltage | V    | -3   | 30  |
| High                  | V    | 15   | 30  |
| Low                   | V    | -3   | 5   |
| Current consumption   | mA   | 2    | 5   |
| Control delay         | µs   |      | 1000 + position control-<br>ler clock<br>200 + position controller<br>clock <sup>1)</sup> |

1)      Applies to optional I/O extension DA

Tab. 7-27:      Digital Inputs Type A

Digital inputs type B (probe)

**Function** See "Probe" in the Functional Description of the firmware.  
**Technical data**

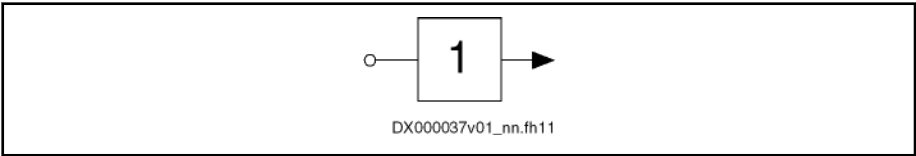
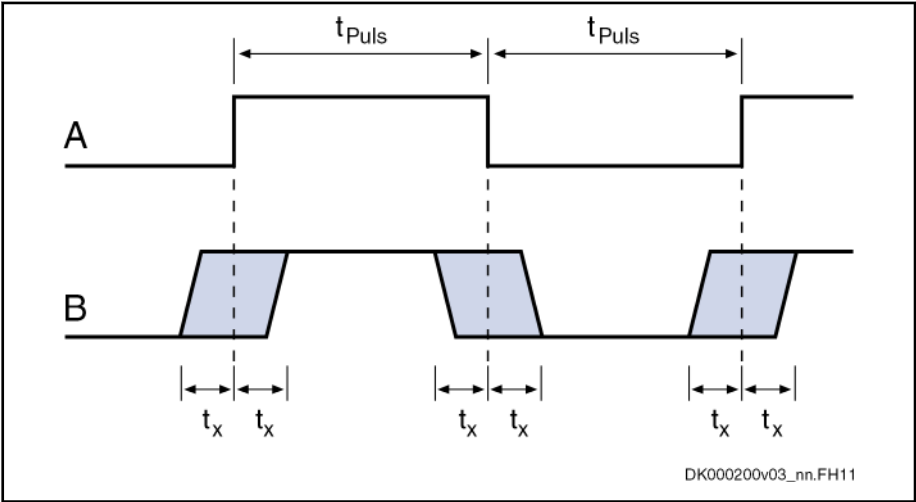


Fig. 7-27: Symbol

| Data                     | Unit    | min. | max.                          |
|--------------------------|---------|------|-------------------------------|
| Allowed input voltage    | V       | -3   | 30                            |
| High                     | V       | 15   | 30                            |
| Low                      | V       | -3   | 5                             |
| Input current            | mA      | 2    | 5                             |
| Pulse width $t_{Puls}$   | $\mu s$ | 4    |                               |
| Measuring accuracy $t_x$ | $\mu s$ | -1   | 1                             |
| Delay <sup>1)</sup>      | $\mu s$ |      | 4 + position controller clock |

1) Applies when used as a digital input. Does not apply when used as a probe.

Tab. 7-28: Digital inputs type B



A Signal  
B Signal Detection at Probe Input  
 $t_{Puls}$  Pulse width  
 $t_x$  Measuring accuracy of the signal edges

Fig. 7-28: Signal Detection at Probe Input

**Use** To acquire fast digital input signals.



**Probe inputs** are "fast" inputs. For control use bounce-free switching elements (e.g. electronic switches) to avoid incorrect evaluation.

Technical data of the components

Digital inputs (safety technology L options)

The digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131, type 2.

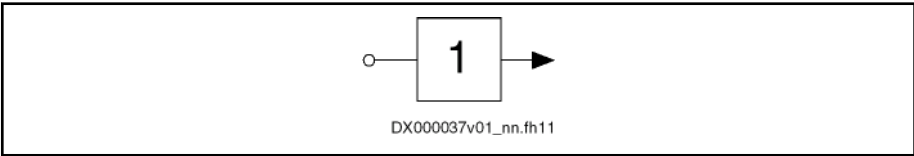


Fig. 7-29:      Symbol

| Data                              | Unit | Min. | Max. |
|-----------------------------------|------|------|------|
| Allowed input voltage             | V    | -3   | 30   |
| High                              | V    | 11   | 30   |
| Low                               | V    | -3   | 5    |
| Current consumption <sup>1)</sup> | mA   | 7    | 15   |

1)      For KCU02, the specified values must be multiplied with the number of zone nodes of the drive line.

Tab. 7-29:      Digital inputs (safety technology L options)

Technical data of the components

Digital inputs (safety technology S options)

The digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131, type 1.

| Data                  | Unit | min. | max. |
|-----------------------|------|------|------|
| Allowed input voltage | V    | -3   | 30   |
| High                  | V    | 15   | 30   |
| Low                   | V    | -3   | 5    |
| Current consumption   | mA   | 2    | 5    |

Tab. 7-30: Digital inputs (safety technology S options)

Time behavior

| Description  | Unit    | min. | max. |
|--|---------|------|------|
| Test pulse width ( $t_{PL}$ )                                      | $\mu s$ | 0    | 1000 |
| Percentage of High time ( $T_{PH}/T_P \times 100\%$ )              | %       | 90   | 100  |
| Phase shift between two test pulses on both channels ( $\varphi$ ) | ms      | -    | -    |

DK000384v01\_in.FH11

Tab. 7-31: Time behavior

Technical data of the components

Digital outputs

Digital Outputs (Standard)

The digital outputs are compatible with digital inputs of types 1, 2 and 3 (IEC 61131).

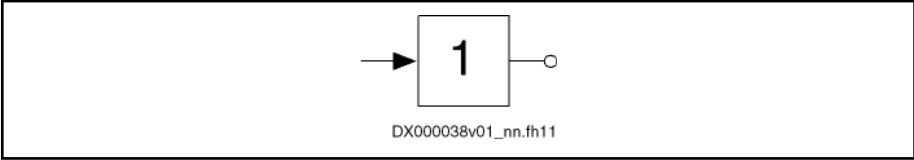


Fig. 7-30: Symbol

| Data  | Unit          | Min.          | Max.   |
|---|---------------|---------------|--|
| Output voltage ON <sup>1)</sup>   | V             | $U_{ext} - 1$ | $U_{ext}$  |
| Output current OFF  | mA            |               | 0,05   |
| Output current ON   | mA            |               | 500  |
| Sum of output currents <sup>2)</sup>  | mA            |               | <div> <div>■ 1000</div> <div>■ 2000</div> </div> |
| Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads <sup>3) 4)</sup> <div> <div>■ <math>f &lt; 0.5\text{ Hz}</math></div> <div>■ <math>f &lt; 2\text{ Hz}</math></div> </div> | mJ            |               | <div> <div>■ 500</div> <div>■ 200</div> </div>   |
| Control delay   | $\mu\text{s}$ |               | 800<br>200 <sup>5)</sup>                         |
| Short circuit protection  |               | Present       |  |
| Overload protection   |               | Present       |  |

- 1)
- $U_{ext}$ : Supply voltage
- 2)
- When several outputs supply current simultaneously, the maximum allowed total current of these outputs must be taken into account. According to the number of outputs, the total current must be related to 4 or 8 outputs.
- 3)
- In the case of inductive loads with a greater energy content, an external free-wheeling arm must be installed. The effective terminal voltage must be  $< 25\text{ V}$ .
- 4)
- The maximum energy content depends on the switching frequency  $f$  of the outputs
- 5)
- Applies to optional I/O extension DA

Tab. 7-32: Digital Outputs



- The digital outputs have been realized with high-side switches. This means that these outputs only can actively supply current.
- The energy absorption capacity of the outputs is used to limit voltage peaks caused when inductive loads are switched off. Limit voltage peaks by using free-wheeling diodes directly at the relay coil.



## Technical data of the components

### Digital Outputs (Safety Technology L Options)

The digital outputs are compatible with digital inputs of types 1, 2 and 3 (IEC 61131).

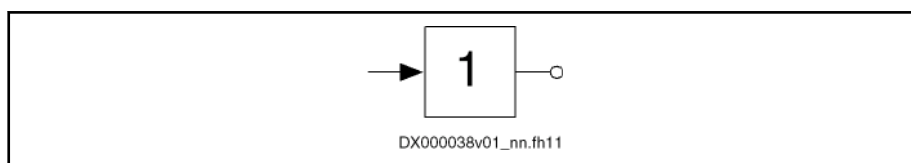


Fig. 7-31: Symbol

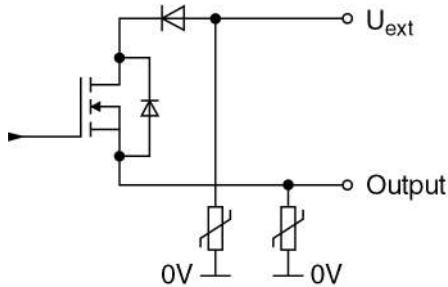
| Data  | Unit | Min.      | Max. |
|---|------|-----------|------|
| Supply voltage ( $U_{\text{ext}}$ )   | V    | 19,2      | 30   |
| Current consumption ( $I_{\text{ext}}$ )  | mA   |           | 700  |
| Output voltage ON   | V    | 18,2      | 30   |
| Output voltage OFF  | V    |           | 5    |
| Output current ON   | mA   |           | 350  |
| Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads, e.g. relay coils; only allowed as single pulse | mJ   |           | 400  |
| Short circuit protection  |      | Available |      |
| Overload protection   |      | Available |      |

Tab. 7-33: Digital Outputs (Safety Technology L Options)

Technical data of the components

Digital outputs (safety technology S options)

The digital outputs are compatible with digital inputs of types 1, 2 and 3 (IEC 61131).

| Data  | Unit  | min.          | max.                 |
|---|---|---------------|----------------------|
| Output voltage ON   | V   | $U_{ext} - 1$ | $U_{ext}$            |
| Output voltage OFF  | V   |               | 2                    |
| Allowed output current per output                                     | mA  |               | 350                  |
| Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads, e.g. relay coils | mJ  |               | 400 <sup>1) 2)</sup> |
| Capacitive load   | nF  |               | 320                  |
| Short circuit protection  |   | Present       |                      |
| Overload protection   |   | Present       |                      |
| Block diagram output:   |    |               |                      |
| Error detection   | The following errors are detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wiring error with short circuit to high</li> <li>Wiring error with short circuit to low</li> <li>Wiring error with short circuit between the two channels</li> <li>Internal errors</li> </ul> In the case of an error, the control panel shows the corresponding error message: F83xx |               |                      |

1)  
2)

At a maximum switching frequency of 1 Hz  
 In the case of inductive loads with currents > 200 mA or in the case of inductive loads with a greater energy content, an external free-wheeling arm has to be installed. The effective terminal voltage has to be < 25 V.

Tab. 7-34: Digital outputs

Technical data of the components

Time behavior

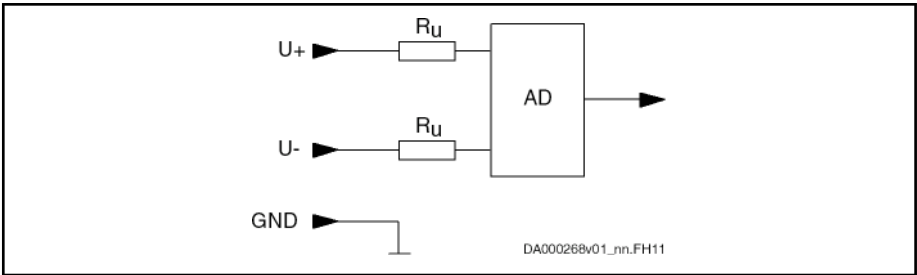
| Description  | Unit    | min. | max. |
|--|---------|------|------|
| Test pulse width ( $t_{PL}$ )                                      | $\mu s$ | 100  | 200  |
| Periodic time ( $T_P$ )  | ms      | 500  | 1000 |
| Phase shift between two test pulses on both channels ( $\varphi$ ) | ms      | 50   | -    |

The diagram shows two digital signals, Out\_Ch1 and Out\_Ch2, over time. Out\_Ch1 has a high pulse followed by a low pulse, and then another high pulse. Out\_Ch2 has a low pulse followed by a high pulse, and then another low pulse. The pulse width of each pulse is labeled  $t_{PL}$ . The time between the start of two consecutive pulses on the same channel is labeled  $T_P$ . The time difference between the start of a pulse on Out\_Ch1 and the start of a pulse on Out\_Ch2 is labeled  $\varphi$ . Vertical dashed lines mark the start and end of pulses and the phase shift interval. The text 'DK000356v01\_m.FH11' is printed vertically on the right side of the diagram.

Tab. 7-35: Time behavior

Technical data of the components

7.1.8      Analog Voltage Input



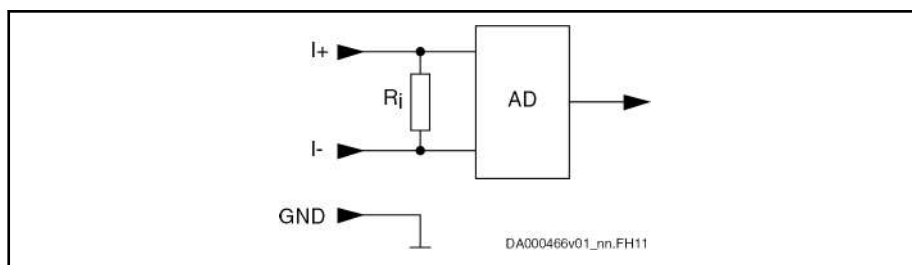
AD                      Analog/digital converter  
Fig. 7-32:            Analog Voltage Input

| Data   | Unit | Min.   | Typ.                                 | Max. |
|--|------|--|--------------------------------------|------|
| Allowed input voltage                          | V    | -30  |                                      | +30  |
| Working range input voltage $U_{on\_work}$     | V    | -10  |                                      | +10  |
| Input resistance $R_u$                         | kΩ   | 150  |                                      | 300  |
| Input bandwidth (-3 dB)                        | kHz  |  | 1,3                                  |      |
| Common-mode range                              | V    | -30  |                                      | +30  |
| Common-mode rejection                          | dB   | 50   |                                      |      |
| Relative measuring error at 90% $U_{on\_work}$ | %    | -1   |                                      | +1   |
| Resolution                                     | Bit  |  | 14 <sup>1)</sup><br>13 <sup>2)</sup> |      |
| Cables   |      | For cable lengths > 30 m, only use <b>shielded</b> cables. |                                      |      |

- 1)
- Applies to: Cxx02 control sections (X32), optional I/O extension DA (X38), HCS01 drive controllers (X32)
- 2)
- Applies to: Control sections with extended scope CSx02.1B (X35), CDB02.1B (X36)

Tab. 7-36:            Analog Voltage Input

## 7.1.9 Analog current input



AD Analog/digital converter

Fig. 7-33: Analog current input

Electrical data (current inputs [-20/4 ... 20 mA])

| Spring terminal (connector)                          | Unit | min.   | max. |
|--|------|--|------|
| Input current measuring range <sup>1)</sup>          | mA   | -20 / 4  | 20   |
| Input current minimum value monitoring <sup>2)</sup> | mA   | 2  | 3    |
| Input current maximum value monitoring <sup>3)</sup> | mA   | 21   | 22   |
| Input resistance                                     | Ω    | 280  |      |
| Input bandwidth (-3db)                               | kHz  | 1.3  |      |
| Relative measuring error at 18 mA                    | %    | -1   | +1   |
| Resolution   | -    | 13bit (12bit + 4-fold oversampling) <sup>5)</sup><br>12bit (11bit + 4-fold oversampling) <sup>6)</sup> |      |
| Overload protection <sup>4)</sup>                    | -    | Present  |      |
| Wiring   | -    | Only use <b>shielded</b> cables for cable lengths > 30 m.  |      |

- 1) Measuring range (-20 ... 20 or 4 ... 20) can be set using a parameter. With a measuring range 4 ... 20, the minimum value monitoring (wire break) is automatically active.
- 2) Only possible with a measuring range 4 ... 20
- 3) Monitoring switched off at approx. ±35 mA
- 4) In the case of input currents greater than the maximum value, an error is signaled and the input is switched at high resistance
- 5) Applies to: Optional I/O extension DA (X38)
- 6) Applies to: Control sections with extended scope CSx02.1B (X35), CDB02.1B (X36)

Tab. 7-37: Electrical data

## Technical data of the components

## 7.1.10 Analog Output

| Data   | Unit       | min   | Typ. | max                      |
|--|------------|---|------|--------------------------|
| Output voltage                                 | V          | -10   |      | +10                      |
| Output load, ohmic                             | k $\Omega$ | 2   |      |                          |
| Output load, capacitive                        | nF         |   |      | 100                      |
| Resolution                                     | mV/incr    | 24  |      |                          |
| Conversion time (incl. response time)          | $\mu$ s    |   |      | 750<br>250 <sup>1)</sup> |
| Output clock                                   |            | Position controller clock   |      |                          |
| Precision (in relation to the measuring range) |            | $\pm 0.5\%$ with load $\geq 10$ k $\Omega$<br>$\pm 1\%$ with load $\geq 2$ k $\Omega$ |      |                          |
| Short circuit protection                       |            | Present   |      |                          |
| Overload protection                            |            | Present   |      |                          |

1) Applies to optional I/O extension DA  
 Tab. 7-38: Analog Output

## 7.1.11 Relay contacts

### Relay Contact Type 2

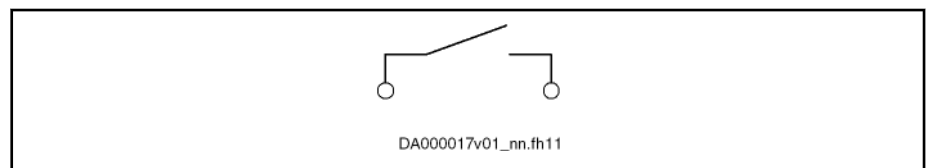


Fig. 7-34: Relay contact

| Data  | Unit | Min.  | Typ.            | Max. |
|---|------|-------|-----------------|------|
| Current carrying capacity                       | mA   | 10    |                 | 1000 |
| Voltage load capacity                           | V    |       |                 | 30   |
| Contact resistance at minimum current           | mΩ   |       |                 | 1000 |
| Switching actions at max. time constant of load |      |       | $1 \times 10^6$ |      |
| Number of mechanical switching cycles           |      |       | $1 \times 10^8$ |      |
| Time constant of load                           | ms   | ohmic |                 |      |
| Pick up delay                                   | ms   |       |                 | 10   |
| Drop out delay                                  | ms   |       |                 | 10   |

Tab. 7-39: Relay Contacts Type 2

Technical data of the components

## 7.2 Control panel

### 7.2.1 Design

#### Standard control panel HAP01.1N



For a detailed description of the control panel, see the documentation "Application Manual, Functions" of the firmware used.



Fig. 7-35: Standard control panel HAP01.1N

#### Description

The standard control panel

- has a single-line display
- must have been plugged in when the drive controller is switched on so that it can be recognized (not suited for hot plug)
- can be used as programming module
- The **display** shows operating states, command and error diagnoses and pending warnings.
- Using the four **keys**, the commissioning engineer or service technician can have extended diagnoses displayed and trigger simple commands.
- Memory
  - 400 kbytes for MLD boot program
  - 492 bytes for MLD retain variables



## ADVANCED Control Panel HAP01.1A



For a detailed description of the control panel, see the documentation "Application Manual, Functions" of the firmware used.

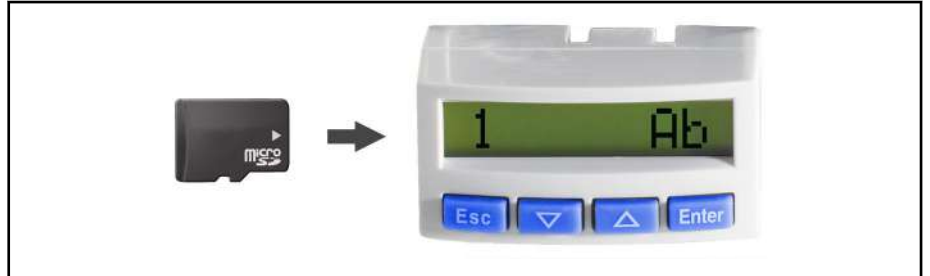


Fig. 7-36: ADVANCED Control Panel HAP01.1A

- Description** The ADVANCED control panel HAP01.1A
- has a slot for a **microSD memory card (PFM04.1)**
  - has a single-line display
  - is suited for hot plug
  - can be used as programming module
  - The **display** shows operating states, command and error diagnoses and pending warnings.
  - Using the four **keys**, the commissioning engineer or service technician can have extended diagnoses displayed and trigger simple commands.
  - Memory:
    - 2 MB (data, flash memory)
    - 16 MB (code, flash memory)
    - 32 kB (retain data, FRAM memory)

Technical data of the components

## 7.3 Power section

### 7.3.1 Control voltage

#### Control voltage supply data

| Description   | Symbol                | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|-----------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Control voltage input <sup>1)</sup>   | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 24 ± 20%                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
|   | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 24 ± 5%                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length > 50 m <sup>3)</sup> | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 26 ± 5%                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Max. inrush current at 24 V supply  | I <sub>IN3_max</sub>  | A    | 3.30                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Pulse width of I <sub>EIN3</sub>  | t <sub>EIN3Lade</sub> | ms   | 2                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Input capacitance   | C <sub>N3</sub>       | mF   | 0.04                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rated power consumption control voltage input at U <sub>N3</sub> <sup>4)</sup>              | P <sub>N3</sub>       | W    | 27                         |                            | 28                         |                            | 34                         |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23   |                       |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2) 3)  
4)Observe supply voltage for motor holding brakes  
See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at  $U_{N3}$ "

Tab. 7-40: HCS - Control voltage supply data

**Rated power consumption control voltage input at  $U_{N3}$** 

Including control section, plus safety option

#### Control voltage supply data

| Description   | Symbol                | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|-----------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Control voltage input <sup>1)</sup>   | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 24 ± 20%                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
|   | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 24 ± 5%                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Control voltage when using motor holding brake with motor cable length > 50 m <sup>3)</sup> | U <sub>N3</sub>       | V    | 26 ± 5%                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Max. inrush current at 24 V supply  | I <sub>IN3_max</sub>  | A    | 3.30                       |                            |                            |                            | 4.50                       |
| Pulse width of I <sub>EIN3</sub>  | t <sub>EIN3Lade</sub> | ms   | 2                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23   |                       |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

Technical data of the components

| Description   | Symbol          | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|-----------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Input capacitance   | C <sub>N3</sub> | mF   | 0.04                       |                            |                            |                            | 0.06                       |
| Rated power consumption control<br>voltage input at U <sub>N3</sub> <sup>4)</sup> | P <sub>N3</sub> | W    | 27                         | 28                         | 34                         |                            | 45                         |
| Last modification: 2012-01-23   |                 |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

- 1) 2) 3) Observe supply voltage for motor holding brakes  
4) See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at  $U_{N3}$ "

Tab. 7-41: HCS - Control voltage supply data



#### Rated power consumption control voltage input at $U_{N3}$

Including control section, plus safety option



#### Overvoltage

Overvoltage greater than 33 V has to be discharged by means of the appropriate electrical equipment of the machine or installation.

This includes:

- 24V power supply units that reduce incoming overvoltage to the allowed value.
- Overvoltage limiters at the control cabinet input that limit existing overvoltage to the allowed value. This, too, applies to long 24V lines that have been run in parallel to power cables and mains cables and can absorb overvoltage by inductive or capacitive coupling.

## 7.3.2 Mains voltage

### Mains voltage supply data

| Description                                       | Symbol               | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|----------------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mains frequency                                   | f <sub>LN</sub>      | Hz    | 50...60                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains frequency tolerance                         |                      | Hz    | ± 2                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed mains frequency change            | Δf <sub>LN</sub> /Δt | Hz/s  | 2                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rotary field condition                            |                      |       | None                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Short circuit current rating                      | SCCR                 | A rms | 42000                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Nominal mains voltage                             | U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> | V     | 3 AC 230                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Single-phase mains voltage                        | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | 110...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | 110...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28                     |                      |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description   | Symbol                           | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|----------------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Three-phase mains voltage at IT mains <sup>1)</sup>   | U <sub>LN</sub>                  | V    | 110...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Three-phase mains voltage at Corner-grounded-Delta mains <sup>2)</sup>  | U <sub>LN</sub>                  | V    | 110...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Tolerance rated input voltage U <sub>LN</sub>   |                                  | %    | ± 10                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Minimum short circuit power of the mains for failure-free operation   | S <sub>k_min</sub>               | MVA  | 0.02                       | 0.03                       | 0.05                       | 0.1                        | 0.2                        |
| Minimum inductance of mains supply (mains phase inductance) <sup>3)</sup>   | L <sub>min</sub>                 | µH   | 40                         |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Assigned type of mains choke  |                                  |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Inrush current  | I <sub>L_trans_max<br/>_on</sub> | A    | See figure                 |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed ON-OFF cycles per minute <sup>4)</sup>  |                                  |      | 1                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke) <sup>5)</sup> | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | 1.80                       | 2.80                       | 5.00                       | 8.30                       | 12.80                      |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke) <sup>6)</sup>  | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | 0.60                       | 1.20                       | 2.30                       | 4.50                       | 9.60                       |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke) <sup>7)</sup>    | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke) <sup>8)</sup>     | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Nominal current AC1 for mains contactor at nom. data  |                                  |      | ILN                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (single-phase, without mains choke)  |                                  | A    | 4;gG                       |                            | 6;gG                       | 10;gG                      | 16;gG                      |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (three-phase, without mains choke)   |                                  | A    | 2;gG                       |                            | 4;gG                       | 6;gG                       | 16;gG                      |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (single-phase, with mains choke)   |                                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (three-phase, with mains choke)  |                                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28   |                                  |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol             | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|--------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Required wire size in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring); <sup>9)</sup>  | A <sub>LN</sub>    | AWG  | 14 AWG                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains connection power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke)                             | S <sub>LN</sub>    | kVA  | 0.30                       | 0.53                       | 0.92                       | 1.55                       | 3.52                       |
| Mains connection power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke)                                | S <sub>LN</sub>    | kVA  | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains connection power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke)                            | S <sub>LN</sub>    | kVA  | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains connection power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke)                               | S <sub>LN</sub>    | kVA  | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke) <sup>10)</sup> | TPF                |      | 0.29                       | 0.32                       | 0.35                       | 0.37                       | 0.49                       |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke) <sup>11)</sup>  | TPF                |      | 0.47                       |                            | 0.52                       | 0.56                       | 0.52                       |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke) <sup>12)</sup>    | TPF                |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke) <sup>13)</sup>     | TPF                |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 10% P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke)            | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 10% P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke)             | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | 0.28                       | 0.33                       | 0.38                       | 0.40                       | 0.37                       |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 10% P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke)               | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF (λ <sub>L</sub> ) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 10% P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke)                | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke)                                  | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28  |                    |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol             | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|--------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke) | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | 0.99                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke)   | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke)    | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28  |                    |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2)

Mains voltage >  $U_{LN}$ : Use a transformer with grounded neutral point, do not use autotransformers!

3)

Otherwise use HNL mains choke

4)

Maximum allowed number of switch-on processes: 250000

5) 6) 7) 8) 10) 11) 12) 13)

Find interim values by interpolation

9)

Copper wire; PVC-insulation (conductor temperature 90 °C;  $T_a \leq 40$  °C) in accordance with

NFPA 79 chapter 12 and UL 508A chapter 28

Tab. 7-42: HCS - Mains voltage supply data

## Mains voltage supply data

| Description  | Symbol               | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|--|----------------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mains frequency  | f <sub>LN</sub>      | Hz    | 50...60                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains frequency tolerance  |                      | Hz    | ± 2                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed mains frequency change                                 | Δf <sub>LN</sub> /Δt | Hz/s  | 2                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rotary field condition   |                      |       | None                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Short circuit current rating   | SCCR                 | A rms | 42000                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Nominal mains voltage  | U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> | V     | 3 AC 400                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Single-phase mains voltage   | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | Not allowed                |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains                      | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | 200...500                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Three-phase mains voltage at IT mains <sup>1)</sup>                    | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | 200...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Three-phase mains voltage at Corner-grounded-Delta mains <sup>2)</sup> | U <sub>LN</sub>      | V     | 200...230                  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Tolerance rated input voltage U <sub>LN</sub>                          |                      | %     | ± 10                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28  |                      |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

Technical data of the components

| Description   | Symbol                           | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03                     |  |
|---|----------------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| Minimum short circuit power of the mains for failure-free operation   | S <sub>k_min</sub>               | MVA  | 0.05                       | 0.1                        | 0.2                        | 0.3                        | 0.9  |  |
| Minimum inductance of mains supply (mains phase inductance) <sup>3)</sup>   | L <sub>min</sub>                 | μH   | 40                         |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Assigned type of mains choke  |                                  |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            | HNL01.1E<br>-1000-<br>N0012-<br>A-500-<br>NNNN | HNL01.1E<br>-0600-<br>N0032-<br>A-500-<br>NNNN |
| Inrush current  | I <sub>L_trans_max<br/>_on</sub> | A    | See figure                 |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Maximum allowed ON-OFF cycles per minute <sup>4)</sup>  |                                  |      | 1                          |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, without mains choke) <sup>5)</sup> | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, without mains choke) <sup>6)</sup>  | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | 1.50                       | 2.50                       | 5.00                       | 8.00                       | 25.00  |  |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke) <sup>7)</sup>    | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains input continuous current at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke) <sup>8)</sup>     | I <sub>LN</sub>                  | A    | -                          |                            | tbd                        | 10.00                      | 28.00  |  |
| Nominal current AC1 for mains contactor at nom. data  |                                  |      | ILN                        |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (single-phase, without mains choke)  |                                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (three-phase, without mains choke)   |                                  | A    | 2;gG                       | 4;gG                       | 6;gG                       | 10;gG                      | 32;gG  |  |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (single-phase, with mains choke)   |                                  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |  |  |
| Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1 (three-phase, with mains choke)  |                                  | A    | -                          |                            | tbd                        | 16;gG                      | 32;gG  |  |
| Required wire size in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring); <sup>9)</sup>                                       | A <sub>LN</sub>                  | AWG  | 14 AWG                     |                            |                            |                            |  | 10 AWG   |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28   |                                  |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |  |  |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol             | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|--|--------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mains connection power at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, without mains choke)                           | $S_{LN}$           | kVA  | 1.00                       | 1.54                       | 3.50                       | 4.90                       | 16.00                      |
| Mains connection power at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, with mains choke)                              | $S_{LN}$           | kVA  | -                          |                            | tbd                        | 5.50                       | 18.00                      |
| Mains connection power at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, without mains choke)                          | $S_{LN}$           | kVA  | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Mains connection power at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, with mains choke)                             | $S_{LN}$           | kVA  | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, without mains choke) <sup>10)</sup> | TPF                |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, without mains choke) <sup>11)</sup>  | TPF                |      | 0.49                       | 0.56                       | 0.52                       | 0.53                       | 0.56                       |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, with mains choke) <sup>12)</sup>    | TPF                |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, with mains choke) <sup>13)</sup>     | TPF                |      | -                          |                            | tbd                        | 0.72                       | 0.78                       |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and 10% $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, without mains choke)            | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and 10% $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, without mains choke)             | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | 0.30                       | 0.35                       | 0.38                       | 0.40                       | 0.45                       |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and 10% $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, with mains choke)               | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor TPF ( $\lambda_L$ ) at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ and 10% $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, with mains choke)                | TPF <sub>10%</sub> |      | -                          |                            | tbd                        |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at $P_{DC\_cont}$ (single-phase, without mains choke)                          | $\cos\varphi^{h1}$ |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at $P_{DC\_cont}$ (three-phase, without mains choke)                           | $\cos\varphi^{h1}$ |      | 0.99                       | 0.98                       | 0.99                       | 0.98                       | 0.97                       |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28  |                    |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |



Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol             | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|--|--------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (single-phase, with mains choke) | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Power factor of fundamental component DPF at P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (three-phase, with mains choke)  | cosφ <sup>h1</sup> |      | -                          |                            | tbd                        | 0.99                       | 0.95                       |
| Last modification: 2012-06-28  |                    |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2)

Mains voltage  $> U_{LN}$ : Use a transformer with grounded neutral point, do not use autotransformers!

3)

Otherwise use HNL mains choke

4)

Maximum allowed number of switch-on processes: 250000

5) 6) 7) 8) 10) 11) 12) 13)

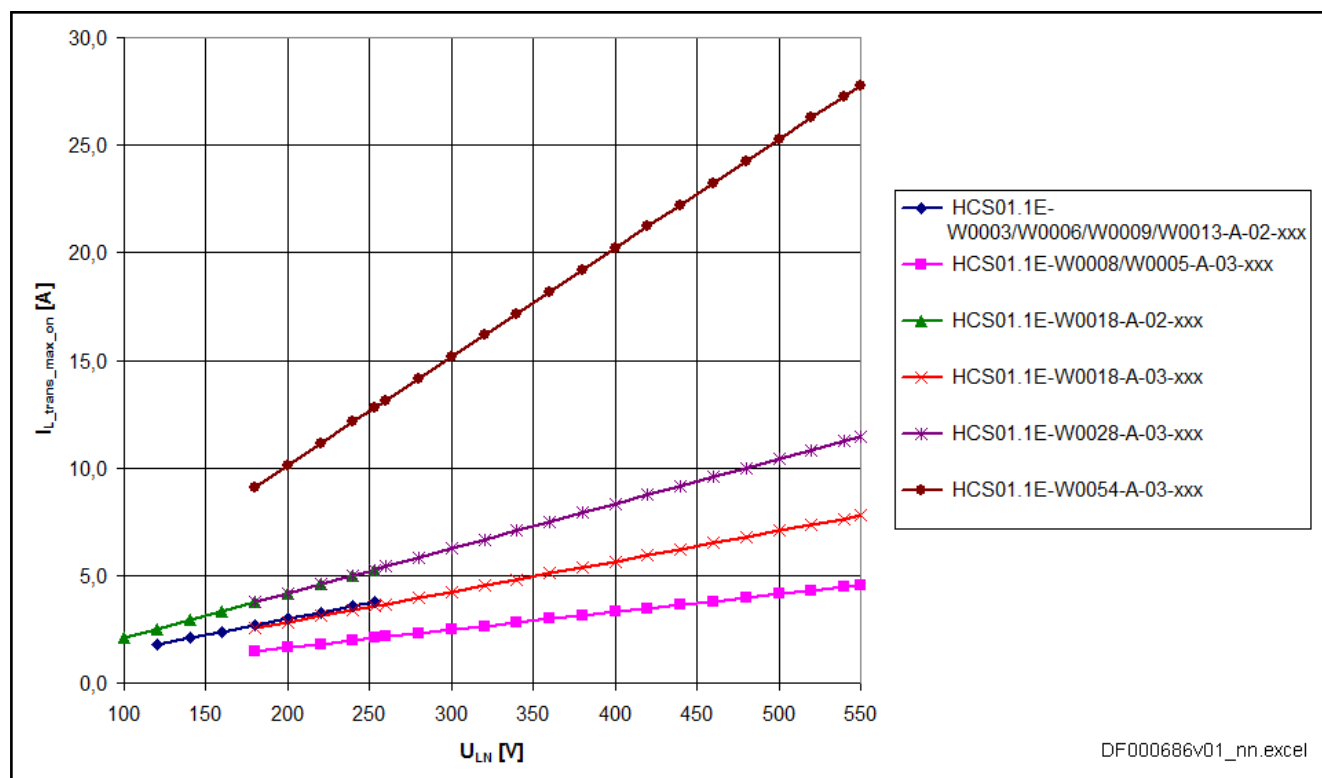
Find interim values by interpolation

9)

Copper wire; PVC-insulation (conductor temperature  $90\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ;  $T_a \leq 40\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) in accordance with

NFPA 79 chapter 12 and UL 508A chapter 28

Tab. 7-43: HCS - Mains voltage supply data



$I_{L\_trans\_max\_on}$   
 $U_{LN}$

Maximum inrush current  
Mains voltage

Fig. 7-37: Maximum inrush current vs. Mains voltage

## Technical data of the components

## 7.3.3 DC bus

## Power section data - DC bus

| Description   | Symbol                     | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02   | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |       |
|---|----------------------------|------|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| DC bus voltage  | U <sub>DC</sub>            | V    | U <sub>LN</sub> x 1.41   |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Capacitance in DC bus   | C <sub>DC</sub>            | mF   | 0.44   |                            | 0.78                       |                            | 1.20                       |       |
| DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)  | R <sub>DC</sub>            | kOhm | 663.00   |                            |                            |                            |                            | 61.20 |
| Rated power (t > 10 min) at f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz; U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; control factor a <sub>0</sub> > 0.8; with mains choke    | P <sub>DC_cont</sub>       | kW   | -  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Rated power (t > 10 min) at f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz; U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; control factor a <sub>0</sub> > 0.8; without mains choke | P <sub>DC_cont</sub>       | kW   | 0.15   | 0.25                       | 0.46                       | 0.80                       | 1.80                       |       |
| Factor to reduce P <sub>DC_cont</sub> at single-phase mains voltage   | f <sub>1_3ph</sub>         |      | 1.00   |                            |                            | 0.80                       | 0.70                       |       |
| P <sub>DC_cont</sub> and P <sub>DC_max</sub> vs. mains input voltage; U <sub>LN</sub> ≤ U <sub>LN_nenn</sub>                        |                            | %/V  | P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (ULN) = P <sub>DC_cont</sub> x [1 - (230 - U <sub>LN</sub> ) x 0.0025]        |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| P <sub>DC_cont</sub> and P <sub>DC_max</sub> vs. mains input voltage; U <sub>LN</sub> > U <sub>LN_nenn</sub>                        |                            | %/V  | No power increase  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Maximum allowed DC bus power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; with mains choke   | P <sub>DC_max</sub>        | kW   | -  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Maximum allowed DC bus power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; without mains choke  | P <sub>DC_max</sub>        | kW   | 0.45   | 0.75                       | 1.38                       | 2.40                       | 4.80                       |       |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (for parallel operation at common DC bus) with mains choke                                |                            |      | -  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (for parallel operation at common DC bus) without mains choke                             |                            |      | -  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold   | U <sub>DC_lim-it_max</sub> | V    | 420  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold   | U <sub>DC_lim-it_min</sub> | V    | 0.75 x U <sub>LN</sub> or "P-0-0114, Undervoltage threshold", if P-0-0114 > 0.75 x U <sub>LN</sub> |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |
| Charging resistor continuous power  | P <sub>DC_Start</sub>      | kW   | 0.03   |                            |                            |                            |                            | 0.15  |
| Last modification: 2012-05-16   |                            |      |  |                            |                            |                            |                            |       |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol               | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|----------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at $U_{LN\_nenn}^{1)}$                          | $C_{DCext}$          | mF   | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Charging time at maximum allowed $C_{DCext}$ external DC bus capacitance at $U_{LN\_nenn}$ | $t_{lade\_DC\_Cext}$ | s    | 2.50                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-05-16  |                      |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) Use assigned mains choke  
Tab. 7-44: HCS - Power section data - DC bus

## Power section data - DC bus

| Description   | Symbol                     | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|----------------------------|------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| DC bus voltage  | U <sub>DC</sub>            | V    | ULN x 1.41  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Capacitance in DC bus   | C <sub>DC</sub>            | mF   | 0.11  |                            | 0.39                       |                            | 0.78                       |
| DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)  | R <sub>DC</sub>            | kOhm | 320.00  |                            | 230.00                     |                            | 136.00                     |
| Rated power (t > 10 min) at f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz; U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; control factor a <sub>0</sub> > 0.8; with mains choke    | P <sub>DC_cont</sub>       | kW   | -   |                            | tbd                        | 4.00                       | 14.00                      |
| Rated power (t > 10 min) at f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz; U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; control factor a <sub>0</sub> > 0.8; without mains choke | P <sub>DC_cont</sub>       | kW   | 0.46  | 0.86                       | 1.70                       | 2.60                       | 9.00                       |
| Factor to reduce P <sub>DC_cont</sub> at single-phase mains voltage   | f <sub>1_3ph</sub>         |      | 1-phase operation not allowed   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| P <sub>DC_cont</sub> and P <sub>DC_max</sub> vs. mains input voltage; U <sub>LN</sub> ≤ U <sub>LN_nenn</sub>                        |                            | %/V  | P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (ULN) = P <sub>DC_cont</sub> × [1 - (400 - U <sub>LN</sub> ) × 0.0025] |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| P <sub>DC_cont</sub> and P <sub>DC_max</sub> vs. mains input voltage; U <sub>LN</sub> > U <sub>LN_nenn</sub>                        |                            | %/V  | No power increase   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed DC bus power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; with mains choke   | P <sub>DC_max</sub>        | kW   | -   |                            |                            | 9.70                       | 19.00                      |
| Maximum allowed DC bus power at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> ; without mains choke  | P <sub>DC_max</sub>        | kW   | 1.38  | 2.58                       | 5.10                       | 6.20                       | 14.00                      |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (for parallel operation at common DC bus) with mains choke                                |                            |      | -   |                            |                            | 0.80                       |                            |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>DC_cont</sub> (for parallel operation at common DC bus) without mains choke                             |                            |      | -   |                            |                            | 0.50                       |                            |
| Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold   | U <sub>DC_lim-it_max</sub> | V    | 900   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2014-12-19   |                            |      |   |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description   | Symbol                     | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|----------------------------|------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold   | U <sub>DC_lim-it_min</sub> | V    | 0.75 x U <sub>LN</sub> or "P-0-0114, Undervoltage threshold", if<br>P-0-0114 > 0.75 x U <sub>LN</sub> |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Charging resistor continuous power  | P <sub>DC_Start</sub>      | kW   | 0.03  |                            | 0.05                       | 0.15                       | 0.50                       |
| Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> <sup>1)</sup>                        | C <sub>DCext</sub>         | mF   | -   |                            | 3.00                       | 4.00                       | 13.00                      |
| Charging time at maximum allowed C <sub>DCext</sub> external DC bus capacitance at U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> | t <sub>lade_DC_Cext</sub>  | s    | 2.50  |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2014-12-19   |                            |      |   |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) Use assigned mains choke

Tab. 7-45: HCS - Power section data - DC bus

## 7.3.4 Integrated braking resistor

Information on the external braking resistor: See [chapter 8.3.4](#) "External braking resistors HLR" on page 301.

## Integrated braking resistor data

| Description   | Symbol                  | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|-------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Braking resistor continuous power   | P <sub>BD</sub>         | kW   | 0.02                       |                            |                            | 0.03                       | 0.15                       |
| Braking resistor peak power   | P <sub>BS</sub>         | kW   | 1.68                       |                            |                            |                            | 2.24                       |
| Nominal braking resistor  | R <sub>DC_Bleeder</sub> | ohm  | 100                        |                            |                            |                            | 68                         |
| Braking resistor switch-on thresh-<br>old - independent of mains volt-<br>age <sup>1)</sup> | U <sub>R_DC_On_f</sub>  | V    | 390                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Braking resistor switch-on thresh-<br>old - depending on mains volt-<br>age <sup>2)</sup>   | U <sub>R_DC_On_v</sub>  |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed on-time duty  | t <sub>on_max</sub>     | s    | 0.20                       |                            |                            |                            | 1.34                       |
| Minimum allowed cycle time  | T <sub>cycl</sub>       | s    | 16.80                      |                            | 11.20                      |                            | 20.00                      |
| Regenerative power to be absor-<br>bed  | W <sub>R_max</sub>      | kWs  | 0.40                       |                            |                            |                            | 3.00                       |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>BD</sub> (for paral-<br>lel operation at common DC bus)         | f                       |      | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Cooling of integrated braking re-<br>sistor   |                         |      | Natural convection         |                            |                            | Forced ventilation         |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-05-16   |                         |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2) Factory setting

Tab. 7-46: HCS - Integrated braking resistor data

## Technical data of the components

## Integrated braking resistor data

| Description   | Symbol                  | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03               | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|-------------------------|------|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Braking resistor continuous power   | P <sub>BD</sub>         | kW   | 0.02                                     | 0.03                       | 0.05                       | 0.15                       | 0.50                       |
| Braking resistor peak power   | P <sub>BS</sub>         | kW   | 4.00                                     |                            | 7.20                       | 10.60                      | 25.80                      |
| Nominal braking resistor  | R <sub>DC_Bleeder</sub> | ohm  | 180                                      |                            | 100                        | 68                         | 28                         |
| Braking resistor switch-on thresh-<br>old - independent of mains volt-<br>age <sup>1)</sup> | U <sub>R_DC_On_f</sub>  | V    | 820                                      |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Braking resistor switch-on thresh-<br>old - depending on mains volt-<br>age <sup>2)</sup>   | U <sub>R_DC_On_v</sub>  |      | 130% of parameter P-0-0815, 820V at most |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum allowed on-time duty  | t <sub>on_max</sub>     | s    | 0.20                                     |                            | 0.32                       | 0.28                       | 0.50                       |
| Minimum allowed cycle time  | T <sub>cycl</sub>       | s    | 40.00                                    | 26.70                      | 45.40                      | 20.00                      | 26.00                      |
| Regenerative power to be absor-<br>bed  | W <sub>R_max</sub>      | kWs  | 0.80                                     |                            | 2.25                       | 3.00                       | 13.00                      |
| Balancing factor for P <sub>BD</sub> (for paral-<br>el operation at common DC bus)          | f                       |      | 0.80                                     |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Cooling of integrated braking re-<br>sistor   |                         |      | Forced ventilation                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2012-05-16   |                         |      |  |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1) 2) Factory setting  
Tab. 7-47: HCS - Integrated braking resistor data

## 7.3.5 Inverter

## Power section data - inverter

| Description   | Symbol               | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|---|----------------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Allowed switching frequencies <sup>1)</sup>   | f <sub>s</sub>       | kHz   | 4, 8, 12, 16               |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output voltage, fundamental wave for V/Hz (U/f) control   | V <sub>out_eff</sub> | V     | ~UDC x 0.71                |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output voltage, fundamental wave for closed-loop operation  | V <sub>out_eff</sub> | V     | ~UDC x 0.71                |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rise of voltage at output with U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 15 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%) <sup>2)</sup>  | dv/dt                | kV/μs | 5.00                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rise of voltage at output with U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 15 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%) <sup>3)</sup> | dv/dt                | kV/μs | 5.00                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12   |                      |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol                 | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Output frequency range when $f_s = 4$ kHz  | $f_{out\_4k}$          | Hz   | 0...400                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when $f_s = 8$ kHz  | $f_{out\_8k}$          | Hz   | 0...800                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when $f_s = 12$ kHz   | $f_{out\_12k}$         | Hz   | 0...1200                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when $f_s = 16$ kHz   | $f_{out\_16k}$         | Hz   | 0...1600                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency threshold for detecting motor standstill <sup>4)</sup>                                  | $f_{out\_still}$       | Hz   | 4                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum output current when $f_s = 4$ kHz  | $I_{out\_max4}$        | A    | 3.3                        | 6.0                        | 9.0                        | 13.0                       | 18.0                       |
| Maximum output current when $f_s = 8$ kHz  | $I_{out\_max8}$        | A    | 3.3                        | 6.0                        | 9.0                        | 13.0                       | 18.0                       |
| Maximum output current when $f_s = 12$ kHz   | $I_{out\_max12}$       | A    | 3.3                        | 6.0                        | 9.0                        | 13.0                       | 18.0                       |
| Maximum output current when $f_s = 16$ kHz   | $I_{out\_max16}$       | A    | 3.3                        | 6.0                        | 9.0                        | 13.0                       | 18.0                       |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 4$ kHz   | $I_{out\_cont4}$       | A    | 1.4                        | 2.4                        | 3.0                        | 4.4                        | 7.6                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 8$ kHz   | $I_{out\_cont8}$       | A    | 1.0                        | 1.8                        | 2.6                        | 4.2                        | 7.6                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 12$ kHz <sup>5)</sup>  | $I_{out\_cont12}$      | A    | 0.6                        | 1.2                        | 1.7                        | 2.7                        | 7.6                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 16$ kHz <sup>6)</sup>  | $I_{out\_cont16}$      | A    | 0.5                        | 0.8                        | 1.1                        | 1.9                        | 7.6                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 4$ kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out\_still}$                | $I_{out\_cont0Hz\_4}$  | A    | 1.1                        | 2.1                        | 3.0                        | 4.4                        | 7.6                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 8$ kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out\_still}$                | $I_{out\_cont0Hz\_8}$  | A    | 0.9                        | 1.6                        | 2.3                        | 3.1                        | 6.0                        |
| Continuous output current when $f_s = 12$ kHz; output frequency $f_{out} < f_{out\_still}$ <sup>7)</sup> | $I_{out\_cont0Hz\_12}$ | A    | 0.5                        | 1.0                        | 1.4                        | 2.0                        | 5.0                        |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12  |                        |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol                          | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0003-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0006-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0009-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0013-<br>_02 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_02 |
|--|---------------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 16 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub> <sup>8)</sup> | I <sub>out_cont0Hz</sub><br>_16 | A    | 0.4                        | 0.7                        | 0.9                        | 1.3                        | 4.2                        |
| Assigned output filters at nom. data;<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz  |                                 |      | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12  |                                 |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

- 1) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"
- 2) 3) Guide value, see following note
- 4) See following note regarding output current reduction
- 5) 6) 7) 8) See parameter description "P-0-0556, Config word of axis controller", load-dependent reduction of switching frequency  $f_s$

Tab. 7-48: HCS - Power section data - inverter

## Power section data - inverter

| Description   | Symbol                 | Unit  | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|---|------------------------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Allowed switching frequencies <sup>1)</sup>   | f <sub>s</sub>         | kHz   | 4, 8, 12, 16               |                            |                            |                            | 4, 8, 12                   |
| Output voltage, fundamental wave for V/Hz (U/f) control   | V <sub>out_eff</sub>   | V     | ~UDC x 0.71                |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output voltage, fundamental wave for closed-loop operation  | V <sub>out_eff</sub>   | V     | ~UDC x 0.71                |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rise of voltage at output with U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 15 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%) <sup>2)</sup>  | dv/dt                  | kV/μs | 5.00                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Rise of voltage at output with U <sub>LN_nenn</sub> and 15 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%) <sup>3)</sup> | dv/dt                  | kV/μs | 5.00                       |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when f <sub>s</sub> = 2 kHz  | f <sub>out_2k</sub>    | Hz    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz  | f <sub>out_4k</sub>    | Hz    | 0...400                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when f <sub>s</sub> = 8 kHz  | f <sub>out_8k</sub>    | Hz    | 0...800                    |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when f <sub>s</sub> = 12 kHz   | f <sub>out_12k</sub>   | Hz    | 0...1200                   |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Output frequency range when f <sub>s</sub> = 16 kHz   | f <sub>out_16k</sub>   | Hz    | 0...1600                   |                            |                            |                            | -                          |
| Output frequency threshold for detecting motor standstill <sup>4)</sup>   | f <sub>out_still</sub> | Hz    | 4                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12   |                        |       |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

## Technical data of the components

| Description  | Symbol                      | Unit | HCS01.1E<br>-W0005-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0008-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0018-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0028-<br>_03 | HCS01.1E<br>-W0054-<br>_03 |
|--|-----------------------------|------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Maximum output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 2 kHz  | I <sub>out_max2</sub>       | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Maximum output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz  | I <sub>out_max4</sub>       | A    | 5.0                        | 8.0                        | 18.0                       | 28.5                       | 54.0                       |
| Maximum output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 8 kHz  | I <sub>out_max8</sub>       | A    | 5.0                        | 8.0                        | 18.0                       | 28.5                       | 40.0                       |
| Maximum output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 12 kHz   | I <sub>out_max12</sub>      | A    | 5.0                        | 8.0                        | 18.0                       | 21.9                       | 30.4                       |
| Maximum output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 16 kHz   | I <sub>out_max16</sub>      | A    | 5.0                        | 8.0                        | 16.5                       | 17.6                       | -                          |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 2 kHz   | I <sub>out_cont2</sub>      | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz   | I <sub>out_cont4</sub>      | A    | 2.0                        | 2.7                        | 7.6                        | 11.5                       | 21.0                       |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 8 kHz   | I <sub>out_cont8</sub>      | A    | 1.6                        | 2.3                        | 6.1                        | 7.9                        | 21.0                       |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 12 kHz <sup>5)</sup>  | I <sub>out_cont12</sub>     | A    | 1.0                        | 1.5                        | 4.1                        | 4.6                        | 15.5                       |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 16 kHz <sup>6)</sup>  | I <sub>out_cont16</sub>     | A    | 0.7                        | 1.0                        | 2.5                        | 3.1                        | -                          |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 2 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub>                | I <sub>out_cont0Hz_2</sub>  | A    | -                          |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub>                | I <sub>out_cont0Hz_4</sub>  | A    | 1.8                        | 2.7                        | 7.0                        | 11.5                       | 21.0                       |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 8 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub>                | I <sub>out_cont0Hz_8</sub>  | A    | 1.3                        | 1.9                        | 2.3                        | 4.7                        | 12.0                       |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 12 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub> <sup>7)</sup> | I <sub>out_cont0Hz_12</sub> | A    | 0.8                        | 1.2                        | 1.4                        | 2.2                        | 7.5                        |
| Continuous output current when<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 16 kHz; output frequency<br>f <sub>out</sub> < f <sub>out_still</sub> <sup>8)</sup> | I <sub>out_cont0Hz_16</sub> | A    | 0.6                        | 0.8                        | 0.4                        | 1.2                        | -                          |
| Assigned output filters at nom. data;<br>f <sub>s</sub> = 4 kHz  |                             |      | tbd                        |                            |                            |                            |                            |
| Last modification: 2015-06-12  |                             |      |                            |                            |                            |                            |                            |

1)

Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"

2) 3)

Guide value, see following note



Technical data of the components

- 4) See following note regarding output current reduction  
5) 6) 7) 8) See parameter description "P-0-0556, Config word of axis controller", load-dependent reduction of switching frequency  $f_s$   
*Tab. 7-49: HCS - Power section data - inverter*



**Guide value "Rise of voltage at output"**

Observe that the voltage load at the motor is almost independent of the power section used.

Especially when using **standard motors**, make sure that they comply with the occurring voltage load.

---



**Reduced output current at motor standstill**

Depending on the electric output frequency, the output current is reduced for thermal protection of the power section.

The output current is reduced, when the electric output frequency has fallen below the threshold to detect motor standstill.

---



## 8 Cables, accessories, additional components

### 8.1 Overview

#### 8.1.1 Cables

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Motor power cables    | See documentation "Rexroth IndraDyn S MSM Synchronous Motors" (R911329338)<br>See documentation "Rexroth Connection Cables IndraDrive and IndraDyn" (R911322949)  |
| Encoder cables        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RKG0033 (MSM motor, absolute value encoder M0)</li> <li>• RKG0034 (MSM motor, extension, absolute value encoder M0)</li> <li>• RKG0035 (1V<sub>pp</sub> Heidenhain standard)</li> <li>• RKG0036 (EnDat, SSI)</li> <li>• <a href="#">RKG0041</a> (incl. D-Sub connector <a href="#">RGS0001/K01</a>; MSM motor, absolute value encoder M0)</li> <li>• RKG0062 (MSM motor, absolute value encoder M5)</li> <li>• RKG0063 (MSM motor, extension, absolute value encoder M5)</li> <li>• <a href="#">RKG0065</a> (incl. D-Sub connector <a href="#">RGS0001/K01</a>; MSM motor, absolute value encoder M5)</li> <li>• RKG4200 (HIPERFACE®)</li> </ul> See <a href="#">tab. 4-12 "Encoder cables for HCS01 converters and MSM motors" on page 54</a> |
| Multi-Ethernet cables | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">RKB0011</a><br/>(To connect the drive system to the higher-level control unit)</li> <li>• <a href="#">RKB0013</a><br/>(To connect devices arranged side by side)</li> </ul>  |

Tab. 8-1: Cables - overview

#### 8.1.2 Accessories

| Accessories  | Note                     |
|--|--------------------------|
| <b>Mounting and connection accessories (HAS09)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Screws for mounting the component</li> <li>• Screws for connecting the equipment grounding conductor</li> <li>• Parts for shield connection and strain relief of cables (plates, screws, clips)</li> <li>• Adhesive labels with notes on safety in the English and French languages</li> </ul> | Standard supply          |
| <b>DC bus connector (RLS0778/K06)</b><br>Connector for connecting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the DC buses of several HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 drive controllers</li> <li>• an HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 drive controller to an HLC01.2 DC bus capacitor unit</li> </ul>   | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Battery box (SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX)</b><br>Accessory for operating MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0   | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Replacement battery (SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTRY)</b><br>Replacement battery for SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX   | To be ordered separately |

## Cables, accessories, additional components

| Accessories   | Note                     |
|---|--------------------------|
| <b>Battery box (SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX)</b><br>Accessory for operating MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5                | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Replacement battery (SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERY)</b><br>Replacement battery for SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX                              | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Encoder cable (RKG0041)</b><br>Accessory for operating MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0                             | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Encoder cable (RKG0065)</b><br>Accessory for operating MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5                             | To be ordered separately |
| <b>D-Sub connector (RGS0001/K01)</b><br>Accessory for assembling an encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0 | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Hall sensor adapter box (SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN)</b><br>Accessory for connecting digital Hall sensors                             | To be ordered separately |
| <b>Snap-on ferrite (HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN)</b><br>Accessory for external HLR braking resistors                                     | To be ordered separately |

Tab. 8-2: Accessories - overview

## 8.1.3 Additional Components

| Additional component  | Type                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Transformer           | DST (autotransformer) |
| Mains filter          | NFE<br>NFD            |
| Mains choke           | HNL01.1E              |
| Braking resistor      | HLR01.2               |
| DC bus capacitor unit | HLC01.2               |

Tab. 8-3: Additional Components - Overview

## 8.2 Accessories

### 8.2.1 Mounting and connection accessories (HAS09)

#### Use

The accessories contain:

- Screws for mounting the component
- Screws for connecting the equipment grounding conductor
- Parts for shield connection of cables (plates, screws)
- Parts for shield connection of module bus cables (heat shrink tubing, copper tape)
- Adhesive labels with notes on safety in the English and French languages. Place the adhesive labels clearly visibly at the component or in the immediate vicinity of the component, if the adhesive labels existing at the component are hidden by neighboring components.

The accessories are part of the standard scope of supply.

#### Assignment

| Accessories                 | Component                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| HAS09.1- <b>001</b> -NNN-NN | HCS01.1E-W0003 ... W0028 |
| HAS09.1- <b>003</b> -NNN-NN | HCS01.1E-W0054           |
| HAS09.1- <b>004</b> -NNN-NN | HLC01.2; HLR01.2N        |

Tab. 8-4: HAS09 and HCS01


Cables, accessories, additional components

## Product insert

HAS09.1-001-NNN-NN

Made in Germany  
109-1304-4025-AG

**HAS09.1-001-NNN-NN**



R911332680

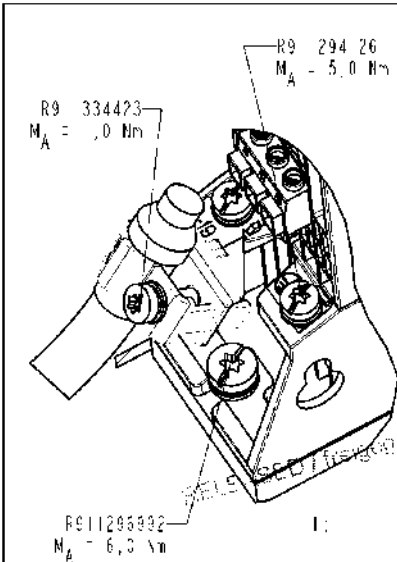
|   |  |            |
|---|--|------------|
| 3 | SEILKUPFERSCHLAUE 1 SL05.0-01.0BK-R01-C-125- | R911222254 |
| 2 | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x20-B-8           | R911296992 |
| 2 | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x30-B-8           | R91134423  |
| 4 | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x12-B-8           | R911294126 |
| 1 | KLIEBSCHILDE U. TSA WARMWEISER ZUFÜHR        | R911306524 |
| 1 | KLIEBSCHILDE KLIPPER 25MM                    | R911277866 |
| 1 | ELTCH-HCS01-SCHIRM-KLEMMLEISTE               | R911310447 |
| 2 | BLICK-HCS01-SCHIRM-KLEMMLEISTE               | R911310447 |
| 1 | ELTCH-HCS01-SCHIRM                           | R911331378 |

Stück Benennung MN

**BEIPACKZETTEL HAS09.1-001-NNN-NN**

| Stück | Benennung                                    | MN         |
|-------|--|------------|
| 1     | KLIEBSCHILDE KLIPPER 25MM                    | R911277866 |
| 3     | SEILKUPFERSCHLAUE 1 SL05.0-01.0BK-R01-C-125- | R911222254 |
| 1     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x20-B-8           | R911296992 |
| 2     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x30-B-8           | R91134423  |
| 4     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x12-B-8           | R911294126 |
| 1     | KLIEBSCHILDE U. TSA WARMWEISER ZUFÜHR        | R911306524 |
| 1     | KLIEBSCHILDE KLIPPER 25MM                    | R911277866 |
| 1     | ELTCH-HCS01-SCHIRM-KLEMMLEISTE               | R911310447 |
| 2     | BLICK-HCS01-SCHIRM-KLEMMLEISTE               | R911310447 |
| 1     | ELTCH-HCS01-SCHIRM                           | R911331378 |
| 2     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x20-B-8           | R911296992 |
| 2     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x30-B-8           | R91134423  |
| 4     | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE 215010644-M5x12-B-8           | R911294126 |

Stück Benennung MN



R9 294 26  
MA = 5,0 Nm

R9 334423  
MA = 6,0 Nm


Fig. 8-1: HAS09.1-001-NNN-NN product insert

Cables, accessories, additional components

HAS09.1-003-NNN-NN

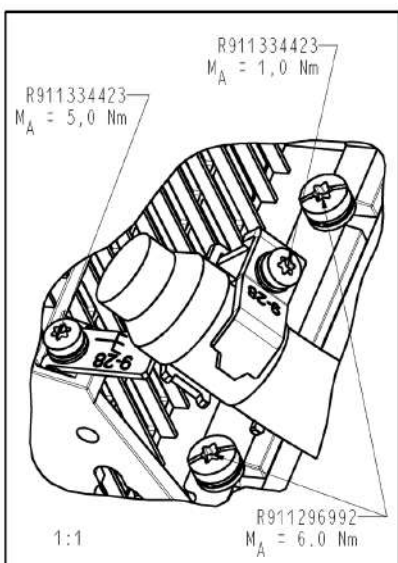
Made in Germany  
109-1304-4824-AE

## HAS09.1-003-NNN-NN



R911331869

| Stck | Benennung                               | MN         |
|------|---|------------|
| 1    | SCHILD-KLEBE UL-CSA NARHINNEIS EN/FR 30 | R911326524 |
| 4    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M6X20-8.8 &    | R911296992 |
| 2    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M5X30-8.8 &    | R911334423 |
| 4    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M5X16-8.8 &    | R911294127 |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMBUEGEL 09-28  | R911330693 |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMBUEGEL 08-19  | R911330442 |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMAUFLAGE 09-28 | R911330692 |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMAUFLAGE 04-19 | R911330441 |



R911334423  
 $M_A = 1,0 \text{ Nm}$

R911334423  
 $M_A = 5,0 \text{ Nm}$

R911296992  
 $M_A = 6,0 \text{ Nm}$

1:1

### BEIPACKZETTEL HAS09.1-003-NNN-NN

| Stck | Benennung                               | MN         |
|------|---|------------|
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMAUFLAGE 04-19 | R911330441 |
| 1:2  |   |            |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMAUFLAGE 09-28 | R911330692 |
| 1:2  |   |            |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMBUEGEL 08-19  | R911330442 |
| 1:2  |   |            |
| 1    | BLECH HCS01,1 SCHIRM KLENMBUEGEL 09-28  | R911330693 |
| 1:2  |   |            |
| 4    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M5X16-8.8 &    | R911294127 |
| 1:1  |   |            |
| 2    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M5X30-8.8 &    | R911334423 |
| 1:1  |   |            |
| 4    | KOMBI-SCHRAUBE Z1S010644-M6X20-8.8 &    | R911296992 |
| 1:1  |   |            |
| 1    | SCHILD-KLEBE UL-CSA NARHINNEIS EN/FR 30 | R911326524 |
| 1:2  |   |            |

|        |            |              |                                  |           |
|--------|------------|--------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Datum  | 2019-03-31 | Benennung    | BEIPACKZETTEL HAS09.1-003-NNN-NN |           |
| Name   | rauhert    | Material-Nr. | R911331870                       | Zeich-Nr. |
|        |            |              | 109-1304-4232-AE                 |           |
| Detail | 08150426   | Erstellt     | 109-1304-4232-AD                 | ADM-Nr.   |
|        |            |              |                                  | 5-11738   |

Fig. 8-2: HAS09.1-003-NNN-NN product insert

Cables, accessories, additional components

Plates for shield connection of cables

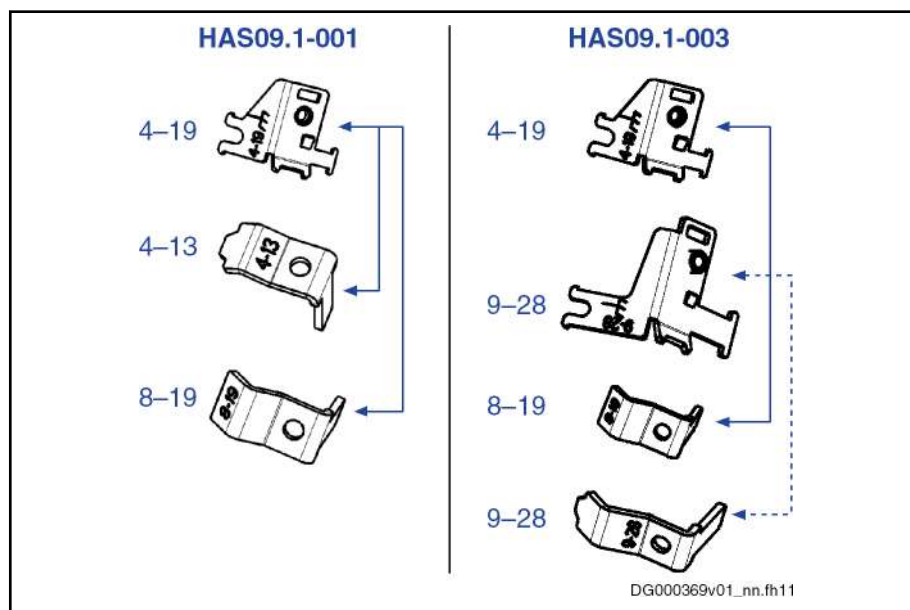
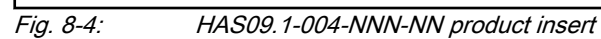
**HAS09.1-001** Plates for cable diameters 4-13 mm and 8-19 mm**HAS09.1-003** Plates for cable diameters 8-19 mm and 9-28 mm

Fig. 8-3: HAS09; plates





Cables, accessories, additional components

## Module bus cable shield connection

Use shielded cables for the module bus in the following cases:

- An **individual** module bus connection is **> 0.5 m** long.
- **All** drive system module bus connections together are **> 3 m** long.

The HAS09.1-001 accessories contain parts for assembling shielded module bus cables:

- Heat shrink tubing (3 × 20 mm)
- Self-adhesive copper tape (1 × 30 mm)

Use shielded **cables** of a conductor size  $\geq 2 \times 0.5 \text{ mm}^2$ .

Observe the data of connection point [X47](#).

### Assembling cables:

1. Strip cable: A = 24 mm, B = 180 mm, C = 35 mm

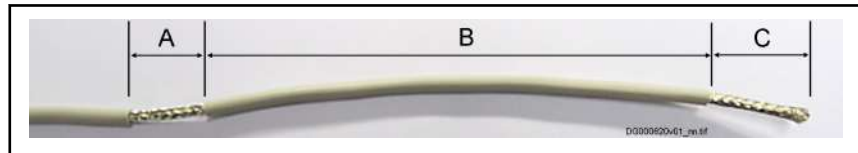


Fig. 8-5: Stripping the cable

2. Remove protective foil, then wrap self-adhesive copper tape around shield braid.

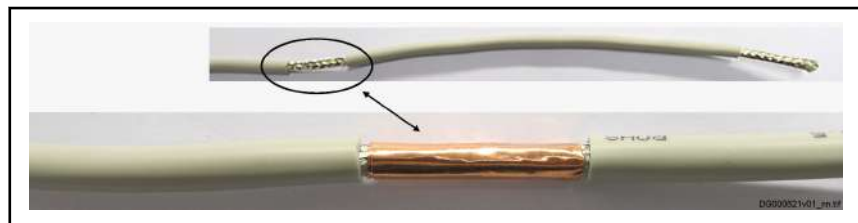


Fig. 8-6: Copper tape

3. Put 2 heat shrink tubings on cable and shrink them.



Fig. 8-7: Heat shrink tubing

4. Fold back shield braid over cable jacket and strip wire ends.



Fig. 8-8: Shield braid, wire ends

Cables, accessories, additional components

5. Put heat shrink tubing on shield braid and shrink it. Optional: Mount wire end ferrules.

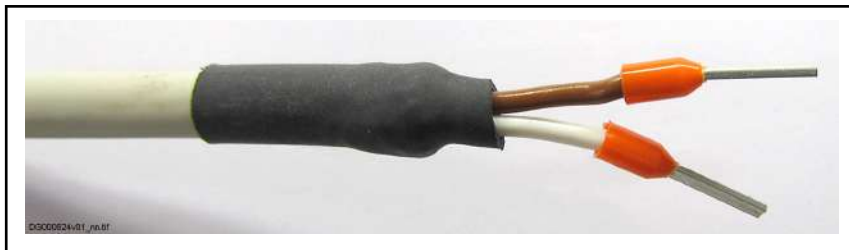


Fig. 8-9: Heat shrink tubing, wire end ferrules

6. Connect cable shield to plate from accessories. Optional: Fasten cable with cable tie.

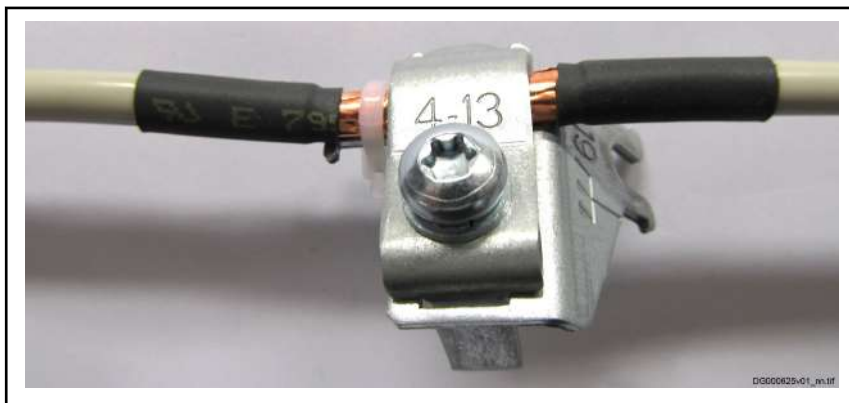


Fig. 8-10: Shield connection

Cables, accessories, additional components

8.2.2      DC Bus Connector (RLS0778/K06)

- Use      Connector for connecting
- the DC buses of several HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 drive controllers
  - an HCS01.1E-W00xx-x-03 drive controller to a DC bus capacitor unit

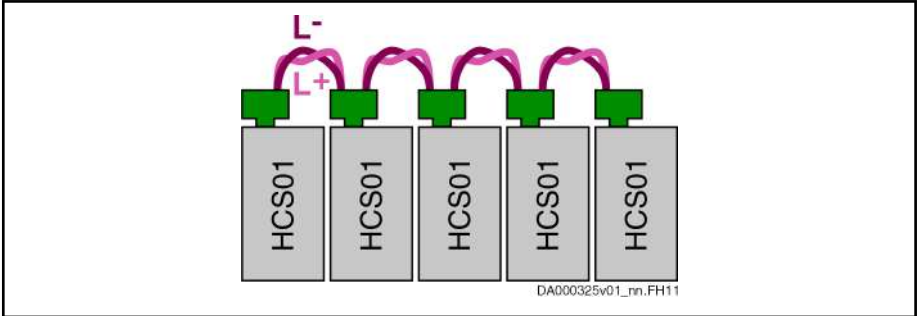


Fig. 8-11:      Connecting the DC Buses via DC Bus Connectors

| DC bus connector  | DC bus connector at device<br>(connection point X77) |
|---|--|
| <p>DG000295v01_nn.tif</p> <p>Order code:<br/><b>RLS0778/K06</b></p> | <p>DA000325v01_nn.tif</p>                            |

Tab. 8-5:      DC Bus Connector

### 8.2.3 Battery box SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX

**Use** The battery box "SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX" is an set of accessories for operation of MSM motors with absolute encoder (M0) and is used for buffering of the encoder data in case of power shut off.

**Scope of delivery**

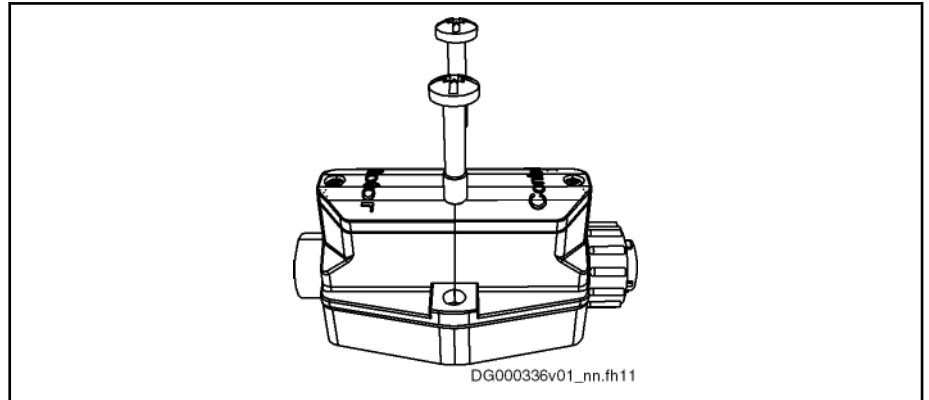


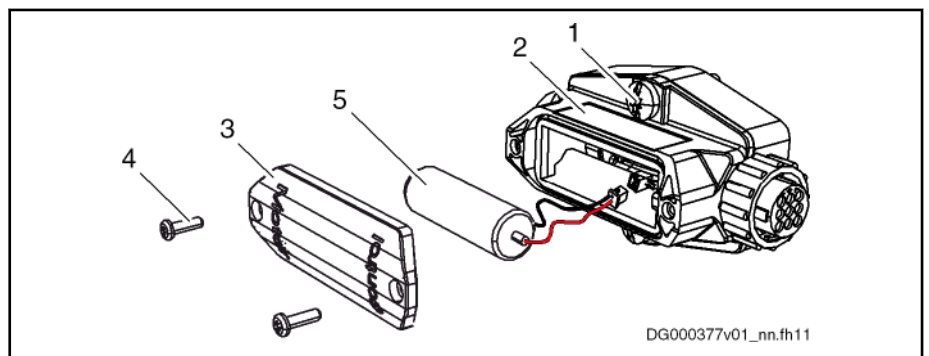
Fig. 8-12: Battery box

**Battery box complete with**

- **Battery:** Type: ER6C, 3.6 V; 1800 mA, lithium; lifetime: up to 10 years, depending on use and ambient temperature
- **Assembly screws:** M6×30; screw head: Torx and slot

The battery box "SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX" is delivered in ready-for-use state with battery.

**Components:**



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Assembly screw   |
| 2 | Housing  |
| 3 | Housing lid  |
| 4 | Housing lid screw (self-shaping screw 30×10; tightening torque 0.8 Nm) |
| 5 | Battery  |

Fig. 8-13: Components of battery box

## Cables, accessories, additional components

## Dimensions

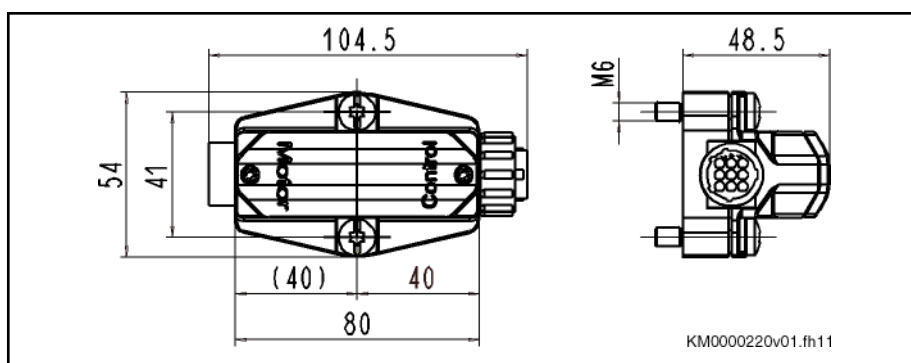


Fig. 8-14: Dimensions

Weight 120 g

## Mounting



Install the battery box in the immediate vicinity of the motor.

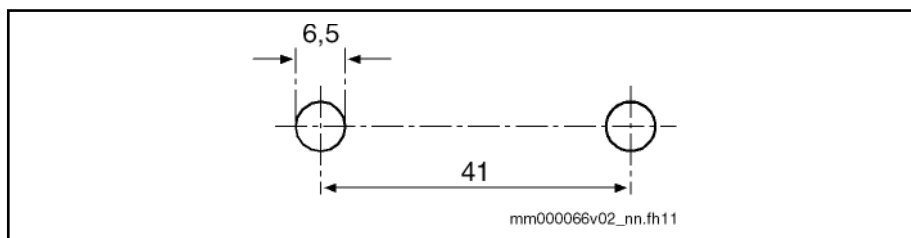
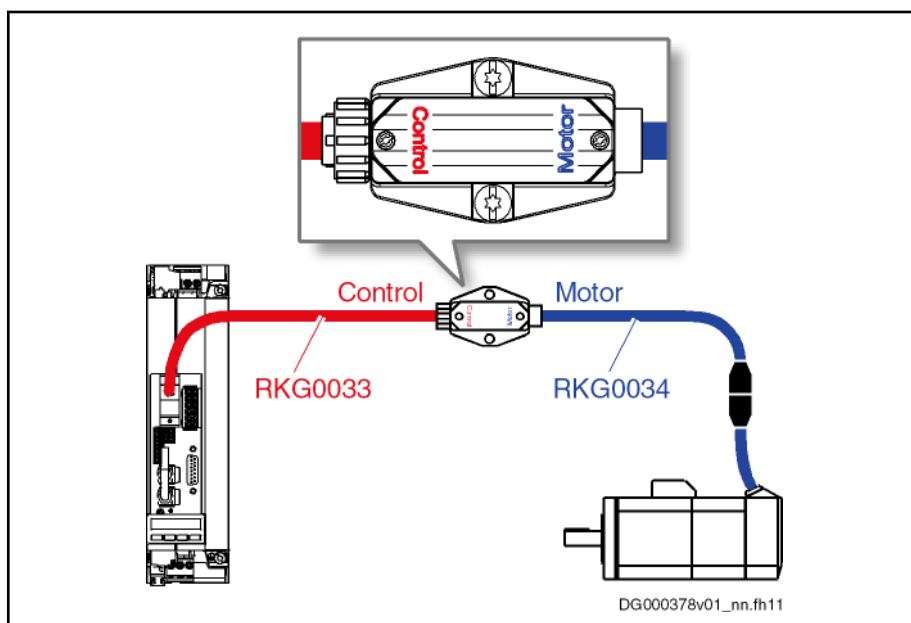


Fig. 8-15: Drilling diagram for battery box

- Assembly screws: M6×30
- Tightening torque  $M_A$ : 3 Nm

## Cabling



RKG0033 Encoder cable  
RKG0034 Extension cable (optional)

Fig. 8-16: Cabling of battery box

Cables, accessories, additional components

8.2.4 Battery and refresh resistor (SUP-E03-DKC\*CS-BATTERY)

**Use** The **battery** is used as a replacement battery for the "SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX" battery box.  
The **refresh resistor** is used to prepare the battery before the battery is used in the battery box "SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX".

Content

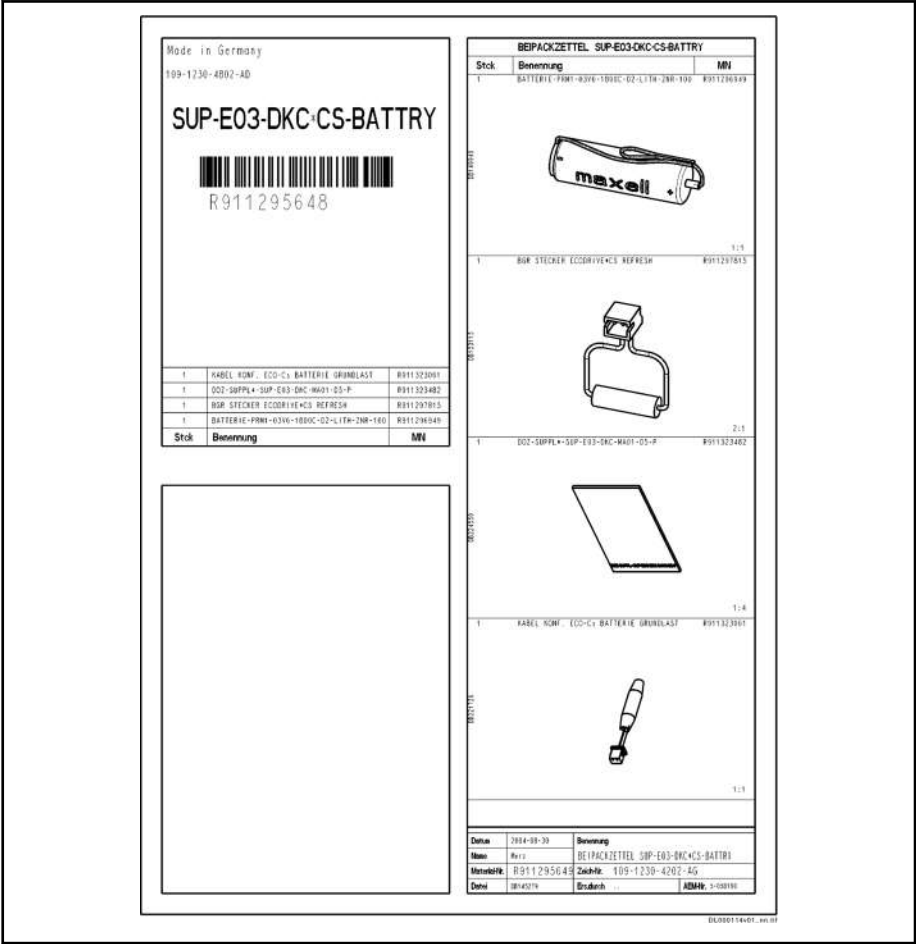


Fig. 8-17: SUP-E03-DKC\*CS-BATTERY - product insert

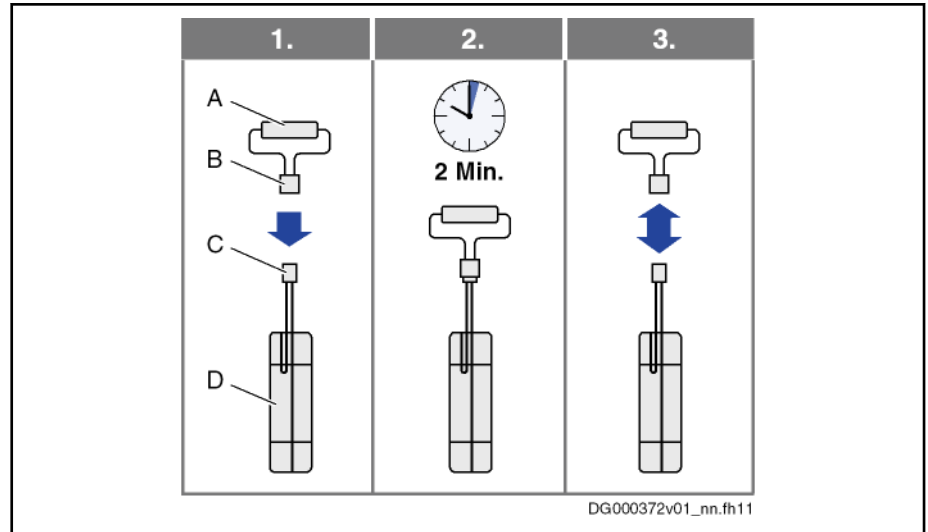
Cables, accessories, additional components

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <div>Battery</div>   | <div> <div>Type: ER6C, 3.6 V; 1800 mA, lithium</div> <div>Lifetime: Depends on load and ambient temperature</div> <div> </div> <div> <div>A</div> <div>Standby mode using battery with a battery current of 90 µA</div> <div><math>I_{Batt}</math></div> <div>Battery current</div> <div><math>L_{Batt}</math></div> <div>Battery lifetime in years</div> <div><math>t_{on}</math></div> <div>Drive controller On time</div> <div><math>t_{off}</math></div> <div>Drive controller Off time</div> <div>Fig. 8-18: Battery lifetime depending on load</div> <div> <div>Example:</div> <div>With a relation <math>t_{on}/t_{off} = 5</math> (every day, drive controller is on for 20 hours and off for 4 hours), the battery lifetime is approx. 9 years.</div> </div> </div> </div> |
| <div>Refresh resistor</div>  | <div>10 ohm; the refresh resistor is used to prepare the battery before the battery is used in the battery box "SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX".</div>  |
| <div>Documentation</div> <div>(DOZ-SUPPL*-SUP-E03-DKC-MA01-D5-P)</div> | <div>Information in 5 languages on the refresh procedure of the battery and on how to connect the battery and the base load resistor.</div>   |
| <div>Base load resistor</div>  | <div>The base load resistor (500 kOhm) is only relevant to <b>EcoDrive Cs</b> drive controllers (when they are operated without the SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX battery box).</div>  |

Tab. 8-6: SUP-E03-DKC\*CS-BATTERY - content



**Refresh** Before using a new battery, you always have to carry out the so-called "re-fresh" procedure:



- A Refresh resistor
- B Mating connector
- C Connector
- D Battery

Fig. 8-19: Battery refresh procedure

1. Connect connector of battery to mating connector at refresh resistor.
2. Wait **2 minutes**.
3. Disconnect connector from mating connector.

#### Replacing the battery

To maintain the **absolute value encoder position** when the battery is replaced, the following requirements have to be fulfilled:

- The **control voltage** at the drive controller has been switched on
- The **encoder** has been connected to the drive controller via the encoder cable

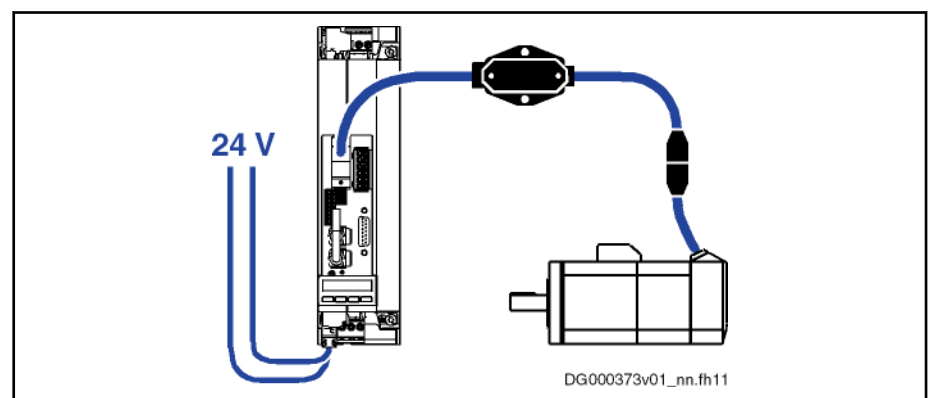


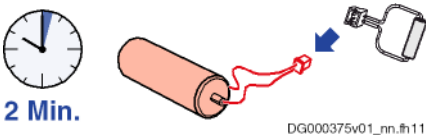
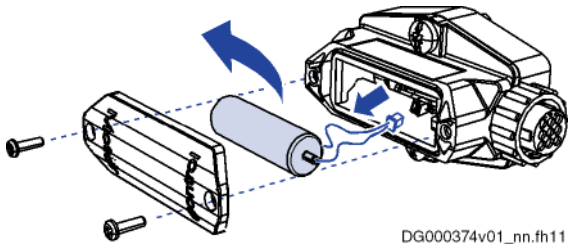
Fig. 8-20: Control voltage switched on and encoder connected

## Cables, accessories, additional components

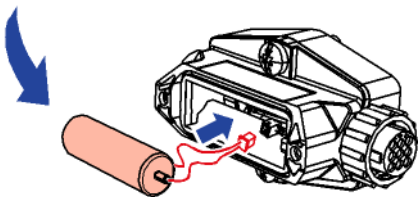
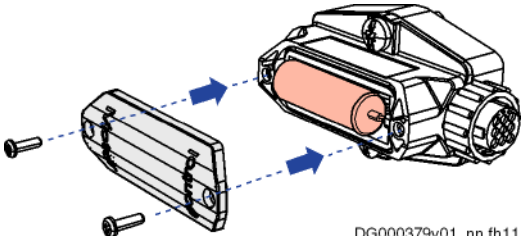
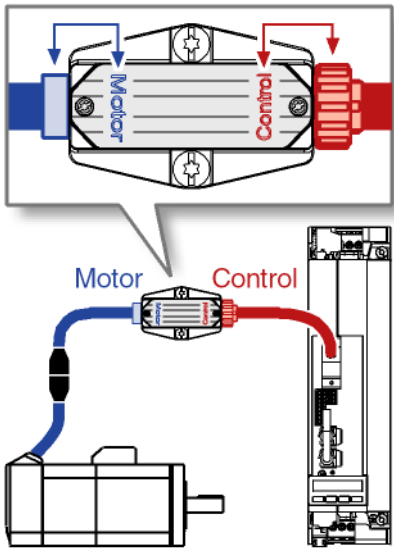


If you replace the battery with the control voltage switched off, the absolute value encoder position and thereby the position data reference of the axis are lost.

Reestablishing the position data reference: See firmware function "Establishing position data reference for absolute measuring systems → "Set absolute position" command"

|    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If not yet done, carry out refresh procedure with the new battery.</li> </ul>   |
| 2. |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unscrew cover of battery box.</li> <li>• Remove old battery and dispose of it according to directives valid in your country.</li> </ul> |

Cables, accessories, additional components

|    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 3. |  <p>DG000376v01_nn.fh11</p>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insert new battery into battery compartment.</li> <li>• Connect connector of battery to mating connector in battery compartment.</li> <li>• Place cable in battery compartment in such a way that cover is flush with battery box when screwed on in the next step.</li> </ul> |
| 4. |  <p>DG000379v01_nn.fh11</p>  <p>DG000380v01_nn.fh11</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Screw on cover in correct orientation (tightening torque: 0.8 Nm).</li> <li>• Check whether cover fits correctly. Cable in battery compartment should not get stuck between cover and battery box. Cover has to be flush with battery box at all points.</li> </ul>            |

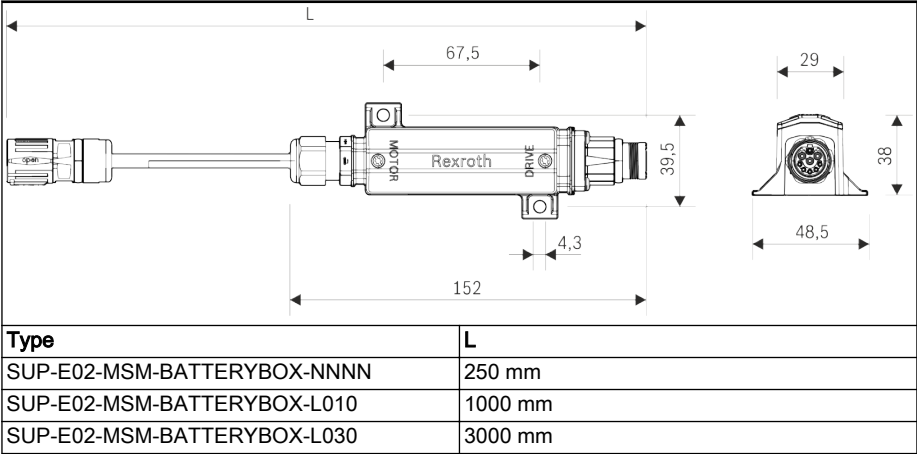
Tab. 8-7: Replacing the battery

Cables, accessories, additional components

8.2.5 SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX battery box

**Use** The "SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX" battery box is a set of accessories used to operate MSM motors with absolute value encoder (M5) and to back-up the encoder data in case voltage is switched off.

Dimensions



Tab. 8-8: Dimensions

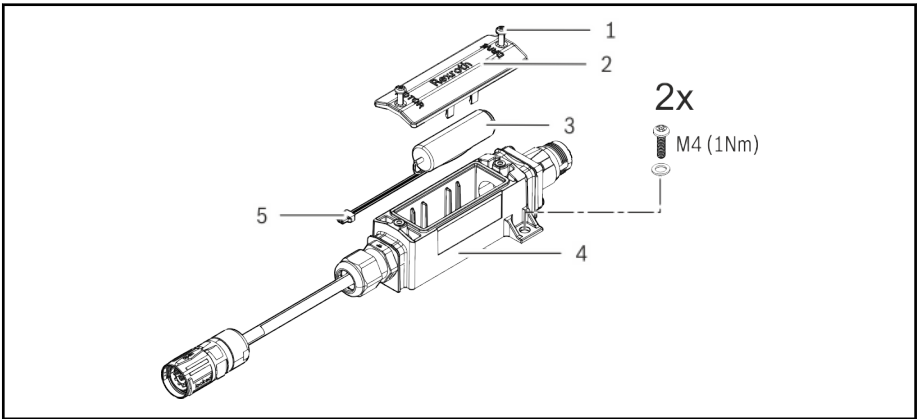
Scope of supply **Battery box incl. battery.**

The battery box is supplied in operational condition.

Battery:

- Type: PRM1-03V6-2600C-D2-LITH-ZNR-50
- 3.6 V; 2600 mAh; lithium
- Lifetime: up to 10 years, depending on load and ambient temperature
- Replacement battery: R911369925 (SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERY)

Parts:



- 1 Housing screw (M<sub>A</sub> 0.7 Nm)
- 2 Housing cover
- 3 Battery
- 4 Housing
- 5 Battery connector

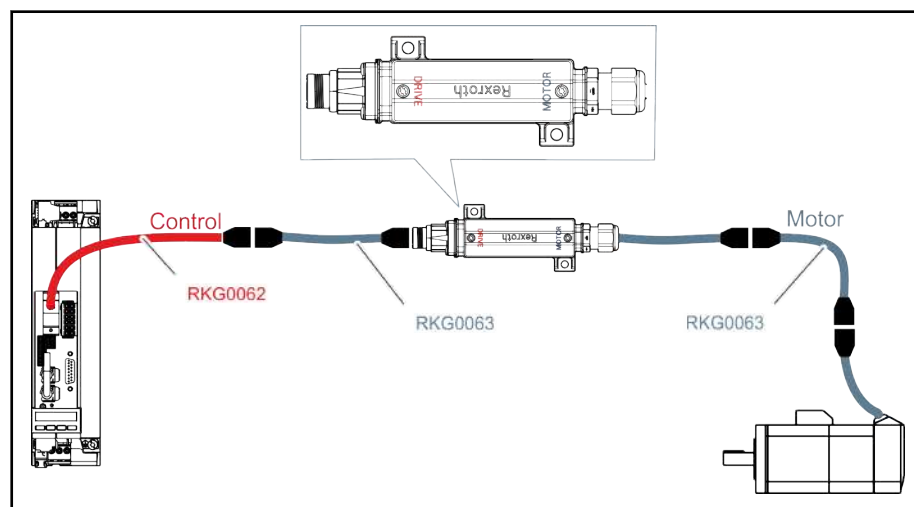
Fig. 8-21: Battery box parts

**Mounting** To fasten the battery box, use mounting screws 2 × M4 with washer and screw lock. Mounting screws are not contained in the scope of supply and have to be adjusted to the assembly situation.

Cables, accessories, additional components

Tightening torque of mounting screws: 1 Nm.

Cabling



RKG0062

Encoder cables

RKG0063

Extension cable (optional)

Fig. 8-22:

Battery box cabling

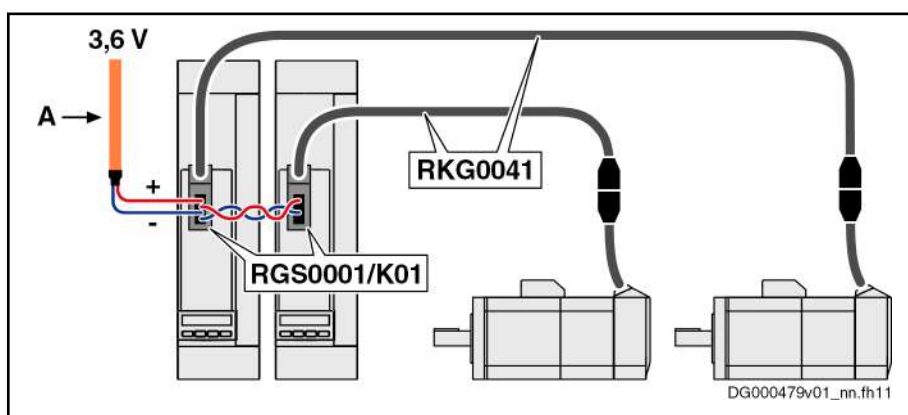
Cables, accessories, additional components

## 8.2.6 Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0 (RKG0041)

### Use

The **RKG0041** encoder cable (mat. no.: R911335747) is used to operate MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0. The encoder cable is connected to the encoder evaluation of the drive controller via a D-Sub connector with integrated 4-pin spring terminal (**RGS0001/K01**).

A battery or a UPS is connected to the spring terminal so that the encoder data are buffered and the position of the absolute value encoder is retained in case voltage is switched off. For drive controllers arranged side by side, the voltage can be looped through via the spring terminal to the neighboring drive controllers.



3.6 V Direct voltage source (battery or UPS)  
 A Shielded lines; e.g. (2x0.5)C  
**RKG0041** Encoder cables  
**RGS0001/K01** D-Sub connector with integrated 4-pin spring terminal  
 Fig. 8-23: *RKG0041 with D-Sub Connector RGS0001/K01*



### Spring terminal

*Tab. 8-10: Spring terminal*

Cables, accessories, additional components

## Project planning

**UPS** DC 3.6 V  $\pm 10\%$ ; 1 mA**Battery** 3.6 V; lithium

Lithium batteries are long-life batteries and can be stored for a long time. The required capacity depends on the desired battery lifetime and the number of connected motors. The battery is not included in the scope of supply and has to be ordered separately.

- Recommended battery type:  
maxell ER6C; 3.6 V / 1.8 Ah  
(The accessory SUP-E03-DKC\*CS-BATTERY (mat. no.: R911295648) contains this battery.)
- Alternative battery types:
  - TADIRAN SL760, 3.6 V / 2.1 Ah
  - JAUCH ER17505, 3.6 V / 3.6 Ah
  - JAUCH ER34615 3.6 V / 19 Ah



To be observed for transport:

The alternative battery types have a relatively high content of lithium and are Class 9 hazardous material.

**Selecting the battery capacity** 1.8 Ah per drive

The base load resistance in the D-Sub connector has been adjusted to this battery capacity. The lifetime of the battery depends on the On and Off times of the drive; with a battery capacity of 1.8 Ah it is approx. 2 to 10 years.

Battery current per drive (encoder current + base load current):

- Drive Off: approx. 70  $\mu$ A
- Drive On: approx. 10  $\mu$ A

**Battery base load and battery capacity**

The D-Sub connector contains a base load resistance of 499 k $\Omega$ . The base load resistance causes a standby current of 7  $\mu$ A which has to flow with 3.6 V / 1.8 Ah for a lithium battery. This prevents the battery from aging prematurely and gives it a relatively long service life.

If you use a bigger battery (> 1.8 Ah) at one D-Sub connector only, connect an external resistor at the 4-pin spring terminal so that a higher standby current flows.

How to calculate the external resistance ( $R_{ext}$ ):

$$R_{ext} = 3.6 \text{ V} / I_{ext}$$

$$I_{ext} = [\text{battery capacity} / 1.8 \text{ Ah}] \times 7 \text{ } \mu\text{A} - (7 \text{ } \mu\text{A} \times \text{number\_connectors})$$

### Examples

- 1 D-Sub connector + battery 1.8 Ah  $\Rightarrow$   
No additional base load resistance required
- 1 D-Sub connector + battery 3.6 Ah  $\Rightarrow$   
Additional base load resistance of 499 k $\Omega$  required



## Cables, accessories, additional components

- 2 D-Sub connectors + battery 3.6 Ah  $\Rightarrow$   
No additional base load resistance required
- 5 D-Sub connectors + battery 36 Ah  $\Rightarrow$   
Additional base load resistance of 34 k $\Omega$  required

### Calculation

- $I_{\text{ext}} = [36 \text{ Ah} / 1.8 \text{ Ah}] \times 7 \text{ } \mu\text{A} - (7 \text{ } \mu\text{A} \times 5) = 105 \text{ } \mu\text{A}$
- $R_{\text{ext}} = 3.6 \text{ V} / 105 \text{ } \mu\text{A} = 3.6 \text{ V} / 0.000105 \text{ A} = 34 \text{ k}\Omega$



The examples contain guide values for the base load resistance. The required base load resistance cannot be calculated by means of the capacity for every lithium battery.

A lithium battery with a 5-fold higher capacity might possibly require not more than a 3-fold higher base load current. If you use other batteries than ER6C (1800 mAh), ask the battery manufacturer for the required base load current.

## Installation

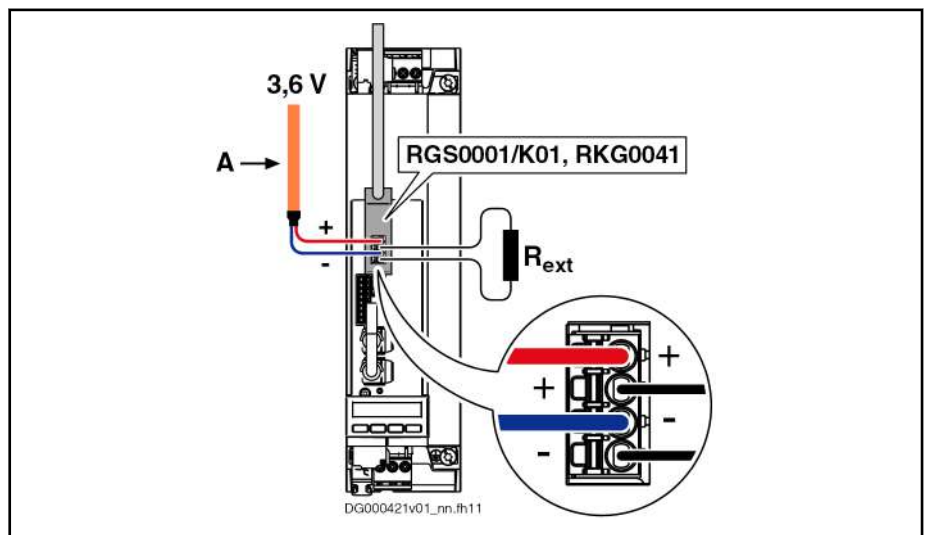
### Connecting the battery / UPS

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury by exploding batteries!

Pay attention to

- the correct polarity when connecting the battery
- **NOTICE!** Incorrect polarity might damage the encoder system.
- the correct dimensioning of the external resistor
- the safety instructions of the battery manufacturer



3.6 V

A

$R_{\text{ext}}$

Direct voltage source (battery or UPS)

Shielded lines, e.g. (2x0,5)C; connect cable shield to **shield connection** at top of device

External resistor: If you use a bigger battery ( $> 1.8 \text{ Ah}$ ) at one **RGS0001/K01** D-Sub connector only, connect an additional external resistor (value of  $R_{\text{ext}}$ : see "Battery base load and battery capacity").

Fig. 8-24: Connecting the battery / UPS

## Cables, accessories, additional components

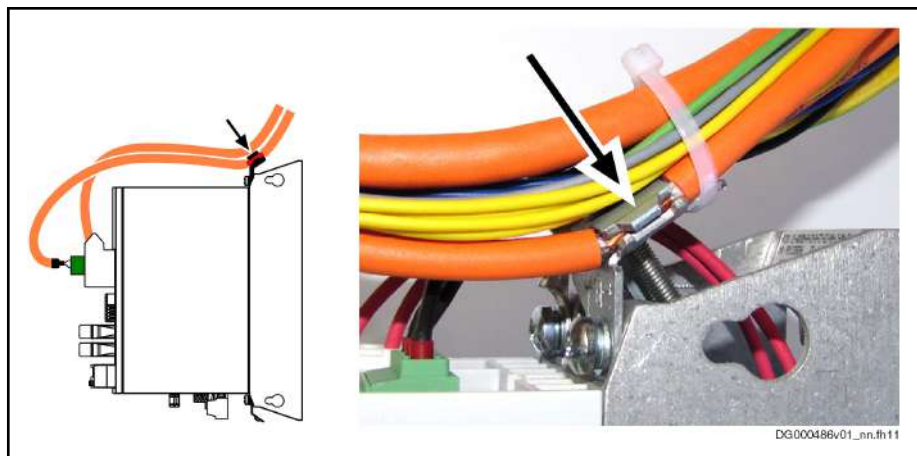


Fig. 8-25: Shield Connection of Shielded Lines at the Top of the Device

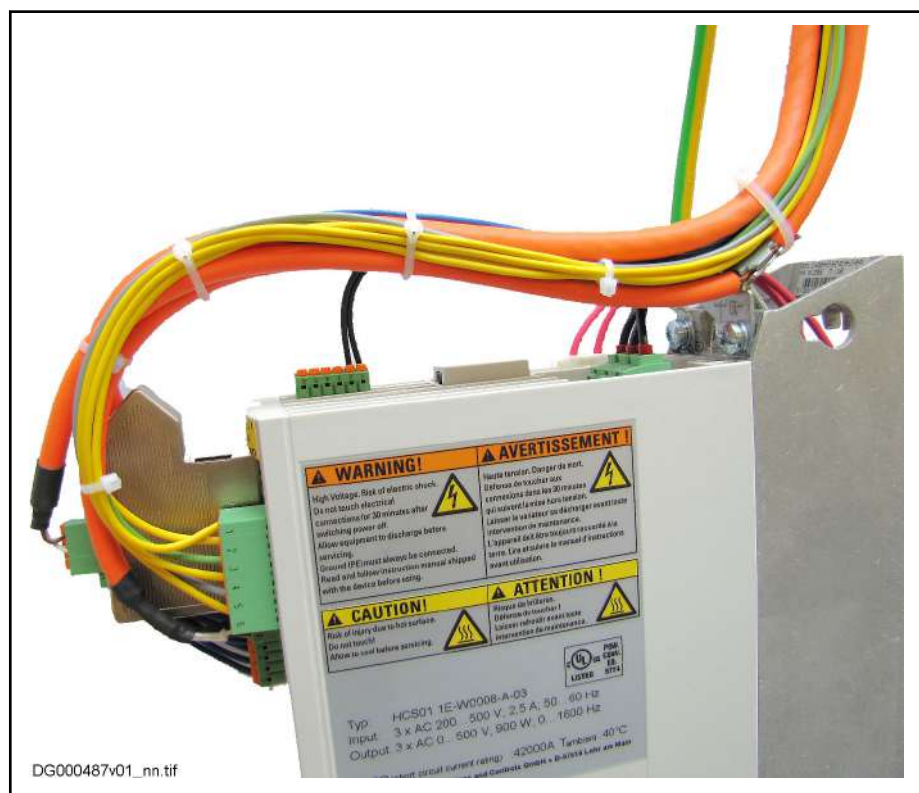
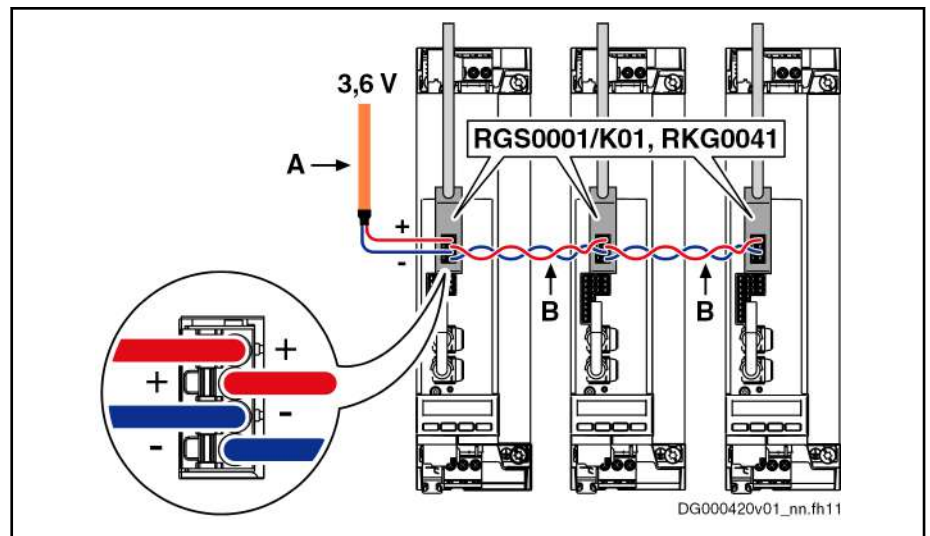


Fig. 8-26: Example of a complete wiring

### Looping through the voltage



3.6 V

Direct voltage source (battery or UPS)

A

Shielded lines, e.g. (2x0,5)C; connect cable shield to **shield connection** at top of device

B

Twisted single wires

Fig. 8-27:

Looping through the voltage


### Replacement of devices

When replacing an HCS01, observe the following aspect:

Leave the 4-pin spring terminal with the connected battery/UPS at the D-Sub connector so that voltage is still applied and the encoder position is retained.

Cables, accessories, additional components


### 8.2.7 D-Sub Connector for Encoder Cable and Battery Connection (RGS0001/K01)

 Using our **ready-made encoder cable RKG0041** (part no. R911335747) saves you the time-consuming and error-prone work of assembling your encoder cable.

The **RKG0041** encoder cable comes with an **RGS0001/K01** D-Sub connector and a correctly wired motor-side encoder connection.

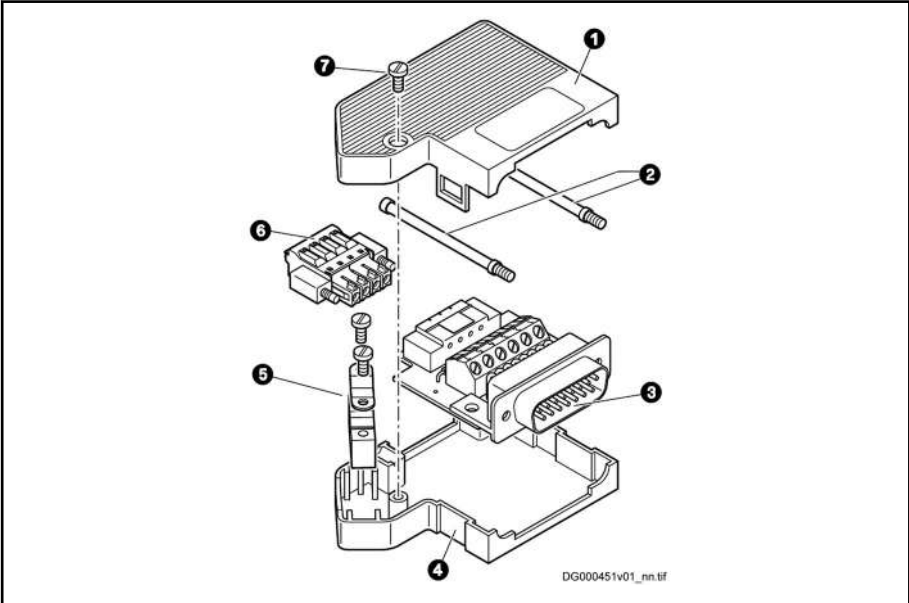
**Use** The accessory **RGS0001/K01** (part no. R911335738) is used to operate MSM motors with absolute value encoders. **RGS0001/K01** is a D-Sub connector with an integrated 4-pin spring terminal and an internal terminal connector for encoder cables.

A battery or a UPS is connected to the spring terminal so that the encoder data are buffered and the position of the absolute value encoder is retained in case voltage is switched off.



DG000410v01\_nn.tif

**RGS0001/K01**



DG000451v01\_nn.tif

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Top shell of housing   |
| 2 | Mounting screws  |
| 3 | Circuit board with terminal connector for the encoder cable, female connector (6), base load resistance (to avoid premature aging of a connected 3.6 V lithium battery) and D-Sub connector (15-pin) |
| 4 | Bottom shell of housing  |
| 5 | Strain relief and shield connection of encoder cable   |
| 6 | 4-pin spring terminal for connecting a 3.6 V lithium battery or the corresponding UPS; via the spring terminal, the voltage can be looped through to other drive controllers                         |
| 7 | Housing screw  |

Fig. 8-28: Parts

Tab. 8-11: RGS0001/K01

## Cables, accessories, additional components



When you connect the **RGS0001/K01** connector to an encoder cable, you must assemble the encoder cable accordingly on the motor side:

In accordance with the interconnection diagram, connect the battery wires for motor-side encoder connection in the connector (INS0753/C01).

### Scope of Supply

- **RGS0001/K01**
- Product insert with information on assembly

### Dimensions

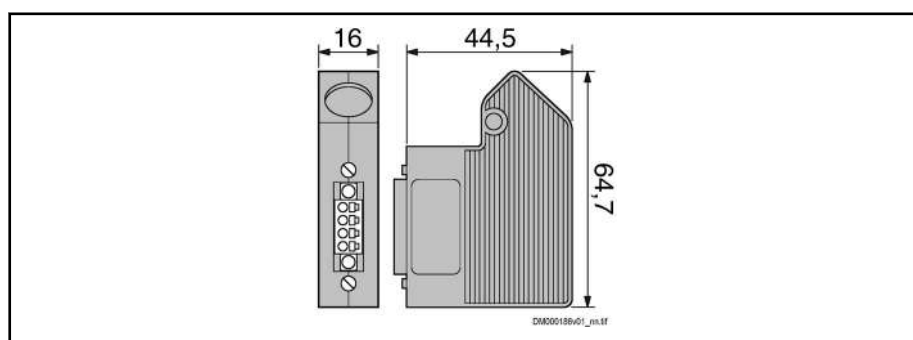


Fig. 8-29: Dimensions

### Interconnection Diagram

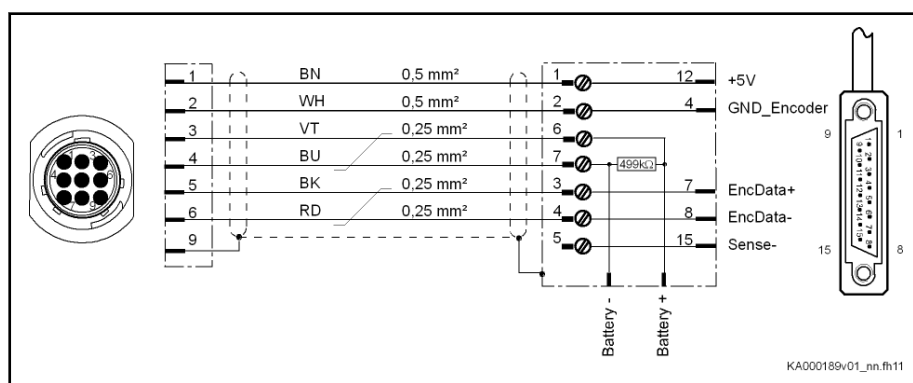
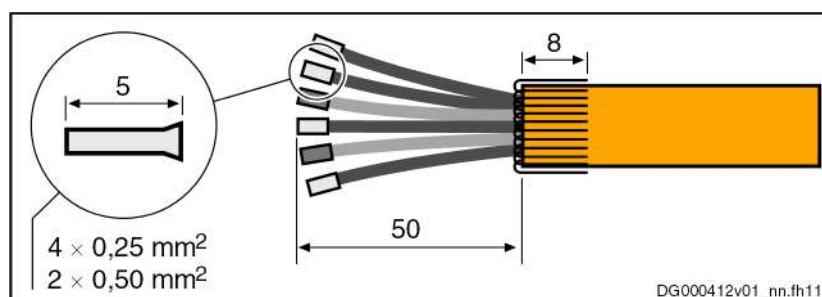


Fig. 8-30: Interconnection Diagram

### Assembly in Conjunction with Cable INK0448

1. Assemble cable:



Required ferrules:

- 4 × 0.25 mm²
- 2 × 0.50 mm²

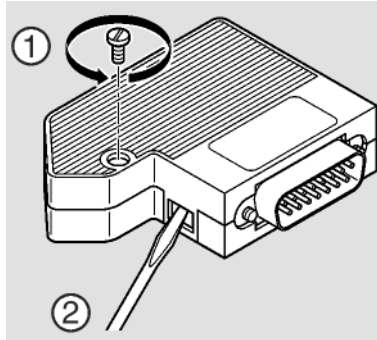
## Cables, accessories, additional components

- Length: 5 mm
- Without plastic collar

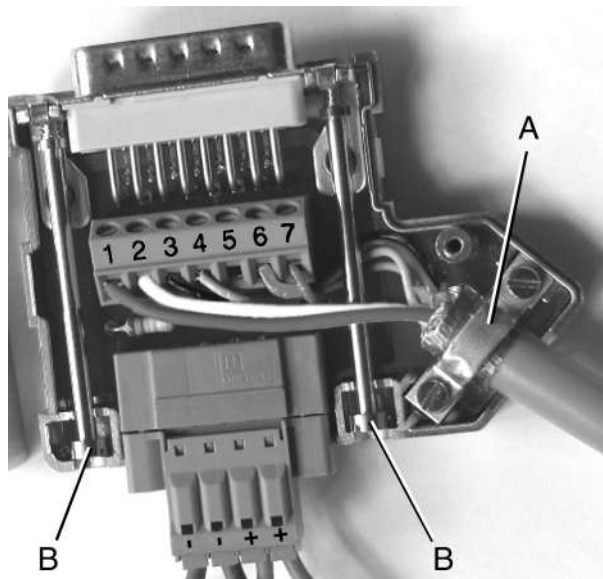
Length of inner wires incl. ferrules starting at cable jacket: 50 mm

Fold back shield braid over outer cable jacket, comb it out and cut it to 8 mm.

## 2. Open housing:

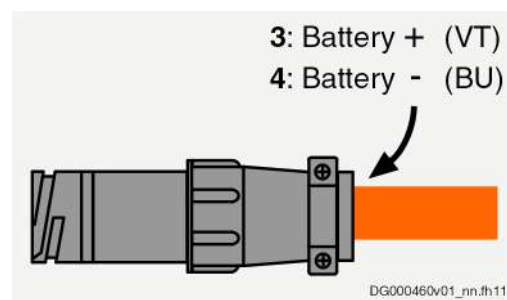


- Unscrew housing screw ①.
  - Unlock top shell of housing with screwdriver and open housing ②.
3. Connect cable according to interconnection diagram.
  4. Insert circuit board into housing in accordance with desired outgoing direction of encoder cable.



- Put shield braid under clip (A) of strain relief and screw on clip (A).
  - Insert mounting screws (B) and tuck wires away.
5. Close housing:  
Put top shell of housing onto bottom shell of housing, engage it in bottom shell and screw housing screw down.
  6. Unless already done:
    - By means of appropriate crimping tool, add the two contacts for battery connection.

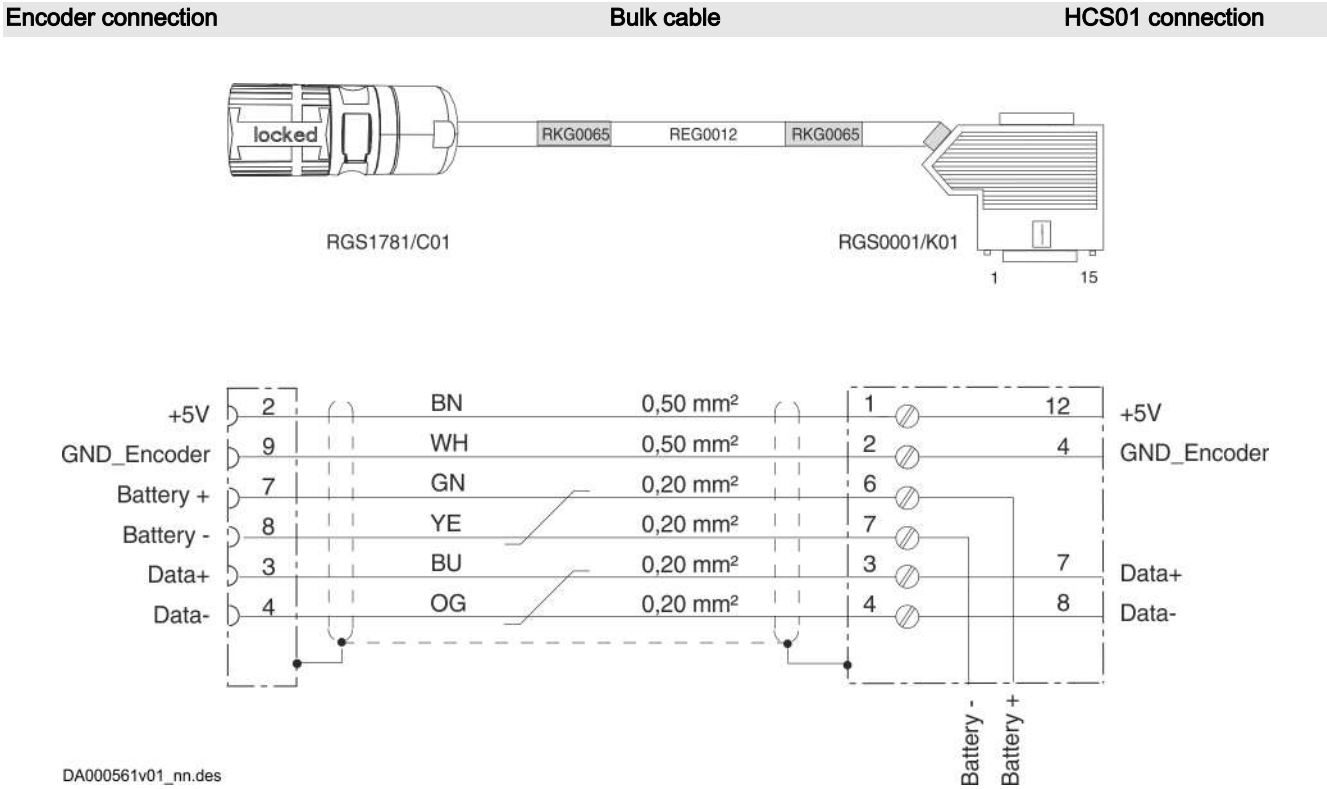
Cables, accessories, additional components



Cables, accessories, additional components

### 8.2.8 Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5 (RKG0065)

The **RKG0065** encoder cable (mat. no.: R911347431) is used to operate MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5. The encoder cable is connected to the encoder evaluation of the drive controller via a D-Sub connector with integrated 4-pin spring terminal (**RGS0001/K01**).



Tab. 8-12: RKG0065



8.2.9 RKB0011, Multi-Ethernet Cable

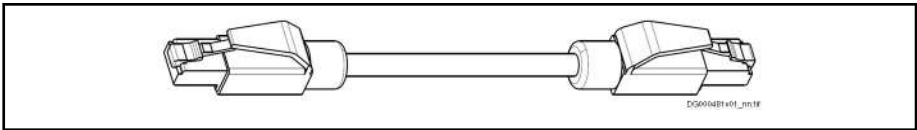


Fig. 8-31: RKB0011

**Use** The cable connects the drive system to the higher-level control.

**Length That Can Be Ordered, Order Code**

| Length                            | Order code  | Parts number |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------|
| Select as desired<br>(max. 100 m) | RKB0011/xxx,x (xxx,x = length in meters)<br>Example: 13.5 m ⇒ RKB0011/013,5 | R911316888   |
| 5 m                               | RKB0011/005,0   | R911321548   |

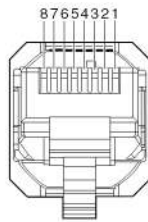
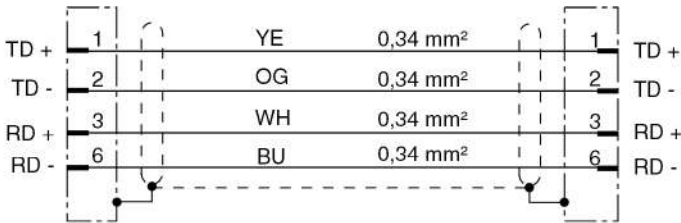
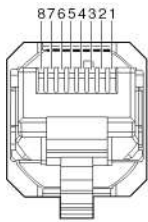
Tab. 8-13: RKB0033

**RKB0011**

**Plug-in connector bus**  
RBS0016/S01 (RJ-45,  
4-pin)

**Bulk cable**  
REB0400

**Plug-in connector bus**  
RBS0016/S01 (RJ-45,  
4-pin)



KA000170v02\_nn.fh11

Tab. 8-14: Interconnection Diagram RKB0011

Cables, accessories, additional components

8.2.10 RKB0013, Multi-Ethernet Cable

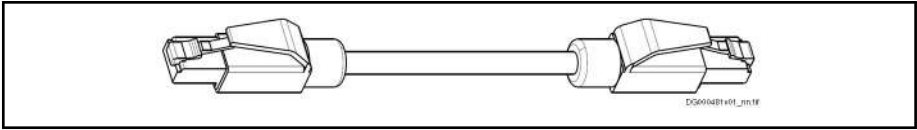


Fig. 8-32: RKB0013

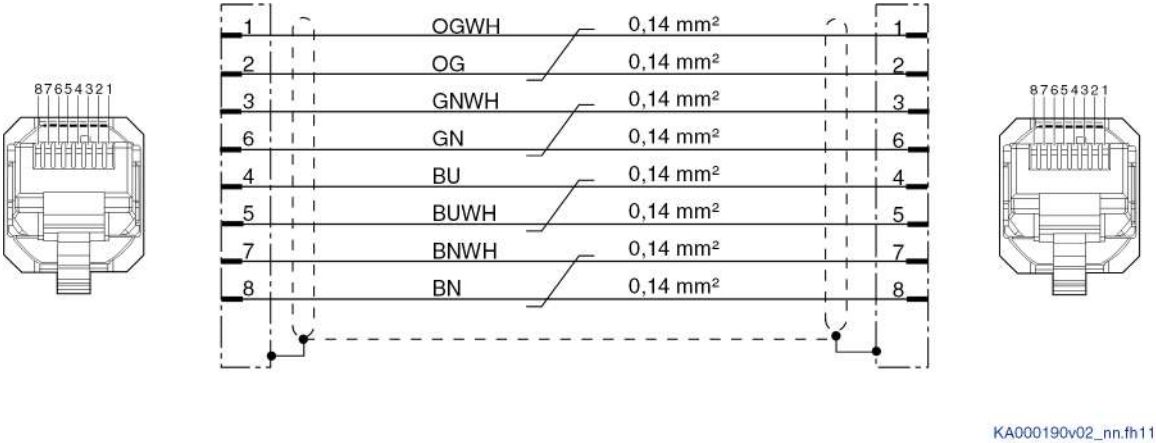
**Use** Short cable for connecting a drive connection box KCU to a neighboring device in the control cabinet.  
Minimum bending radius: 30.75 mm

Length That Can Be Ordered, Order Code

| Length | Order code    | Parts number |
|--------|---------------|--------------|
| 0.55 m | RKB0013/00,55 | R911317801   |

Tab. 8-15: RKB0013

| RKB0013               | Bulk cable                                    | Plug-in connector bus |
|-----------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Plug-in connector bus |   |                       |
| RJ-45, 8-pin          | sercos III cable, 100-Base-T, CAT5E, shielded | RJ-45, 8-pin          |



KA000190v02\_nn.th11

**Use instruction:** only fixed lengths

Tab. 8-16: Interconnection Diagram RKB0013


## 8.2.11 Hall Sensor Adapter Box (SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN)

**Use** The Hall sensor adapter box "SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN" (material number: R911335257) is used to operate linear MCL motors. The Hall sensor adapter box processes signals of the following systems:

- Digital Hall sensor
- Length measuring system

The Hall sensor adapter box transmits the signals for encoder evaluation to the drive controller.

The housing is made of sheet steel and has the degree of protection IP20.

 For detailed information on linear MCL motors, see the documentation "Rexroth IndraDyn L, Ironless Linear Motors MCL" (R911330592).

### Dimensions

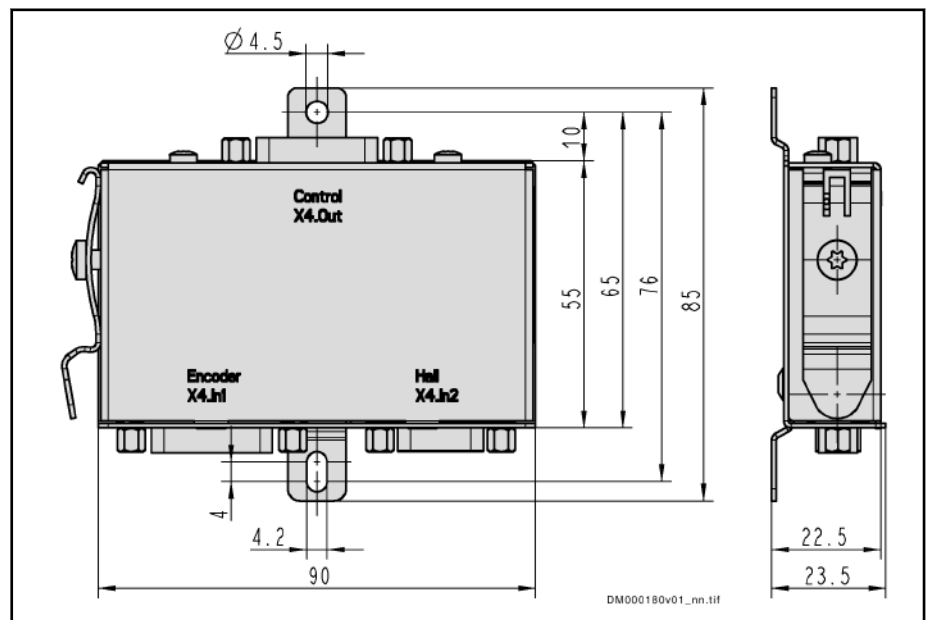


Fig. 8-33: Dimensions

**Mounting** Options for mounting:

- Top-hat rail (TH 35-7.5 according to EN 60715)
- With 2 screws (M4) to the mounting surface; select the appropriate screw type and length for the mounting surface

The mounting position can be selected as desired.

Cables, accessories, additional components

Connection Points

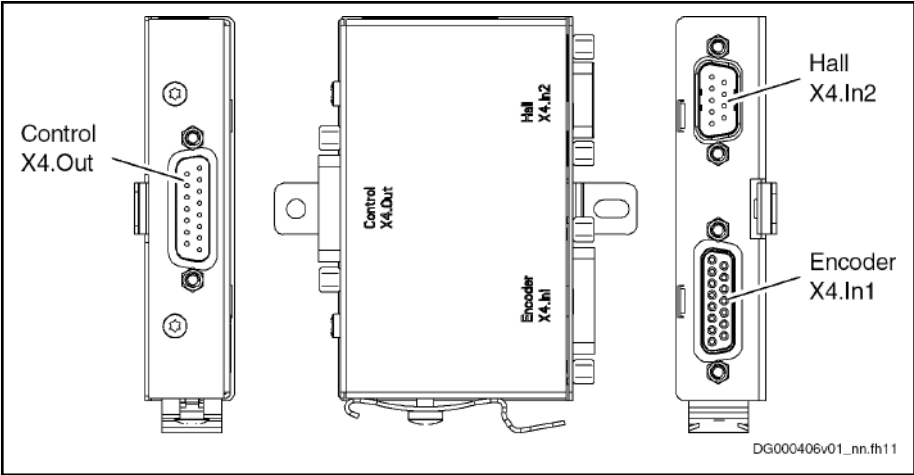
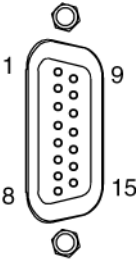


Fig. 8-34: Connection Points

Encoder X4.In1

| View   | Identification    | Function           |      |
|--|-------------------|--------------------|------|
|  <p>DA000053v01_nn.FH9</p> | Encoder<br>X4.In1 | Encoder connection |      |
|  |                   |                    |      |
| D-Sub, 15-pin, female  | Unit              | Min.               | Max. |
| Connection cable   | mm <sup>2</sup>   | 0,25               | 0,5  |
| Stranded wire  |                   |                    |      |

Tab. 8-17: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

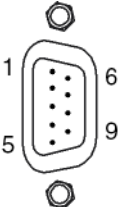
| Connection | Signal      | Function                                  |
|------------|-------------|---|
| 1          | GND_shld    | Connection signal shields (inner shields) |
| 2          | A+          | Track A positive                          |
| 3          | A-          | Track A negative                          |
| 4          | GND_Encoder | Reference potential for power supplies    |
| 5          | B+          | Track B positive                          |
| 6          | B-          | Track B negative                          |
| 7          | n. c.       |   |
| 8          | n. c.       |   |
| 9          | R+          | Reference track positive                  |
| 10         | R-          | Reference track negative                  |
| 11         | +12V        | Encoder supply 12 V                       |

Cables, accessories, additional components

| Connection        | Signal | Function                                   |
|-------------------|--------|--|
| 12                | +5V    | Encoder supply 5V                          |
| 13                | n. c.  |  |
| 14                | n. c.  |  |
| 15                | Sense  | Return of reference potential (Sense line) |
| Connector housing |        | Overall shield                             |

Tab. 8-18: Pin Assignment

Hall X4.In2

| View   | Identification  | Function               |      |
|--|-----------------|------------------------|------|
| <br>DA000194v01_nn.FH11 | Hall<br>X4.In2  | Hall sensor connection |      |
|  |                 |                        |      |
| D-Sub 9-pin, male  | Unit            | Min.                   | Max. |
| Connection cable   | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25                   | 0,5  |
| Stranded wire  |                 |                        |      |

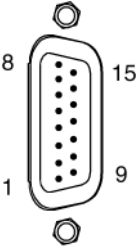
Tab. 8-19: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

| Connection        | Signal | Function                             |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| 1                 | +12 V  | Power supply                         |
| 2                 | S1     | Hall sensor signal 1                 |
| 3                 | GND    | Reference potential for power supply |
| 4                 | S2     | Hall sensor signal 2                 |
| 5                 | GND    | Reference potential for power supply |
| 6                 | GND    | Reference potential for power supply |
| 7                 | GND    | Reference potential for power supply |
| 8                 | S3     | Hall sensor signal 3                 |
| 9                 | GND    | Reference potential for power supply |
| Connector housing |        | Overall shield                       |

Tab. 8-20: Pin Assignment

Cables, accessories, additional components

**Control X4.Out**

| View  | Identification  | Function  |             |
|---|-----------------|---|-------------|
| <br>DA000056v01_nn.FH9 | Control X4.Out  | Connection for encoder evaluation of drive controller |             |
| <b>D-Sub 15-pin, male</b>   | <b>Unit</b>     | <b>Min.</b>   | <b>Max.</b> |
| <b>Connection cable</b><br>Stranded wire  | mm <sup>2</sup> | 0,25  | 0,5         |

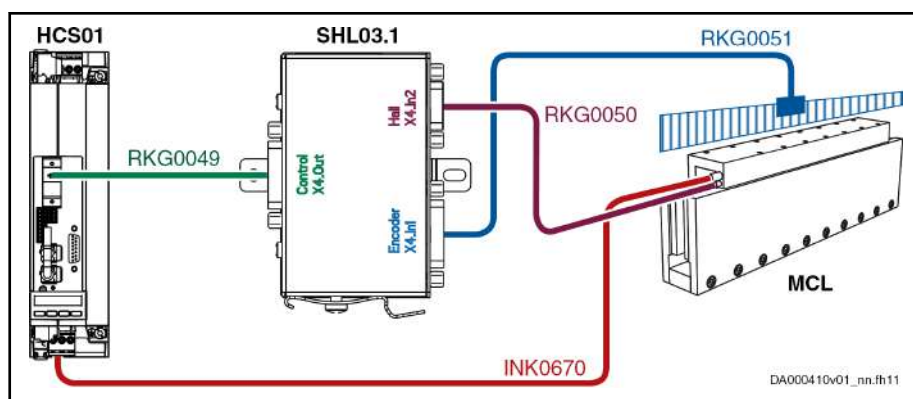
Tab. 8-21: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

| Connection        | Signal      | Function                                      |
|-------------------|-------------|---|
| 1                 | GND_shld    | Connection signal shields (inner shields)     |
| 2                 | A+          | Track A analog positive                       |
| 3                 | A-          | Track A analog negative                       |
| 4                 | GND_Encoder | Reference potential for power supplies        |
| 5                 | B+          | Track B analog positive                       |
| 6                 | B-          | Track B analog negative                       |
| 7                 | Data_Hall+  | Data transmission Hall sensor signal positive |
| 8                 | Data_Hall-  | Data transmission Hall sensor signal negative |
| 9                 | R+          | Reference track positive                      |
| 10                | R-          | Reference track negative                      |
| 11                | +12V        | Encoder supply 12 V                           |
| 12                | +5V         | Encoder supply 5V                             |
| 13                | CLK_Hall+   | Clock Hall sensor signal positive             |
| 14                | CLK_Hall-   | Clock Hall sensor signal negative             |
| 15                | Sense-      | Return of reference potential (Sense line)    |
| Connector housing |             | Overall shield                                |

Tab. 8-22: Pin Assignment

# Cables, accessories, additional components

## Cables



- INK0670** Motor power cable; length: max. 75 m
- RKG0049** Hall sensor adapter box (Control X4.Out) ↔ Encoder evaluation at drive controller (X4, X8); length: max. 75 m
- RKG0050** Digital Hall sensor ↔ Hall sensor adapter box (Hall X4.In2); length: max. 30 m
- RKG0051** Length measuring system ↔ Hall sensor adapter box (Encoder X4.In1); length: max. 30 m

Fig. 8-35: Cables

## Interconnection Diagram RKG0049

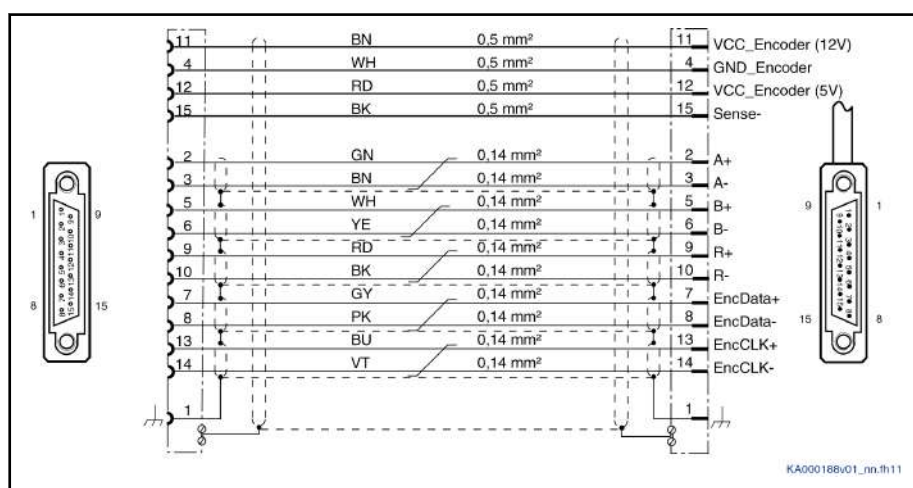


Fig. 8-36: RKG0049

## Interconnection Diagram RKG0050

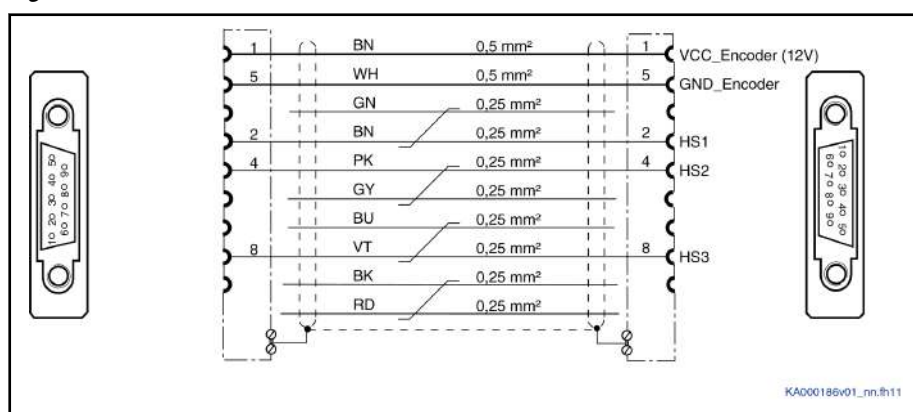


Fig. 8-37: RKG0050

## Cables, accessories, additional components

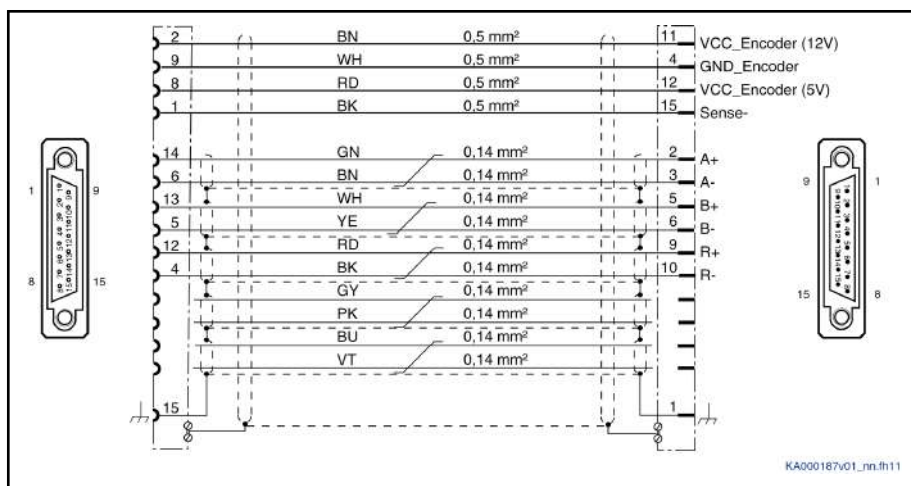
Interconnection Diagram  
RKG0051

Fig. 8-38: RKG0051



Cables, accessories, additional components

## 8.2.12 Snap-on ferrite (HAS05.1-015)

**Use** The accessory HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN (snap-on ferrite) ensures that Class C3 of the EMC Directive EN 61800-3 is complied with for braking resistors installed outside of the control cabinet.

The snap-on ferrite is designed for the following components:

- HCS01.1E-W0018 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0028 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0054 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N28R0-E-007

### Product insert


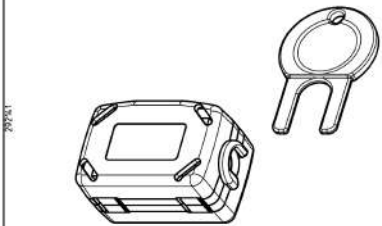
|  |                                      |                                  |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
|--|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|------|-----------|----|---|--|--|------|-----------|----|---|--------------------------------------|------------|-------|----------|-----------|--|--|------|----------|----------------------------------|--|--|--------------|------------|-----------|------------------|--|--------|--------|----------|----|------------|
| <p>Made in Germany</p> <p>109-1356-4803-AA</p> <p style="font-size: 1.2em; font-weight: bold;">HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN</p>  <p>R911340572</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 80%;">FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">R911340403</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Stck</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Benennung</td> <td style="text-align: center;">MN</td> </tr> </table> |                                      |                                  | 1                | FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7 | R911340403 | Stck | Benennung | MN | <p><b>BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">Stck</td> <td style="width: 80%;">Benennung</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">MN</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td>FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7</td> <td style="text-align: center;">R911340403</td> </tr> </table>  <p style="text-align: right;">1:1</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20%;">Datum</td> <td style="width: 20%;">20130523</td> <td style="width: 20%;">Benennung</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Juliwieg</td> <td colspan="3">BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Material-Nr.</td> <td>R911340571</td> <td>Zeich-Nr.</td> <td>109-1356-4209-AB</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Detail</td> <td>292724</td> <td>Ersdurch</td> <td>..</td> <td>ABM-Nr. ..</td> </tr> </table> |  |  | Stck | Benennung | MN | 1 | FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7 | R911340403 | Datum | 20130523 | Benennung |  |  | Name | Juliwieg | BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN |  |  | Material-Nr. | R911340571 | Zeich-Nr. | 109-1356-4209-AB |  | Detail | 292724 | Ersdurch | .. | ABM-Nr. .. |
| 1  | FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7 | R911340403                       |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Stck   | Benennung                            | MN                               |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Stck   | Benennung                            | MN                               |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| 1  | FERRITKERN KLAPPBAR 40,5X24,5X21,0X7 | R911340403                       |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Datum  | 20130523                             | Benennung                        |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Name   | Juliwieg                             | BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN |                  |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Material-Nr.   | R911340571                           | Zeich-Nr.                        | 109-1356-4209-AB |                                      |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |
| Detail   | 292724                               | Ersdurch                         | ..               | ABM-Nr. ..                           |            |      |           |    |   |  |  |      |           |    |   |                                      |            |       |          |           |  |  |      |          |                                  |  |  |              |            |           |                  |  |        |        |          |    |            |

Fig. 8-39: Product insert

## Cables, accessories, additional components

- Mounting**
- Before mounting the snap-on ferrite, store it for at least 1 hour at a temperature of 15 ... 25 °C.
  - When mounting the snap-on ferrite, avoid putting it under mechanical stress. The housing or the ferrite core might brake.
  - Do not mount the snap-on ferrite in the immediate vicinity of strong heat sources. The maximum allowed ambient temperature of the snap-on ferrite is 105 °C.
  - Fix the snap-on ferrite within the control cabinet to the cable jacket of the connection line of the braking resistor (see picture). The snap-on ferrite is designed for cable diameters of 6.5 ... 7 mm.

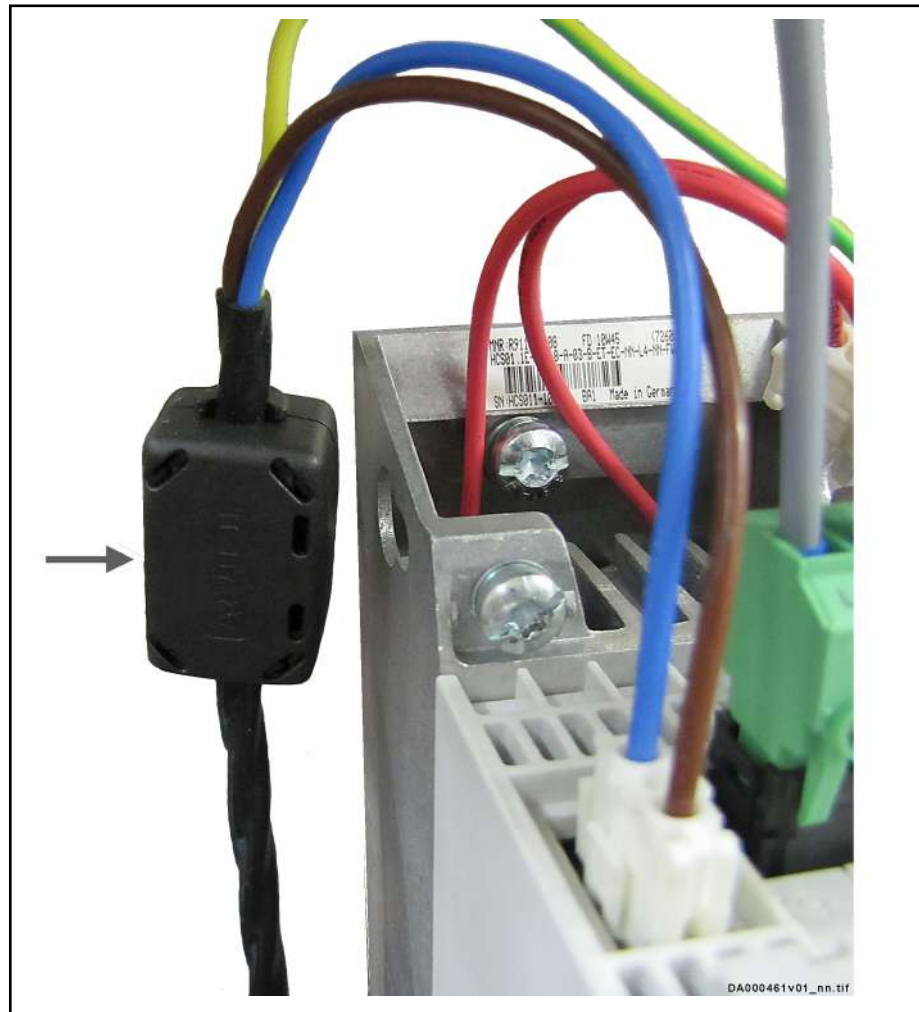


Fig. 8-40: Snap-on ferrite at connection line of external braking resistor

Cables, accessories, additional components

To open the snap-on ferrite, use the proper tool:



*Fig. 8-41: Opening the snap-on ferrite*

## Cables, accessories, additional components

### 8.3 Additional components

### 8.3.1 Transformers

## General information

Transformers are only needed when the mains voltage is outside of the allowed nominal voltage of the drive controller.

**Grounded mains** For grounded mains, the mains voltage is adjusted to the nominal voltage of the device by means of **autotransformers** which have been sized for **a specific output voltage range**.

**Ungrounded mains** For voltage adjustment of ungrounded mains, always connect **isolating transformers** to prevent overvoltages between outer conductor and ground.

## Autotransformers for drive controllers

## Types

[illegible]

*Tab. 8-23: DST, type code*

**Selected transformers**  
**Degree of protection IP00**

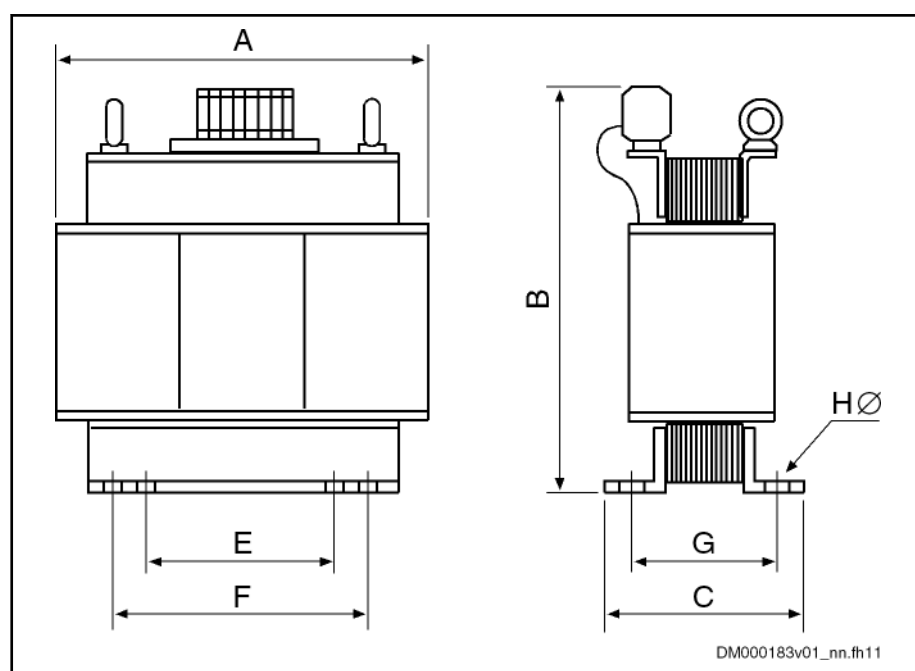


Fig. 8-42: Dimensional drawing

| kVA / type of construction / nominal input voltage - nominal output voltage<br>(Material number) | A   | B   | C   | E   | F   | G   | HØ    | Terminal connector<br>[mm <sup>2</sup> ] | Weight<br>[kg] |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|--|----------------|
| 2,00 / S / 380,415,440 - 220<br>(R911226187)   | 205 | 210 | 120 | 95  | 145 | 85  | 7×15  | 4  | 12             |
| 2,50 / S / 380,415,440 - 220<br>(R911219217)   | 205 | 210 | 130 | 95  | 145 | 95  | 7×15  | 6  | 13             |
| 4,00 / S / 380,415 - 220<br>(R911216703)   | 240 | 260 | 150 | 110 | 170 | 120 | 11×15 | 6  | 24             |
| 5,00 / S / 380,415,440 - 220<br>(R911219831)   | 300 | 325 | 140 | 140 | 210 | 110 | 11×15 | 10                                       | 31             |
| 7,50 / S / 380,415,440 - 220<br>(R911219497)   | 300 | 310 | 155 | 140 | 210 | 125 | 11×18 | 10                                       | 36             |

Tab. 8-24: Data

Cables, accessories, additional components

8.3.2      Mains Filters NFD / NFE

Type Code NFE / NFD

NFE02.1 - Mains Filter, Single-Phase

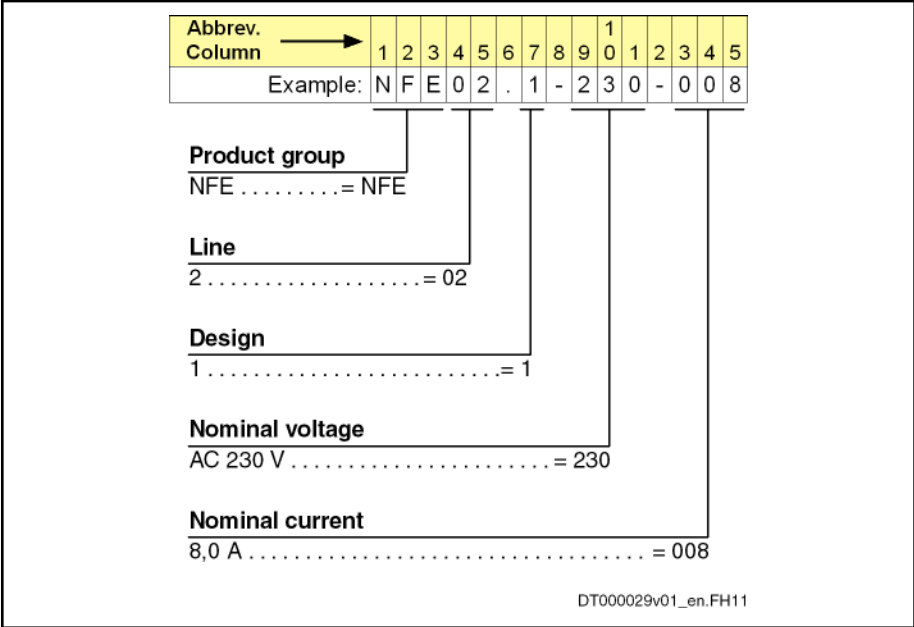


Fig. 8-43:      Type Code NFE02.1

NFD03.1 - Mains Filter, Three-Phase

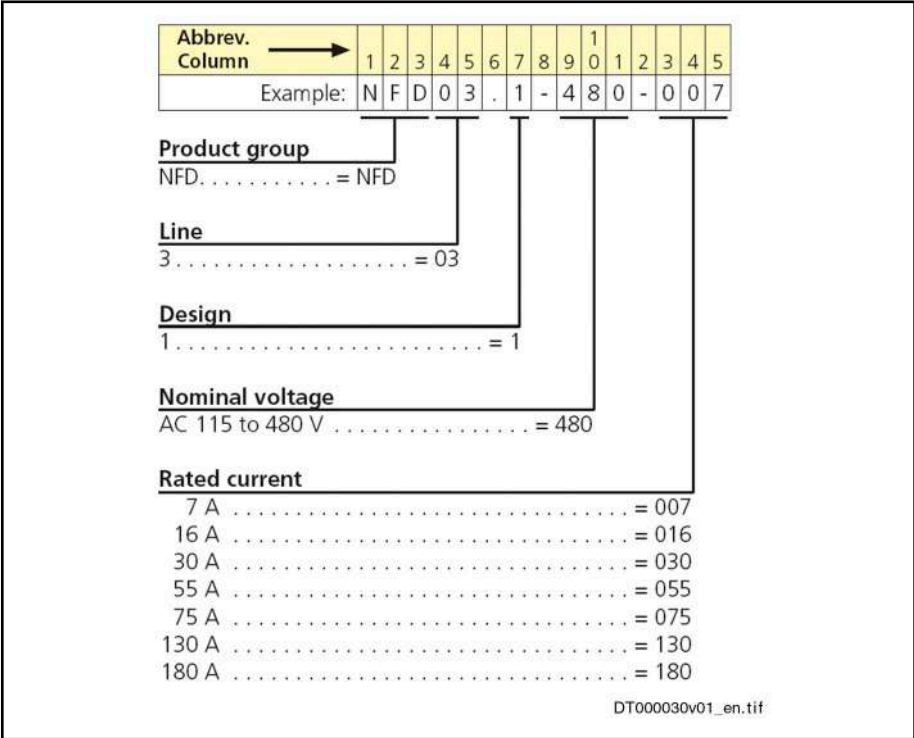
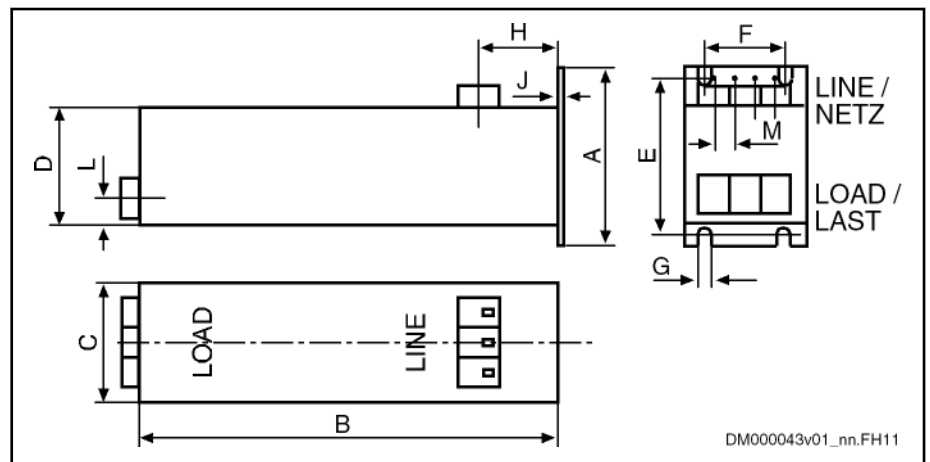


Fig. 8-44:      Type Code NFD03.1

## Mechanical Data NFE / NFD

### NFE02.1



**Type** NFE02.1-230-008 (with 3 terminal connectors)

*Fig. 8-45: Single-Phase Filter NFE02.1 for Drives*

**Allowed Mounting Positions** Every mounting position is allowed.

Cables, accessories, additional components

## NFD03.1

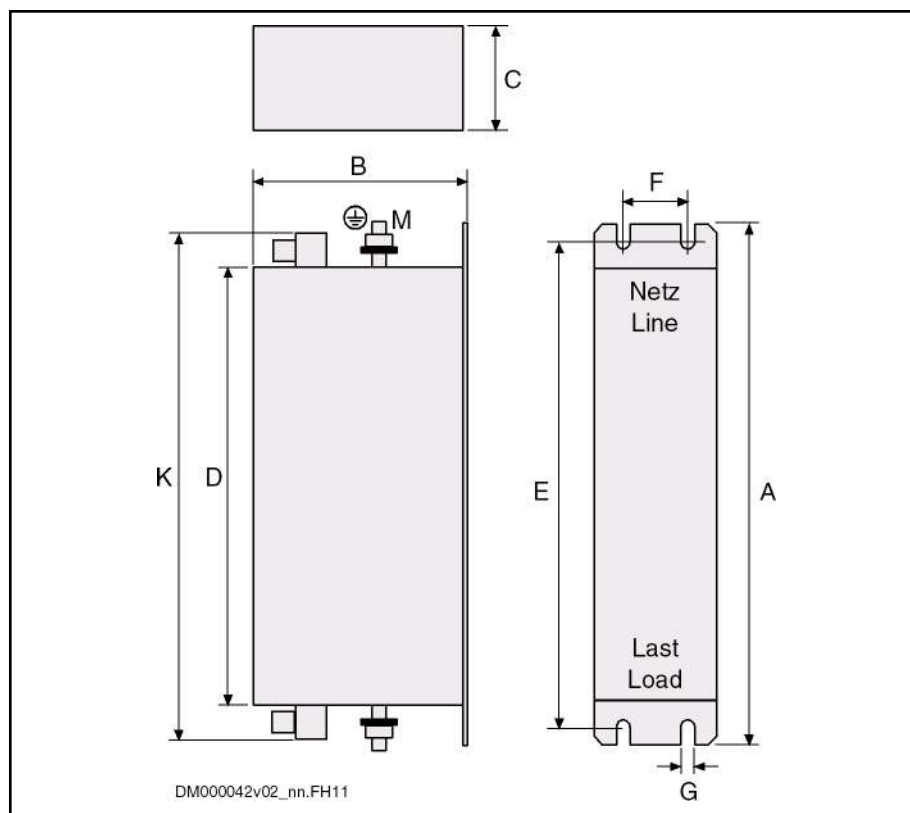


Fig. 8-46: Three-Phase Current Filter NFD03.1 for Drives

Tolerance limits for NFD03.1:

- The dimensions B, C, D, K are maximum values. They can be reduced up to 15 mm.
- The ground studs M can also be arranged horizontally (protruding from the mounting flange), instead of vertically (as illustrated above).

| Mains filter type | A   | B   | C   | D   | E   | F   | G   | H  | J    | K   | L  | M   | M <sub>AE</sub> | M <sub>AKI</sub> |
|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|------|-----|----|-----|-----------------|------------------|
| NFD 03.1-480-007  | 190 | 90  | 50  | 160 | 180 | 20  | 5,4 | -  | -    | 190 | -  | M5  | 2,2             | 0,8              |
| NFD 03.1-480-016  | 250 | 90  | 55  | 220 | 235 | 25  | 5,4 | -  | -    | 250 | -  | M5  | 2,2             | 0,8              |
| NFD 03.1-480-030  | 270 | 100 | 60  | 240 | 255 | 30  | 5,4 | -  | -    | 270 | -  | M5  | 2,2             | 2                |
| NFD 03.1-480-055  | 250 | 105 | 90  | 220 | 235 | 60  | 5,4 | -  | -    | 260 | -  | M6  | 4               | 2,2              |
| NFD 03.1-480-075  | 270 | 145 | 90  | 240 | 255 | 60  | 6,5 | -  | -    | 280 | -  | M6  | 4               | 4,5              |
| NFD 03.1-480-130  | 270 | 160 | 100 | 240 | 255 | 65  | 6,5 | -  | -    | 330 | -  | M10 | 18              | 8                |
| NFD 03.1-480-180  | 380 | 180 | 130 | 350 | 365 | 102 | 6,5 | -  | -    | 455 | -  | M10 | 18              | 20               |
| NFE 02.1-230-008  | 90  | 210 | 60  | 60  | 80  | 40  | 5,3 | 40 | 0,75 | -   | 15 | 10  | 0,8             | 0,8              |

M<sub>AE</sub>

Maximum tightening torque of the ground stud in Nm

M<sub>AKI</sub>

Maximum tightening torque of the terminal in Nm

Tab. 8-25:

Dimensions of the Mains Filters NFD/NFE



Cables, accessories, additional components

### Allowed Mounting Positions

| Mounting position | Note   |
|-------------------|--|
| G1                | Allowed without restrictions   |
| G2                | Allowed without restrictions   |
| G3                | Mains filter may only be loaded with 80% of the maximum allowed continuous current |
| G4                | Allowed without restrictions   |
| G5                | Mains filter may only be loaded with 80% of the maximum allowed continuous current |

Tab. 8-26: Allowed Mounting Positions

### Electrical Data NFE / NFD



#### Using mains filters in mains grounded via outer conductor

When using mains filters NFD03 in **mains grounded via outer conductor**, use an isolating transformer between mains and mains filter.

| Maximum mains connection voltage of mains 50...60 Hz<br>$U_N$ | Nominal mains current<br>$I_{nenn}$ (1) | Number of phases | Mains filter type   | Terminal connectors (3)        |                             |         | Power dissipation approx. | Weight | Type of construction |
|---|---|------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------|---------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| In V  | In A                                    |                  |                     | Flexible<br>[mm <sup>2</sup> ] | Rigid<br>[mm <sup>2</sup> ] | AWG     | W                         | kg     |                      |
| AC 480V +10%  | 7                                       | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-007 | 4 (3)                          | 6 (3)                       | AWG 12  | 3,9                       | 0,7    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 16                                      | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-016 | 4 (3)                          | 6 (3)                       | AWG 12  | 6,4                       | 1,0    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 30                                      | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-030 | 10                             | 16                          | AWG 6   | 11,9                      | 1,4    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 55                                      | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-055 | 16                             | 25                          | AWG 4   | 25,9                      | 2,0    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 75                                      | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-075 | 25                             | 35                          | AWG 3   | 30,4                      | 3,5    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 130                                     | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-130 | 50                             | 50                          | AWG 1/0 | 38                        | 4,7    | Vertical             |
| AC 480V +10%  | 180                                     | 3                | NFD<br>03.1-480-180 | 95                             | 95                          | AWG 4/0 | 61                        | 10     | Vertical             |

## Cables, accessories, additional components

| Maximum mains connection voltage of mains 50...60 Hz<br>$U_N$ | Nominal mains current<br>$I_{Nenn}$ (1) | Number of phases | Mains filter type   | Terminal connectors (3) |       |        | Power dissipation approx. | Weight | Type of construction |
|---|---|------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------|--------|---------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| AC 230V +10%  | 7,5                                     | 1                | NFE<br>02.1-230-008 | 4 (3)                   | 6 (3) | AWG 10 | 7,2                       | 1,1    | Vertical             |
|   |   |                  |                     |                         |       |        |                           |        |                      |

**NFD**

Three-phase filter

**NFE**

Single-phase filter

**(1)**

Mains-side maximum continuous current at 45 °C ambient temperature

**(2)**

Only use for interference suppression of the power supply unit NTM

**(3)**For the equipment grounding conductor, connect a conductor cross section of 10 mm<sup>2</sup> by means of terminal pin or ring cable lug

Tab. 8-27: Technical data

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Operating frequency</b>                              | From 0-60 Hz at 45 °C   |
| <b>Power dissipation</b>                                | Measured 2 or 3 × $RI^2_{Nenn DC}$  |
| <b>Temperature range</b>                                | -25 ... +85 °C  |
| <b>Overload</b>   | 1.5 × $I_{Nenn}$ 1 minute per hour or 4 × $I_{Nenn}$ for 10 s   |
| <b>Effective attenuation</b>                            | Frequency range 0.15-30 MHz   |
| <b>Saturation behavior</b>                              | Reduction of filter attenuation by 6 dB at 2.5-fold to 3-fold nominal current   |
| <b>Test voltage</b>                                     | L/N → PE or L → PE: 2000 V, 50 Hz, 2 s at 25 °C<br>L/ N → L: DC 1,100 V, 2 s at 25 °C   |
| <b>Current reduction in the case of overtemperature</b> | See formula for reduction in chapter "Calculations"   |
| <b>Leakage current at 50 Hz</b>                         | Symmetrical three-phase operation: Typ. 30 mA<br>Single-phase operation or in the case of tripped fuses of a phase: Typ. 175 ... 190 mA |
| <b>Degree of protection</b>                             | IP 20   |

Tab. 8-28: Technical Data

## 8.3.3 Mains chokes

### Type code

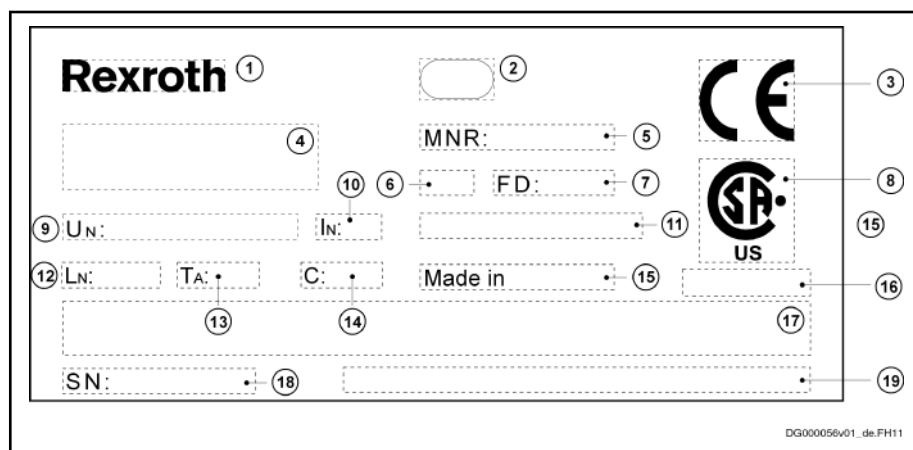
| Short type designation                                 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 4 | 0 |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Example:   | H | N | L | 0 | 1 | . | 1 | E | - | 0 | 9 | 8 | 0 | - | N | 0 | 0 | 2 | 6 | - | A | - | 4 | 8 | 0 | - | N | N | N | N |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Product</b>   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| HNL .....  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Line</b>  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 1.....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Design</b>  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 1.....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Supply system</b>                                   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Feeding .....  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Regenerative .....                                     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Feeding and regenerative .....                         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Nominal inductance</b>                              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| e.g. 980 µH .....                                      |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Additional option</b>                               |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| With capacitors .....                                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Current-compensated .....                              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| None .....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Nominal current</b>                                 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| e.g. 26 A .....  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Degree of protection</b>                            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| IP10 .....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| IP00 .....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Mains connection voltage</b>                        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 3 x AC 380V -10% ... 3 x AC 600V +20% .....            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 3 x AC 400...480V -15+10%, 50/60 Hz .....              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 3 x AC 400...500V -15+10%, 50/60 Hz .....              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 3 x AC 380V -15%...3 x 690V +10% .....                 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Other design</b>                                    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Reduced height with lateral connection .....           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| With damping by means of thyristor circuit .....       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Liquid cooling .....                                   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| None .....   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Standard reference</b>                              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Standard</b>  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| DIN EN 60529   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Title</b>   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Edition</b>   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 2000-09  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

DT000031v05\_en.FH11

Fig. 8-47: Type code

Cables, accessories, additional components

## Type plate



- 1 Word mark
- 2 Business facility number
- 3 CE label
- 4 Type designation (two lines, 20 characters each)
- 5 Part number
- 6 Change release
- 7 Production date (YYWww)
- 8 Certification label
- 9 Nominal voltage / frequency
- 10 Nominal current
- 11 Number of design specification
- 12 Nominal inductance
- 13 Temperature
- 14 Number and value of additional capacitors
- 15 Designation of origin
- 16 Approval number
- 17 Bar code (39 or 93)
- 18 Serial number
- 19 Company address

Fig. 8-48: Type plate

## HNL01.1E - mains chokes, feeding

### Technical data

### Mechanics and mounting

Type 1 dimensions:

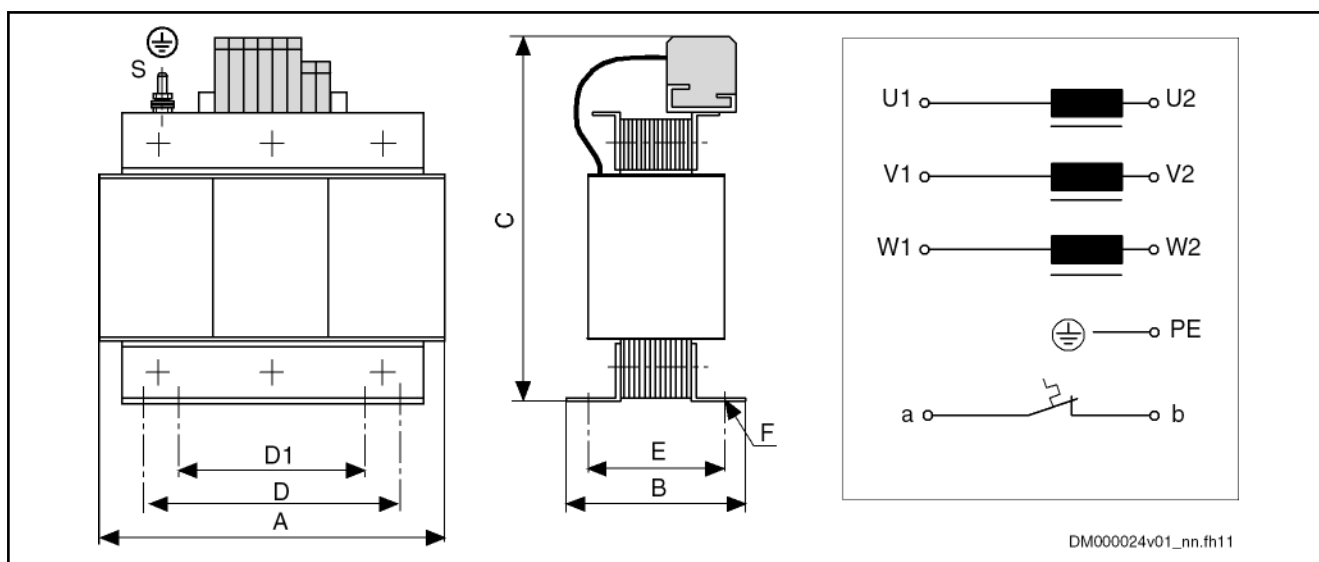


Fig. 8-49: Type 1 dimensions

| Mains choke                    | Type | Dimensions [mm] |      |     |     |    |      |                 |   |   |    | Weight [kg] |
|--------------------------------|------|-----------------|------|-----|-----|----|------|-----------------|---|---|----|-------------|
|                                |      | A               | B    | C   | D   | D1 | E    | F <sup>1)</sup> | G | H | S  |             |
| HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN | 1    | 120             | 61   | 164 | 81  | -  | 44   | 6.4 × 11        | - | - | M5 | 2.7         |
| HNL01.1E-0600-N0032-A-500-NNNN | 1    | 150             | 66.5 | 185 | 113 | -  | 49.5 | 6.4 × 11        | - | - | M5 | 4.5         |

1) Long hole in "B" direction

Tab. 8-29: Dimensions, weight

| Mains choke                    | Connection cross section<br>mm <sup>2</sup> / AWG |      | Tightening torque<br>Nm                      |      |
|--------------------------------|---|------|--|------|
|                                | U1, V1, W1<br>U2, V2, W2                          | a, b | U1, V1, W1<br>U2, V2, W2                     | a, b |
| HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN | 4   | 4    | Observe the data imprinted on the component. |      |
| HNL01.1E-0600-N0032-A-500-NNNN | 10  | 4    |  |      |

Tab. 8-30: Connection cross section, tightening torque

### Basic data

| Mains choke                    | U <sub>N</sub><br>[V] | I <sub>N</sub><br>[A] | L <sub>N</sub><br>[μH] | P <sub>V</sub><br>[W] | I <sub>max</sub><br>[A] | L <sub>min</sub><br>At I <sub>max</sub> |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN | 500                   | 12                    | 3 × 1000               | 40                    | 25                      | 50% of L <sub>N</sub>                   |
| HNL01.1E-0600-N0032-A-500-NNNN | 500                   | 32                    | 3 × 600                | 75                    | 80                      | 50% of L <sub>N</sub>                   |

Tab. 8-31: Electrical data

Cables, accessories, additional components

Temperature contact a, b

| Switching capacity        | Switching temperature   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1 A / AC 250 V<br>DC 24 V | 125 °C<br>HNL01.1E mains chokes of type 1 are equipped with a temperature contact (a, b), types 2, 3 and 4 are not. |

Tab. 8-32: Temperature contact

## 8.3.4 External braking resistors HLR

### Types

| Abbrev.<br>column               | 1   | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 3 |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Example:                        | H   | L | R | 0 | 1 | . | 2 | N | - | 0 | 1 | K | 0 | - | N | 6 | 8 | R | 0 | - | E | - | 0 | 0 | 7 | - | N | N | N | N |
| <b>Product</b>                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| HLR .....                       | = HLR   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Line</b>                     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 1 .....                         | = 01  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Design</b>                   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 2 .....                         | = 2   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Type of construction</b>     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Version for device mounting ... | = A   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Version for free assembly ..... | = N   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Continuous power</b>         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| e.g. 1 kW .....                 | = 01K0  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Additional option</b>        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| None. ....                      | = N   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Resistance value</b>         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| e.g. 68 ohm .....               | = 68R0  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Degree of protection</b>     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| IP54 .....                      | = E   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Nominal DC bus voltage</b>   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| DC 300 V .....                  | = 003   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| DC 700 V .....                  | = 007   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Other design</b>             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| None .....                      | = NNNN  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Standard reference</b>       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Standard</b>                 | DIN EN 60529  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Title</b>                    | Degree of protection provided by enclosures (IP code) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Edition</b>                  | 2000-09   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

DT000077v02\_en.fh11

Fig. 8-50: Type code

### Data

#### Technical data - currents, voltages, power

| Description   | Symbol              | Unit | HLR01.2N-01<br>K0-N28R0-<br>E-007-NNNN<br>Preliminary | HLR01.2N-01<br>K0-N68R0-<br>E-007-NNNN<br>Preliminary | HLR01.2N-0K<br>06-N100R-<br>E-003-NNNN | HLR01.2N-0K<br>06-N180R-<br>E-007-NNNN |
|---|---------------------|------|---|---|--|--|
| Degree of protection according to IEC 60529               | IP                  |      | IP54  |   |  |  |
| Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data | T <sub>a_work</sub> | °C   | 0...40  |   |  |  |
| Last modification: 2014-05-26                             |                     |      |   |   |  |  |

## Cables, accessories, additional components

| Description   | Symbol                  | Unit | HLR01.2N-01<br>K0-N28R0-<br>E-007-NNNN<br>Preliminary | HLR01.2N-01<br>K0-N68R0-<br>E-007-NNNN<br>Preliminary | HLR01.2N-0K<br>06-N100R-<br>E-003-NNNN | HLR01.2N-0K<br>06-N180R-<br>E-007-NNNN |
|---|-------------------------|------|---|---|--|--|
| Mass  | m                       | kg   | 3.96  |   | 0.52                                   |  |
| Nominal braking resistor  | R <sub>DC_Bleeder</sub> | ohm  | 28.00   | 68.00   | 100.00                                 | 180.00                                 |
| Braking resistor continuous power   | P <sub>BD</sub>         | kW   | 1.00  |   | 0.06                                   |  |
| Braking resistor peak power   | P <sub>BS</sub>         | kW   | 25.82   | 8.96  | 1.38                                   | 3.39                                   |
| Regenerative power to be absorbed   | W <sub>R_max</sub>      | kWs  | 30.00   | 10.00   | 1.00                                   | 2.40                                   |
| Maximum allowed on-time duty  | t <sub>on_max</sub>     | s    | 1.16  | 1.11  | 0.72                                   | 0.71                                   |
| Minimum allowed cycle time  | T <sub>cycl</sub>       | s    | 33.30   | 9.90  | 16.50                                  | 40.10                                  |
| Cooling type  |                         |      | natural   |   |  |  |
| Volumetric capacity of forced cooling   | V                       | m³/h | -   |   |  |  |
| Temperature increase with minimum distances d <sub>bot</sub> ; d <sub>top</sub> ; P <sub>BD</sub> | ΔT                      | K    | -   |   |  |  |
| Minimum distance on the top of the device <sup>1)</sup>   | d <sub>top</sub>        | mm   | 200   |   | 150                                    |  |
| Minimum distance on the bottom of the device <sup>2)</sup>  | d <sub>bot</sub>        | mm   | 200   |   | 150                                    |  |
| Horizontal spacing on the device <sup>3)</sup>  | d <sub>hor</sub>        | mm   | 200   |   | 50                                     |  |
| Allowed range tightening torque   | M                       | Nm   | -   |   |  |  |
| Required wire size in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring); <sup>4)</sup>       | A <sub>LN</sub>         | AWG  | 16  |   |  |  |
| Last modification: 2014-05-26   |                         |      |   |   |  |  |

1) 2) 3)  
4)

See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"  
Copper wire; PVC-insulation (conductor temperature 90 °C);  
table 28.1;  $T_a \leq 40$  °C

Tab. 8-33: HLR - technical data - currents, voltages, power



Cables, accessories, additional components

## HLR01.2N-01K0-N28R0, ...-N68R0 dimensions

Boring dimensions

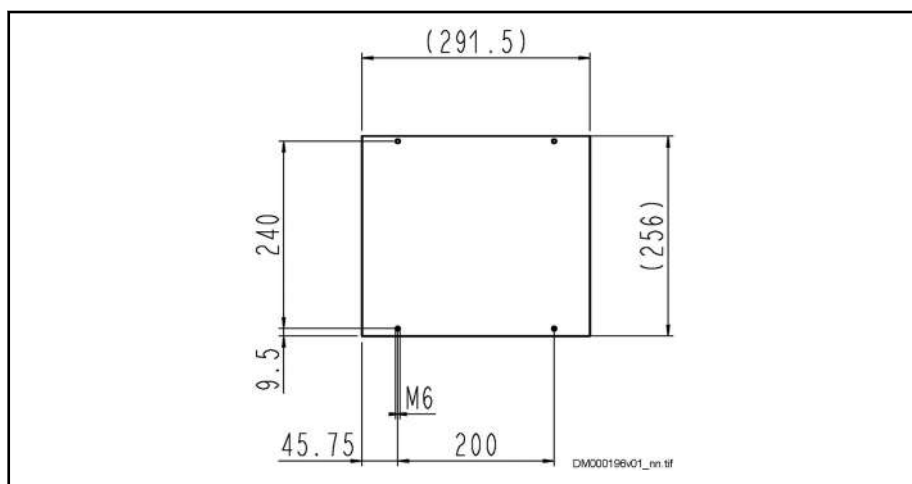
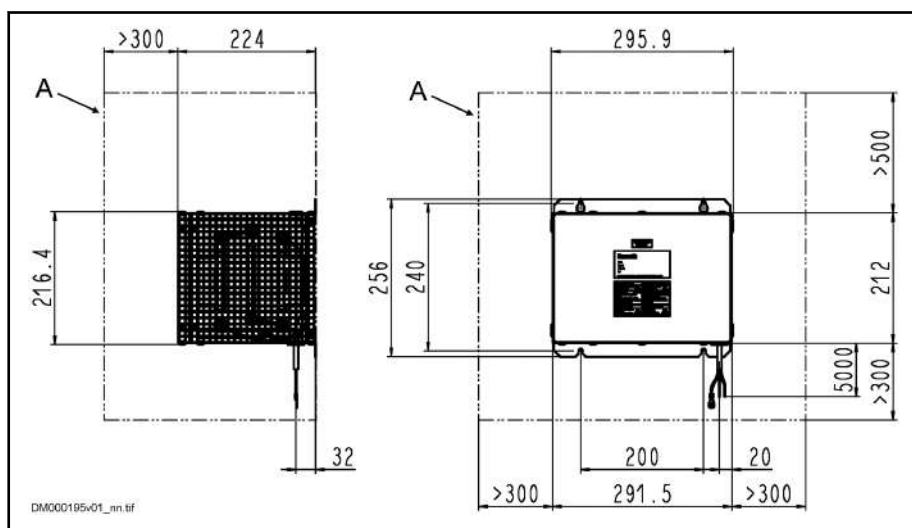


Fig. 8-51: Boring dimensions

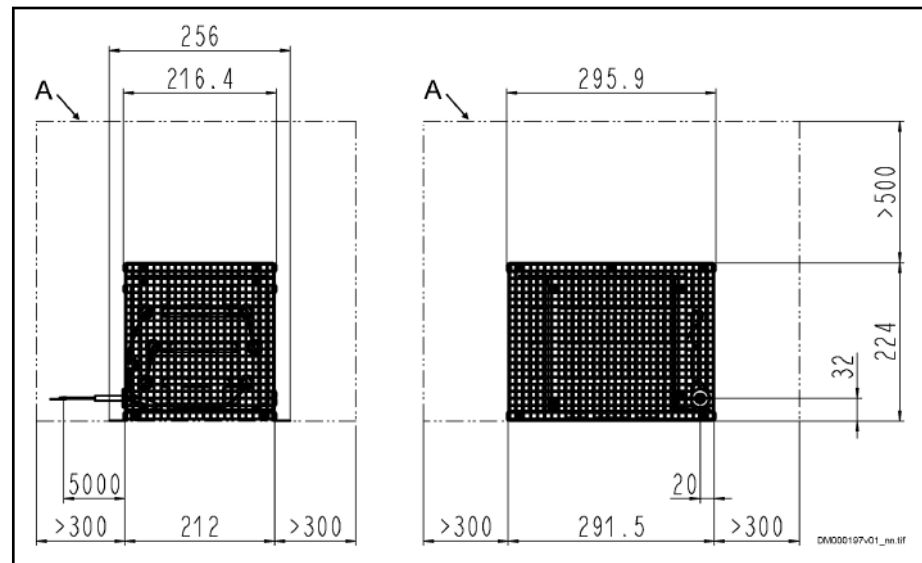
Dimensions (with suspended mounting)



A Minimum mounting clearance  
Fig. 8-52: Dimensions (with suspended mounting on the wall)

## Cables, accessories, additional components

## Dimensions (with upright mounting)



A

Minimum mounting clearance

Fig. 8-53:

Dimensions (with upright mounting on the floor)

HLR01.2N-0K06-N100R, ...-N180R dimensions

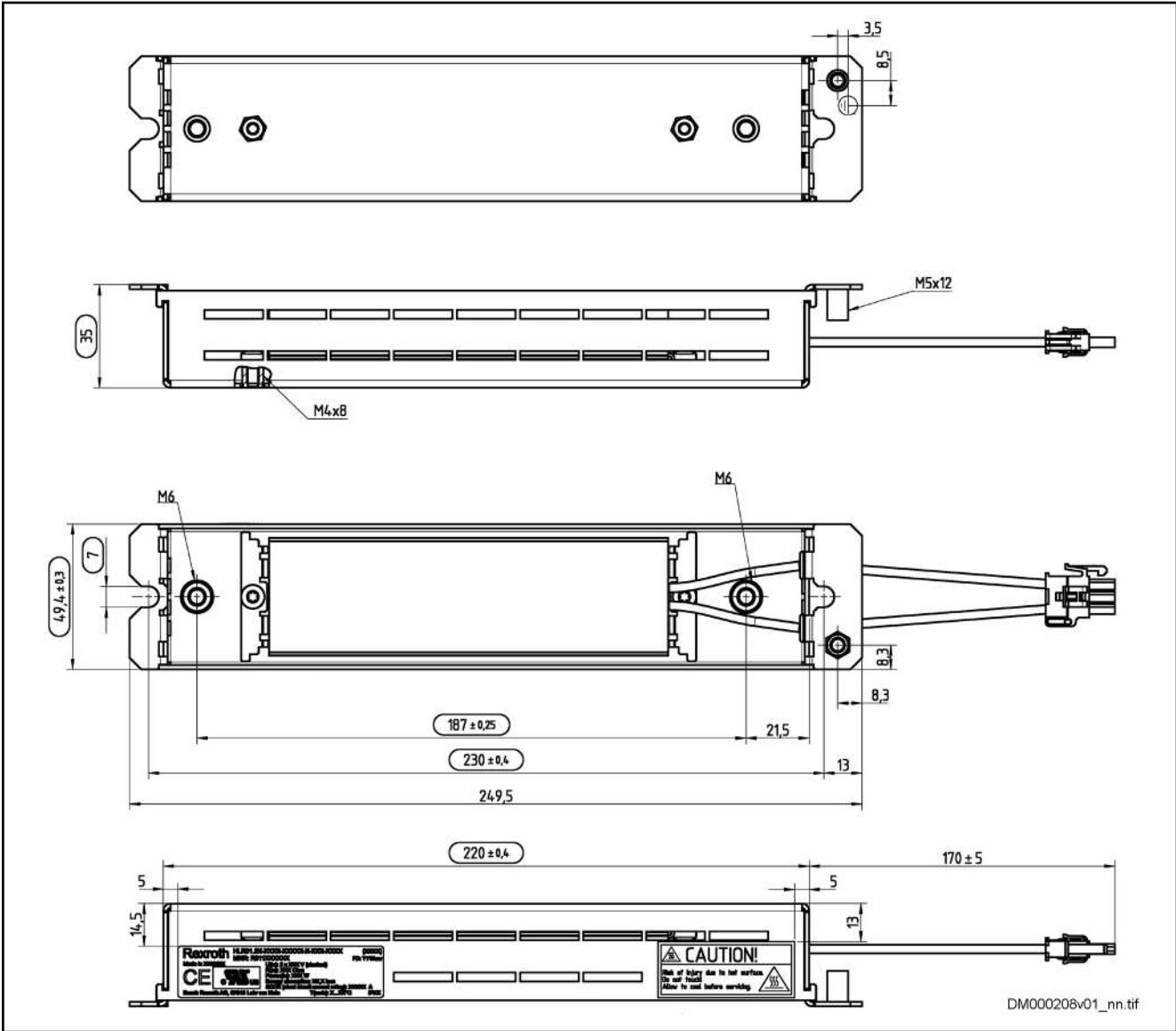


Fig. 8-54: Dimensions

| Connector | Data  |
|-----------|---|
|           | Manufacturer: TE connectivity Ltd.  |
|           | Type: Mini-Universal MATE-N-LOK 2   |
|           | Number: 794186-1  |
|           | Contacts (female):  |
|           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Number: 794223-1</li><li>Connection cross section: 0.5 ... 1.4 mm<sup>2</sup> (16 ... 20 AWG)</li></ul> |

Tab. 8-34: Connector

Cables, accessories, additional components

## Assignment HLR01.2 to HCS01

| Braking resistor<br>HLR01.2N-... | Drive controller<br>HCS01.1E-W00... |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0K06-N100R-E-003                 | 03, 06, 09, 13                      |
| 0K06-N180R-E-007                 | 05, 08                              |
| 01K0-N68R0-E-007                 | 18-02                               |
|                                  | 18-03, 28                           |
| 01K0-N28R0-E-007                 | 54                                  |

Tab. 8-35: Assignment HLR01.2 to HCS01

## Installation

### Connection

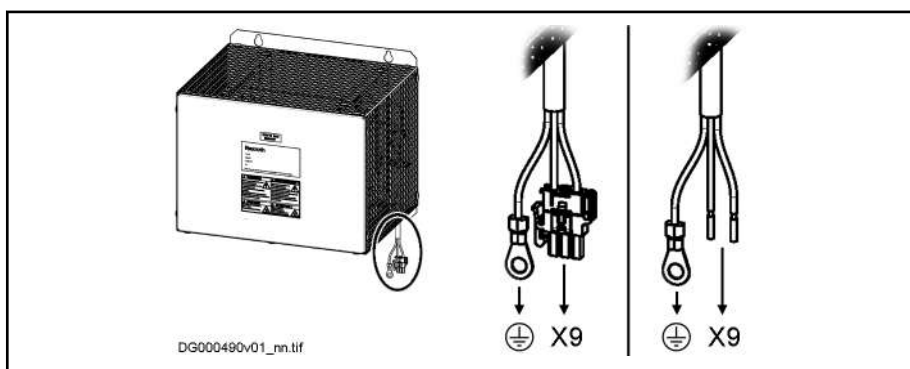


Fig. 8-55: Connection

When installing the braking resistor, observe the instructions given in the description of [connection point X9](#).

### Snap-on ferrite

The accessory HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN (snap-on ferrite) ensures that Class C3 of the EMC Directive EN 61800-3 is complied with for braking resistors installed outside of the control cabinet.

The snap-on ferrite is designed for the following components:

- HCS01.1E-W0018 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0028 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N68R0-E-007
- HCS01.1E-W0054 + HLR01.2N-01K0-N28R0-E-007

### Bimetal protection relay

Using a bimetal protection relay you can establish overload protection for external braking resistors.

Integrate the isolated N/C contact of the relay in the control circuit for mains connection. See also [chapter "Control Circuit for the Mains Connection" on page 104](#).

Cables, accessories, additional components

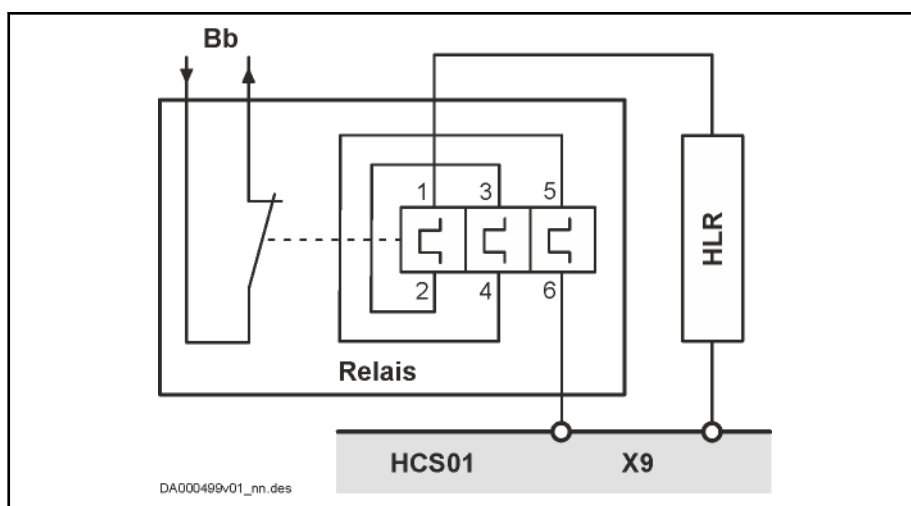


Fig. 8-56: Bimetal protection relay as overload protection

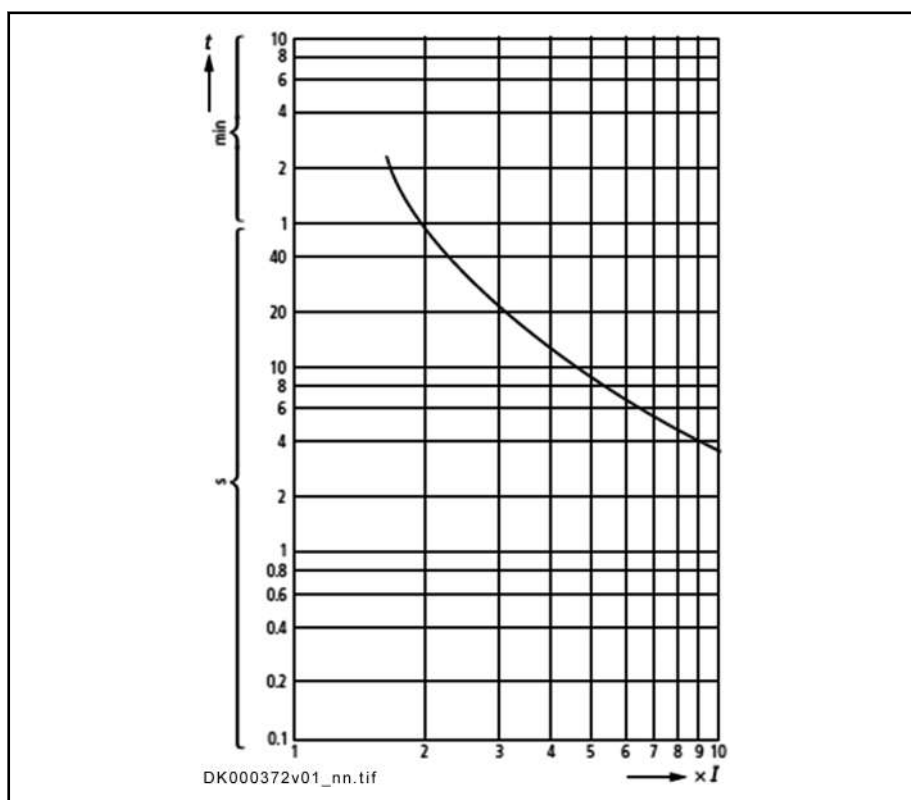


Fig. 8-57: Tripping characteristic of bimetal protection relay

| Braking resistor<br>HLR01.2N-... | Current measuring range<br>[A] | Tripping current [A] |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| 01K0-N28R0-E-007                 | 4 ... 6                        | 6                    |
| 01K0-N68R0-E-007                 | 4 ... 6                        | 4                    |

Cables, accessories, additional components

| Braking resistor<br>HLR01.2N-... | Current measuring range<br>[A] | Tripping current [A] |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| 0K06-N100R-E-003                 | 0.6 ... 1                      | 0.8                  |
| 0K06-N180R-E-007                 | 0.6 ... 1                      | 0.6                  |

Tab. 8-36: HLR and bimetal protection relay: Current measuring range and tripping current

## 8.3.5 DC bus capacitor units HLC

### Type code

| Short type designation        | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6            | 7   | 8 | 9 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 0 | 1              | 2       |
|-------------------------------|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|---------|
| Example:                      | H            | L | C | 0 | 1 | . | 2 | C | - | 0 | 1 | M | 0 | - | A | - | 0            | 0   | 7 | - | N | N | N | N |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Product</b>                |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| HLC ..... = HLC               |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Series</b>                 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| 1 ..... = 01                  |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Design</b>                 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| 2 ..... = 2                   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Mounting depth</b>         |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| 300 mm ..... = C              |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Nominal capacitance</b>    |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| 1.0 mF ..... = 01M0           |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| 2.0 mF ..... = 02M0           |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Degree of protection</b>   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| IP 20 ..... = A               |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Nominal DC bus voltage</b> |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| DC 700 V ..... = 007          |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Other design</b>           |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| None ..... = NNNN             |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Standard reference</b>     |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                |         |
| <b>Standard</b>               | DIN EN 60529 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | <b>Title</b> | Degree of protection provided by enclosures (IP code) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | <b>Edition</b> | 2000-09 |

DT000076v02\_en.FH11

Fig. 8-58: Type code

### Technical data

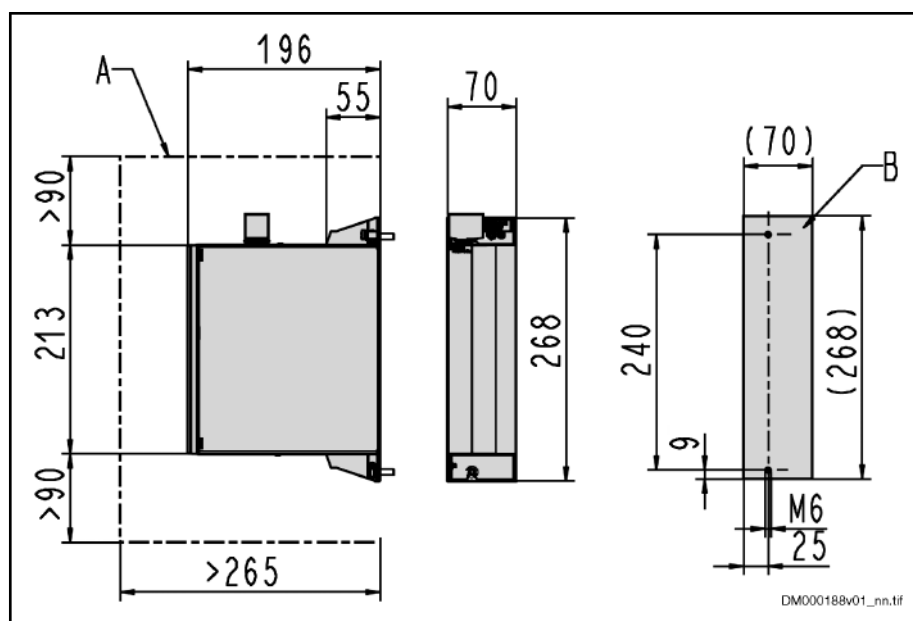
#### Technical data

| Description   | Symbol           | Unit | HLC01.2C-01M0      | HLC01.2C-02M0 |
|---|------------------|------|--------------------|---------------|
| Allowed mounting position   |                  |      | G1                 |               |
| Mass  | m                | kg   | 2.2                | 2.7           |
| Allowed input voltage   | $U_{DC}$         | V    | DC 254 ... 750     |               |
| DC bus capacitance  | $C_{DC}$         | mF   | 1 ±20%             | 2 ±20%        |
| Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively (UL) | $P_{Diss\_cont}$ | W    | 4.10               | 5.28          |
| Maximum discharge time from $U_{R\_DC\_On}$ to DC 50 V                                | $t_{entL\_ZK}$   | sec  | 238                | 378           |
| Allowed input current at L+ L-  | $I_{max(rms)}$   | A    | 15                 | 30            |
| Insulation resistance (at DC 500 V)   | $R_{is}$         | Mohm | > 10               | > 10          |
| Cooling   |                  |      | Natural convection |               |

Tab. 8-37: HLC - technical data

Cables, accessories, additional components

## Dimensions



A Minimum mounting clearance

B Boring dimensions

Fig. 8-59: Dimensions

## Connection

**⚠ WARNING****Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

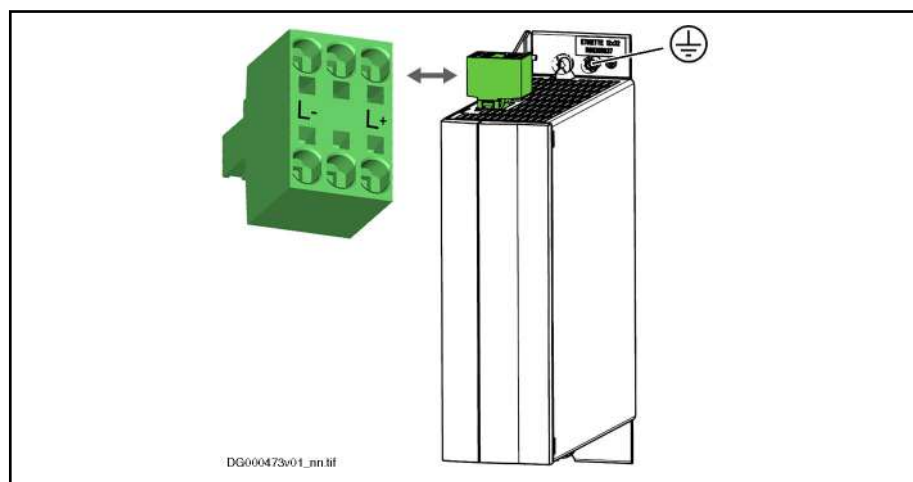



Fig. 8-60: Connection points (DC Bus (L+ L-), equipment grounding conductor)



Cables, accessories, additional components

**Equipment grounding conductor** Connect the equipment grounding conductor via thread **M5** to the housing of the device (identification mark ; tightening torque: **5 Nm**). The **M5×12** screw required for this purpose is part of the supplied accessories [HAS09](#).

**DC bus** Connect HLC01 to HCS01 with twisted lines: L+ to L+; L- to L-  
Technical data of the connection point: See description of [connection point X77](#).

**Arrangement** Place the HLC next to the most powerful drive controller of a drive system.

## Operation

**Mains Choke** Always operate the DC bus capacitor units together with the mains choke assigned to the drive controller (see [chapter 7.3.2 "Mains voltage" on page 233](#)).

Special case "HCS01.1E-W0018-\_-03" (in the technical data, no mains choke has been assigned to this drive controller):

Use the mains choke "HNL01.1E-1000-N0012-A-500-NNNN".

**DC bus coupling** Information on DC bus coupling: See [chapter "DC Bus Capacitor Unit" on page 111](#)




## 9 Environmental protection and disposal

### 9.1 Environmental protection

|   |   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
|---|---|---------------------------|---------------|---------|---------|------------|------------|----------|----------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Production processes</b>               | The products are made with energy- and resource-optimized production processes which allow re-using and recycling the resulting waste. We regularly try to replace pollutant-loaded raw materials and supplies by more environment-friendly alternatives.   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| <b>No release of hazardous substances</b> | Our products do not contain any hazardous substances which may be released in the case of appropriate use. Normally, our products will not have any negative influences on the environment.   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| <b>Significant components</b>             | Basically, our products contain the following components: <table> <tr> <td><b>Electronic devices</b></td><td><b>Motors</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>• steel</td><td>• steel</td></tr> <tr> <td>• aluminum</td><td>• aluminum</td></tr> <tr> <td>• copper</td><td>• copper</td></tr> <tr> <td>• synthetic materials</td><td>• brass</td></tr> <tr> <td>• electronic components and modules</td><td>• magnetic materials</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>• electronic components and modules</td></tr> </table> | <b>Electronic devices</b> | <b>Motors</b> | • steel | • steel | • aluminum | • aluminum | • copper | • copper | • synthetic materials | • brass | • electronic components and modules | • magnetic materials |  | • electronic components and modules |
| <b>Electronic devices</b>                 | <b>Motors</b>   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| • steel                                   | • steel   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| • aluminum                                | • aluminum  |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| • copper                                  | • copper  |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| • synthetic materials                     | • brass   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
| • electronic components and modules       | • magnetic materials  |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |
|   | • electronic components and modules   |                           |               |         |         |            |            |          |          |                       |         |                                     |                      |  |                                     |

### 9.2 Disposal

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Return of products</b>         | <p>Our products can be returned to our premises free of charge for disposal. It is a precondition, however, that the products are free of oil, grease or other dirt. Furthermore, the products returned for disposal must not contain any undue foreign material or foreign components.</p> <p>Send the products "free domicile" to the following address:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Bosch Rexroth AG<br/>Electric Drives and Controls<br/>Buergermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Strasse 2<br/>97816 Lohr am Main, Germany</p>  |
| <b>Packaging</b>                  | <p>The packaging materials consist of cardboard, wood and polystyrene. These materials can be recycled anywhere without any problem.</p> <p>For ecological reasons, please refrain from returning the empty packages to us.</p>   |
| <b>Batteries and accumulators</b> | <p>Batteries and accumulators can be labeled with this symbol.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p>The symbol indicating "separate collection" for all batteries and accumulators is the crossed-out wheeled bin.</p> <p>The end user within the EU is legally obligated to return used batteries. Outside the validity of the EU Directive 2006/66/EC keep the stipulated directives.</p> <p>Used batteries can contain hazardous substances, which can harm the environment or the people's health when they are improperly stored or disposed of. After use, the batteries or accumulators contained in Rexroth products have to be properly disposed of according to the country-specific collection.</p> |
| <b>Recycling</b>                  | <p>Most of the products can be recycled due to their high content of metal. In order to recycle the metal in the best possible way, the products must be disassembled into individual modules.</p>  |

## Environmental protection and disposal

Metals contained in electric and electronic modules can also be recycled by means of special separation processes.

Products made of plastics can contain flame retardants. These plastic parts are labeled according to EN ISO 1043. They have to be recycled separately or disposed of according to the valid legal requirements.

## 10 Service and support

Our worldwide service network provides an optimized and efficient support. Our experts offer you advice and assistance should you have any queries. You can contact us **24/7**.

**Service Germany** Our technology-oriented Competence Center in Lohr, Germany, is responsible for all your service-related queries for electric drive and controls.

Contact the **Service Hotline** and **Service Helpdesk** under:

Phone: **+49 9352 40 5060**  
Fax: **+49 9352 18 4941**  
E-mail: [service.svc@boschrexroth.de](mailto:service.svc@boschrexroth.de)  
Internet: <http://www.boschrexroth.com/>

Additional information on service, repair (e.g. delivery addresses) and training can be found on our internet sites.

**Service worldwide** Outside Germany, please contact your local service office first. For hotline numbers, refer to the sales office addresses on the internet.

**Preparing information** To be able to help you more quickly and efficiently, please have the following information ready:

- Detailed description of malfunction and circumstances
- Type plate specifications of the affected products, in particular type codes and serial numbers
- Your contact data (phone and fax number as well as your e-mail address)



# 11 Appendix

## 11.1 Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses

Dimensioning the line cross sections and fuses in the supply feeder and branches to the drive system:

1. Determine current in supply feeder of drive system and correct it with correction factors for ambient temperature and bundling.  
(In the technical data of the components in section "Data for mains voltage supply", you can find standardized data for connection cross section and mains circuit breaker at operation under rated conditions.)
2. Determine country of use ("international except for USA/Canada" or "USA/Canada")
3. Determine installation type (e.g., B1 or B2)
4. In "Current carrying capacity" table row, select the value that is immediately above the value determined in the first step
5. In "Fuse" table row, read corresponding fuse
6. In "Cross section A ..." table row, read corresponding required cross section

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type B1

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B1 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 1.5  |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 1.5  |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 1.5  |
| 10  |     |     | 8.6   | 1.5  |
| 16  |     |     | 10.3  | 1.5  |
| 16  |     |     | 13.5  | 1.5  |
| 20  |     |     | 18.27   | 2.5  |
| 35  |     |     | 24.36   | 4  |
| 35  |     |     | 31.32   | 6  |
| 50  |     |     | 43.50   | 10   |
| 80  |     |     | 59.16   | 16   |
| 100   |     |     | 77.43   | 25   |
| 125   |     |     | 95.70   | 35   |
| 160   |     |     | 116.58  | 50   |
| 200   |     |     | 148.77  | 70   |
| 200   |     |     | 180.09  | 95   |
| 250   |     |     | 207.93  | 120  |
| 250   |     |     | 227.94  | 150  |

## Appendix

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B1 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 315   |     |     | 257.52  | 185  |
| 355   |     |     | 301.02  | 240  |
| 400   |     |     | 342.78  | 300  |
| 315   | 160 |     | 238.03  | 2 × 70   |
| 400   | 160 |     | 288.14  | 2 × 95   |
| 400   | 200 |     | 332.69  | 2 × 120  |
| 400   | 200 |     | 364.70  | 2 × 150  |
| 500   | 250 |     | 412.03  | 2 × 185  |
| 630   | 315 |     | 481.63  | 2 × 240  |
| 630   | 315 |     | 548.45  | 2 × 300  |
| 400   |     | 125 | 312.42  | 3 × 70   |
| 500   |     | 160 | 378.19  | 3 × 95   |
| 500   |     | 160 | 436.65  | 3 × 120  |
| 630   |     | 200 | 478.67  | 3 × 150  |
| 630   |     | 200 | 540.79  | 3 × 185  |
| 800   |     | 250 | 632.14  | 3 × 240  |
| 800   |     | 315 | 719.84  | 3 × 300  |

Tab. 11-1: Line cross sections and fuses, B1 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-4

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type B2

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B2 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 0.75   |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 0.75   |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 0.75   |
| 10  |     |     | 8.5   | 0.75   |
| 16  |     |     | 10.1  | 1.0  |
| 16  |     |     | 13.05   | 1.5  |
| 20  |     |     | 17.40   | 2.5  |
| 25  |     |     | 23.49   | 4  |
| 35  |     |     | 29.58   | 6  |
| 50  |     |     | 40.02   | 10   |



| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |  |
|---|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type B2 |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |  |
| 63  |     |     | 53.94   | 16   |
| 80  |     |     | 69.60   | 25   |
| 100   |     |     | 86.13   | 35   |
| 125   |     |     | 102.66  | 50   |
| 160   |     |     | 129.63  | 70   |
| 200   |     |     | 155.73  | 95   |
| 200   |     |     | 179.22  | 120  |
| 224   |     |     | 195.75  | 150  |
| 250   |     |     | 221.85  | 185  |
| 315   |     |     | 258.39  | 240  |
| 355   |     |     | 294.93  | 300  |
|   | 125 |     | 207.41  | 2 × 70   |
|   | 160 |     | 249.17  | 2 × 95   |
|   | 160 |     | 286.75  | 2 × 120  |
|   | 200 |     | 313.20  | 2 × 150  |
|   | 200 |     | 354.96  | 2 × 185  |
|   | 250 |     | 413.42  | 2 × 240  |
|   | 315 |     | 471.89  | 2 × 300  |
|   |     | 100 | 272.22  | 3 × 70   |
|   |     | 125 | 327.03  | 3 × 95   |
|   |     | 160 | 376.36  | 3 × 120  |
|   |     | 160 | 411.08  | 3 × 150  |
|   |     | 200 | 465.89  | 3 × 185  |
|   |     | 200 | 542.62  | 3 × 240  |
|   |     | 250 | 619.35  | 3 × 300  |

Tab. 11-2: Line cross sections and fuses, B2 according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-4

International except for USA/  
Canada; installation type E

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|---|
| Fuse $I_N$ [A]                                      |     |     | Current carrying capacity ( $\times 0.87$ ) $I_{Z(40)}$ [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |   |
| 2   |     |     | 1.6   | 2   |
| 4   |     |     | 3.3   | 4   |

## Appendix

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|---|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |   |
| 6   |     |     | 5.0   | 6   |
| 10  |     |     | 8.3   | 10  |
| 16  |     |     | 10.4  | 16  |
| 16  |     |     | 12.4  | 16  |
| 20  |     |     | 16.10   | 1.5   |
| 25  |     |     | 21.75   | 2.5   |
| 35  |     |     | 29.58   | 4   |
| 50  |     |     | 37.41   | 6   |
| 63  |     |     | 52.20   | 10  |
| 80  |     |     | 69.60   | 16  |
| 100   |     |     | 87.87   | 25  |
| 125   |     |     | 109.62  | 35  |
| 160   |     |     | 133.11  | 50  |
| 200   |     |     | 170.52  | 70  |
| 250   |     |     | 207.06  | 95  |
| 315   |     |     | 240.12  | 120   |
| 355   |     |     | 277.53  | 150   |
| 400   |     |     | 316.68  | 185   |
| 425   |     |     | 374.10  | 240   |
| 500   |     |     | 432.39  | 300   |
|   | 160 |     | 272.83  | 2 × 70  |
|   | 200 |     | 331.30  | 2 × 95  |
|   | 250 |     | 384.19  | 2 × 120   |
|   | 250 |     | 444.05  | 2 × 150   |
|   | 315 |     | 506.69  | 2 × 185   |
|   | 400 |     | 598.56  | 2 × 240   |
|   | 400 |     | 691.82  | 2 × 300   |
|   |     | 160 | 358.09  | 3 × 70  |
|   |     | 200 | 434.83  | 3 × 95  |
|   |     | 200 | 504.25  | 3 × 120   |
|   |     | 250 | 582.81  | 3 × 150   |
|   |     | 250 | 665.03  | 3 × 185   |

| Country of use: international except for USA/Canada |     |     |   |   |
|---|-----|-----|---|---|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub> [A]                             |     |     | Current carrying capacity (× 0.87) I <sub>Z(40)</sub> [A] | Cross section A [mm <sup>2</sup> ]<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×   | 2 × | 3 × |   |   |
|   |     | 315 | 785.61  | 3 × 240   |
|   |     | 400 | 908.02  | 3 × 300   |

Tab. 11-3: Line cross sections and fuses, E according to EN 60204-1:2006, Table 6, for 150mm<sup>2</sup> and more DIN IEC 60364-5-52:2004, Table B.52-10

USA/Canada; installation type E

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |  |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub>        |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity I <sub>Z</sub> [A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |  |  |
| 2                          |     |     |     | 1.6  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 4                          |     |     |     | 3.3  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 6                          |     |     |     | 5  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 10                         |     |     |     | 8.3  | 14 AWG                                 |
| 16                         |     |     |     | 13   | 14 AWG                                 |
| 20                         |     |     |     | 15   | 14 AWG                                 |
| 25                         |     |     |     | 20   | 12 AWG                                 |
| 40                         |     |     |     | 30   | 10 AWG                                 |
| 70                         |     |     |     | 50   | 8 AWG                                  |
| 80                         |     |     |     | 65   | 6 AWG                                  |
| 100                        |     |     |     | 85   | 4 AWG                                  |
| 110                        |     |     |     | 100  | 3 AWG                                  |
| 125                        |     |     |     | 115  | 2 AWG                                  |
| 150                        |     |     |     | 130  | 1 AWG                                  |
| 175                        |     |     |     | 150  | 1/0 AWG                                |
| 200                        |     |     |     | 175  | 2/0 AWG                                |
| 225                        |     |     |     | 200  | 3/0 AWG                                |
| 250                        |     |     |     | 230  | 4/0 AWG                                |
| 300                        |     |     |     | 255  | 250 kcmil                              |
| 300                        |     |     |     | 285  | 300 kcmil                              |
| 350                        |     |     |     | 310  | 350 kcmil                              |
| 350                        |     |     |     | 335  | 400 kcmil                              |
| 400                        |     |     |     | 380  | 500 kcmil                              |
| 450                        |     |     |     | 420  | 600 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 460  | 700 kcmil                              |

## Appendix

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |   |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---|--|
| Fuse I <sub>N</sub>        |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity I <sub>Z</sub><br>[A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |   |  |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 475   | 750 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 490   | 800 kcmil                              |
| 600                        |     |     |     | 520   | 900 kcmil                              |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 545   | 1000 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 590   | 1250 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 625   | 1500 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 650   | 1750 kcmil                             |
| 800                        |     |     |     | 665   | 2000 kcmil                             |
|                            | 200 |     |     | 300   | 2 × 1/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 225 |     |     | 350   | 2 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 250 |     |     | 400   | 2 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 300 |     |     | 460   | 2 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            | 300 |     |     | 510   | 2 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            | 350 |     |     | 570   | 2 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            | 350 |     |     | 620   | 2 × 350 kcmil                          |
|                            | 400 |     |     | 670   | 2 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            | 450 |     |     | 760   | 2 × 500 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 840   | 2 × 600 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 920   | 2 × 700 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 950   | 2 × 750 kcmil                          |
|                            | 600 |     |     | 980   | 2 × 800 kcmil                          |
|                            | 800 |     |     | 1040  | 2 × 900 kcmil                          |
|                            | 800 |     |     | 1090  | 2 × 1000 kcmil                         |
|                            |     | 200 |     | 450   | 3 × 1/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 225 |     | 525   | 3 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 250 |     | 600   | 3 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 300 |     | 690   | 3 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     | 300 |     | 765   | 3 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 350 |     | 855   | 3 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 350 |     | 930   | 3 × 350 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 400 |     | 1005  | 3 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            |     | 450 |     | 1140  | 3 × 500 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 200 | 600   | 4 × 1/0 AWG                            |

| Country of use: USA/Canada |     |     |     |                                     |  |
|----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------------|--|
| Fuse $I_N$                 |     |     |     | Current carrying capacity $I_Z$ [A] | Cross section A<br>Installation type E |
| 1 ×                        | 2 × | 3 × | 4 × |                                     |  |
|                            |     |     | 225 | 700                                 | 4 × 2/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 250 | 800                                 | 4 × 3/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 300 | 920                                 | 4 × 4/0 AWG                            |
|                            |     |     | 300 | 1020                                | 4 × 250 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 350 | 1140                                | 4 × 300 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 350 | 1240                                | 4 × 350 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 400 | 1340                                | 4 × 400 kcmil                          |
|                            |     |     | 450 | 1520                                | 4 × 500 kcmil                          |

Tab. 11-4: Line cross sections and fuses according to UL508A:2007, Table 28.1  
Dimensioning variables of the table values

- Ambient temperature  $T_A$  of routed lines  $\leq 40^\circ\text{C}$
- Temperature  $T_L$  at conductor at nominal current:  $90^\circ\text{C}$  for UL-listed lines (USA/Canada) or  $70^\circ\text{C}$  for PVC lines
- The nominal current of the fuse is approx. 10-20% above the nominal current  $I_{LN}$  of the converter/supply unit or the determined current of the drive system.
- Installation types:
  - B1 in accordance with IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. stranded wires routed in cable duct
  - B2 in accordance with IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. multi-core line routed in cable duct
  - E in accordance with EN 60204-1, e.g. multi-core line routed on open cable tray
  - In accordance with NFPA 79 (external wiring), UL508A (internal wiring), NEC, NFPA 70:
    - 1 cable with 3 conductors, 1 neutral conductor and 1 equipment grounding conductor
    - Routed in pipe on the wall

Internal wiring: Routing inside of control cabinet or inside of devices

External wiring: Routing outside of control cabinet

Field wiring: Data of cross sections of terminal connectors wired by the user (in the field)
- Recommendation for design of the fuses:
  - International except for USA/Canada:**
    - Fuse-link in accordance with IEC 60269-1, characteristic gG (fuses)
    - Circuit breakers in accordance with IEC 60898-1/2, type B or C
    - Circuit breakers in accordance with IEC 60947-2/6-2

## Appendix

- **USA/Canada:**
  - Class J; 600 V

**Correction factors**

For deviating dimensioning variables, the corresponding standards specify correction factors.

Below you can find the correction factors for ambient temperature and numbers of routed lines and circuits. If necessary, multiply the determined current in the supply feeder with these factors.

**Ambient temperature correction factor**

| Ambient temperature $T_A$ / °C                               | 30   | 35   | 40   | 45  | 50   | 55   | 60   |
|--|------|------|------|-----|------|------|------|
| Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.1    | 0.87 | 0.93 | 1.00 | 1.1 | 1.22 | 1.41 | 1.73 |
| Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(a) | 0.88 | 0.94 | 1.00 | 1.1 | 1.18 | 1.32 | 1.52 |

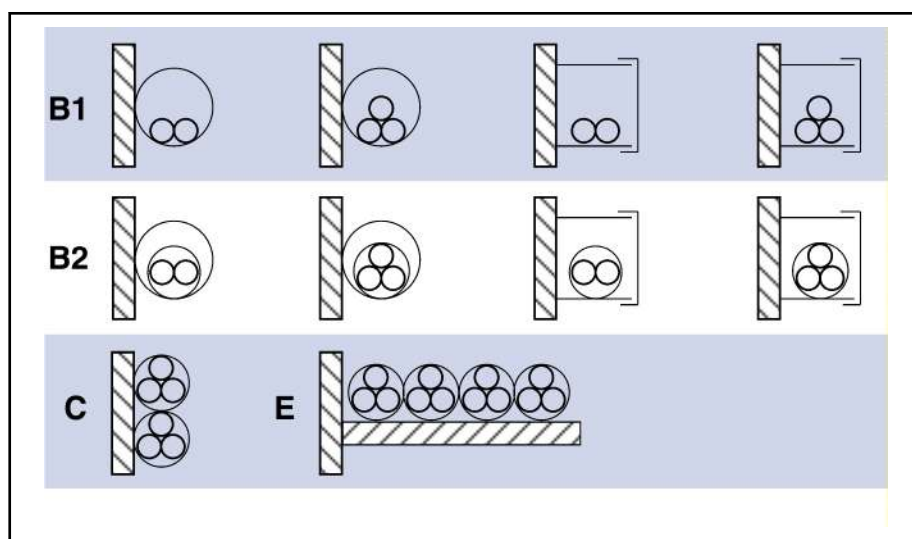
Tab. 11-5: Ambient temperature correction factor in accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007

**Correction factor for bundling lines (installation methods B2 and E) and circuits (installation method B1<sup>1)</sup>)**

| Number of lines  | 1 | 2    | 3    | 4    | 5    |
|--|---|------|------|------|------|
| Correction factor according to EN 60204-1:2006, table D.2    | 1 | 1.25 | 1.43 | 1.54 | 1.67 |
| Correction factor according to NFPA 79:2007, table 12.5.5(b) | 1 | 1.25 |      |      |      |

- 1) Three single cores (L1, L2, L3) for mains supply of a device are to be considered as one circuit.

Tab. 11-6: Correction factor for bundling lines and circuits in accordance with EN 60204-1:2006 and NFPA 79:2007



- B1** Conductor in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened  
**B2** Cables or lines in installation pipes and in installation channels to be opened  
**C** Cables or lines on walls  
**E** Cables or lines on open cable trays.

Fig. 11-1: Installation methods (compare IEC 60364-5-52; VDE0298-7; EN 60204-1)

## 11.2 Determining the Leakage Capacitance

The capacitances which generate so-called leakage currents against ground at the outputs of inverters are regarded as leakage capacitance  $C_{ab}$ . The decisive values for the total value  $C_{ab\_g}$  of the leakage capacitance are:

- Capacitances of output filters
- Capacitances of power cables (capacitance per unit length against shield and ground wire)
- Capacitances of motors (winding capacitance against housing)

The leakage capacitance consists of the values of power cable and motor of all individual drives operated at the mains filter.

Calculation:

$$C_{ab\_g} = C_{ab\_Mg} + C_{ab\_Kg}$$

- $C_{ab\_g}$**  Total value of leakage capacitance  
 **$C_{ab\_Mg}$**  Total value of leakage capacitance of motor  
 **$C_{ab\_Kg}$**  Total value of leakage capacitance of cable

Fig. 11-2: Total Leakage Capacitance

The total capacitance  $C_{ab\_Mg}$  results from the sum of capacitances of the individual motors. For these individual capacitances, see documentation of the motor. For a list of selected values, see Appendix of this documentation under [chapter 11.3 "Leakage Capacitances" on page 326](#).

$$C_{ab\_Mg} = C_{ab(Motor\_1)} + C_{ab(Motor\_2)} \dots + C_{ab(Motor\_n)}$$

- $C_{ab(motor)}$**  Leakage capacitance of a motor

Fig. 11-3: Total Leakage Capacitance of Motor

## Appendix

$$C_{ab\_Kg} = C_{Y\_K\ typ\ (K1)} \times l_{(K1)} + C_{Y\_K\ typ\ (K2)} \times l_{(K2)} \dots + C_{Y\_K\ typ\ (Kn)} \times l_{(Kn)}$$

$C_{Y\_K\ typ}$  Capacitance per unit length of cables

$C_{ab\_Kg}$  Total leakage capacitance of cables

Fig. 11-4: Total leakage capacitance of cables

The total capacitance  $C_{ab\_Kg}$  consists of the sum of capacitances of the individual power cables. For the individual capacitances per unit length, see the technical data of the power cables. For a list of selected values, see Appendix of this documentation under [chapter 11.3 "Leakage Capacitances" on page 326](#).

## 11.3 Leakage Capacitances

### 11.3.1 Leakage Capacitance of Motors

The data of the typical leakage capacitance refer to the total capacitance of the power connections U, V, W against the motor housing. The tables below contain excerpts from the technical data of motors:

#### Leakage capacitance

| Type                          | Leakage capacitance of the component |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                               | $C_{ab}$<br>nF                       |
| MSM019A-0300-NN-__-__         | 0,3                                  |
| MSM019B-0300-NN-__-__         | 0,7                                  |
| MSM031B-0300-NN-__-__         | 0,7                                  |
| MSM031C-0300-NN-__-__         | 1,4                                  |
| MSM041B-0300-NN-__-__         | 1,3                                  |
| Last modification: 2008-11-20 |                                      |

Tab. 11-7: MSM019A-0300-NN, MSM019B-0300-NN

| Type                          | Leakage capacitance of the component |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                               | $C_{ab}$<br>nF                       |
| MSK030B-0900-NN-__-__-__      | 0,7                                  |
| MSK030C-0900-NN-__-__-__      | 1,3                                  |
| MSK040B-0450-NN-__-__-__      | 1,3                                  |
| MSK040C-0450-NN-__-__-__      | 2,0                                  |
| MSK043C-0600-NN-__-__-__      | 2,1                                  |
| Last modification: 2012-09-17 |                                      |



Appendix

| Type                           | Leakage capacitance of the component |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                                | C <sub>ab</sub><br>nF                |
| MSK050B-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,1                                  |
| MSK050C-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,6                                  |
| MSK060B-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,1                                  |
| MSK060C-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,1                                  |
| MSK061B-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 1,8                                  |
| MSK061C-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,4                                  |
| MSK070C-0150-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 3,8                                  |
| MSK070D-0150-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 5,0                                  |
| MSK070E-0150-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 6,3                                  |
| MSK071C-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 4,6                                  |
| MSK071D-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 6,9                                  |
| MSK071E-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 8,9                                  |
| MSK075C-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 3,8                                  |
| MSK075D-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 4,6                                  |
| MSK075E-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 5,8                                  |
| MSK076C-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 6,5                                  |
| MSK100A-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 4,8                                  |
| MSK100B-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 10,3                                 |
| MSK100C-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 12,8                                 |
| MSK100D-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 17,6                                 |
| Last modification: 2012-09-17  |                                      |

## Appendix

| Type                           | Leakage capacitance of the component |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                                | $C_{ab}$<br>nF                       |
| MSK101C-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 6,2                                  |
| MSK101D-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 13,2                                 |
| MSK101E-0200-FN-__-__-<br>____ | 15,2                                 |
| MSK103A-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 1,5                                  |
| MSK103B-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 2,1                                  |
| MSK103D-0300-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 6,0                                  |
| MSK131B-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 14,3                                 |
| MSK131D-0200-NN-__-__-<br>____ | 27,7                                 |
| Last modification: 2012-09-17  |                                      |

Tab. 11-8: MSK - Leakage Capacitance (Excerpt)

See also Rexroth IndraDyn - Technical Data.

## 11.3.2 Leakage Capacitance of Power Cables

The power cables (bulk cables) of the "RKL" line by Rexroth have the capacitances per unit length listed below. The values refer to the sum of the single capacitances of power cores 1, 2 and 3 against the overall shield.

See also Rexroth Connection Cables - Data Sheet Bulk Cables.

### Data Sheet Excerpt- Bulk Cables

| Type                          | Cross section of power core | Leakage capacitance   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
|                               | mm <sup>2</sup>             | $C_{Y_K,typ}$<br>nF/m |
| INK0653                       | 1,0                         | 0,6                   |
| INK0650                       | 1,5                         | 0,8                   |
| INK0602                       | 2,5                         | 0,7                   |
| INK0603                       | 4,0                         | 0,8                   |
| INK0604                       | 6,0                         | 0,8                   |
| INK0605                       | 10,0                        | 1,0                   |
| INK0606                       | 16,0                        | 1,2                   |
| INK0607                       | 25,0                        | 1,1                   |
| Last modification: 2007-11-08 |                             |                       |

| Type                          | Cross section of power core | Leakage capacitance          |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
|                               | mm <sup>2</sup>             | C <sub>Y_K.typ</sub><br>nF/m |
| INK0667                       | 35,0                        | 1,2                          |
| INK0668                       | 50,0                        | 1,3                          |
| Last modification: 2007-11-08 |                             |                              |

Tab. 11-9: INK - Technical Data (Excerpt)

#### Data Sheet Excerpt- Bulk Cables

| Type    | Cross section of power core | Leakage capacitance<br>C <sub>Y_K.typ</sub> |
|---------|-----------------------------|---|
|         | mm <sup>2</sup>             | nF/m  |
| REH0800 | 2,5                         | 0,2   |

Tab. 11-10: REH - Technical Data (Excerpt)



Approximate calculation is allowed with the following values:

- Cross section 1 ... 6 mm<sup>2</sup>: 1 nF/m
- Cross section 10 ... 50 mm<sup>2</sup>: 1.2 nF/m



# Index

## 0 ... 9

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 1Vpp                              |     |
| Encoder, 5 V supply voltage.....  | 186 |
| Encoder, 12 V supply voltage..... | 187 |
| 24V supply                        |     |
| Connection point.....             | 143 |
| Continuous power.....             | 73  |
| Installation.....                 | 73  |
| Peak current.....                 | 73  |
| Project planning.....             | 69  |

## A

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| Acceptance tests.....                            | 114    |
| Accessories                                      |        |
| Battery.....                                     | 261    |
| Battery box, SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERY-BOX.....        | 259    |
| Battery box, SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERY-BOX.....        | 266    |
| Cable, RKB0011.....                              | 279    |
| Cable, RKB0013.....                              | 280    |
| DC bus connector.....                            | 258    |
| HAS09.....                                       | 251    |
| Mounting and connection accessories (HAS09)..... | 251    |
| Overview.....                                    | 249    |
| Replacement battery.....                         | 261    |
| Snap-on ferrite, HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN.....         | 287    |
| SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY.....                      | 261    |
| X77, DC bus connector.....                       | 258    |
| Accumulators.....                                | 313    |
| Additional components.....                       | 290    |
| Overview.....                                    | 250    |
| Additional documentations.....                   | 25     |
| ADVANCED   |        |
| Control panel.....                               | 231    |
| HCS01.....                                       | 12, 43 |
| Ambient conditions.....                          | 54     |
| Analog input                                     |        |
| Connection point X38.....                        | 166    |
| Current, technical data.....                     | 227    |
| Shield connection.....                           | 157    |
| Analog inputs                                    |        |
| Connection point X32.....                        | 148    |
| Voltage, technical data.....                     | 226    |
| Analog output                                    |        |
| Connection point X38.....                        | 166    |
| Shield connection.....                           | 157    |
| Technical data.....                              | 228    |
| Appropriate use.....                             | 29     |
| Applications.....                                | 29     |
| Approvals.....                                   | 114    |
| Autotransformers.....                            | 290    |
| Axis coupling.....                               | 105    |

## B

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| BASIC  |          |
| HCS01.....   | 12, 43   |
| Batteries.....   | 313      |
| Battery  |          |
| Battery box.....   | 259, 266 |
| Buffer battery for absolute value encoder of an MSM motor..... | 270      |
| Refresh.....   | 263      |
| Replace.....   | 263      |
| Replacement battery.....                                       | 261      |
| SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY.....                                    | 261      |
| Bb relay contact   |          |
| Connection point X47.....                                      | 149      |
| Control circuit for the mains connection.....                  | 104      |
| DC bus coupling.....   | 112      |
| Technical data.....  | 229      |
| Braking resistor   |          |
| External, connection.....                                      | 141      |
| External, data.....  | 301      |
| HLR, data.....   | 301      |
| Integrated, connection.....                                    | 141      |
| Integrated, data.....  | 242      |
| Parameterization.....  | 141      |
| Brief description  |          |
| HCS01.....   | 41       |

## C

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| C-UL-US listing.....   | 114           |
| C-UR-US listing.....   | 115           |
| Cables   |               |
| Capacitance.....   | 328           |
| Documentation.....   | 25            |
| Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M0 (RKG0041)..... | 268           |
| Encoder cable for MSM motors with absolute value encoder M5 (RKG0065)..... | 278           |
| Encoder cables, selection table.....                                       | 54            |
| Leakage capacitance.....   | 328           |
| Motor power cables, allowed cable lengths... 53                            |               |
| Motor power cables, selection.....   | 53            |
| Overview.....  | 249           |
| RKB0011.....   | 145, 146, 279 |
| RKB0013.....   | 145, 146, 280 |
| RKB0051.....   | 168           |
| RKB0052.....   | 168           |
| RKG0033.....   | 181           |
| RKG0035.....   | 186           |
| RKG0036.....   | 185           |
| RKG0041.....   | 268           |
| RKG0062.....   | 181           |
| RKG0065.....   | 278           |
| RKG4200.....   | 183           |
| Shield connection.....   | 155           |
| Calculations   |               |

## Index

|   |          |  |     |
|---|----------|--|-----|
| Leakage capacitance.....                            | 325      | Digital inputs/outputs (X37).....          | 165 |
| Mains choke HNL.....                                | 102      | Electrical.....                            | 123 |
| Mains-side phase current.....                       | 85       | Encoder emulation (X8).....                | 159 |
| Phase current.....                                  | 85       | Equipment grounding conductor.....         | 127 |
| CANopen   |          | Ground.....                                | 158 |
| Bus length.....                                     | 215      | Mains.....                                 | 75  |
| Connection point X61.....                           | 170      | Mains (X3).....                            | 129 |
| Display elements.....                               | 215      | Module bus (X47).....                      | 149 |
| Main features.....                                  | 215      | Motor (X5).....                            | 134 |
| Network dimension.....                              | 215      | Motor encoder (X4).....                    | 132 |
| Capacitance   |          | Motor holding brake (X6).....              | 138 |
| Additional capacitance (DC bus capacitor unit)..... | 309      | Motor temperature monitoring (X6).....     | 138 |
| Motors.....   | 326      | Optional encoder (X8).....                 | 159 |
| Power cables.....                                   | 328      | Probe.....                                 | 147 |
| CC  |          | PROFIBUS (X30).....                        | 162 |
| sercos III master.....                              | 144      | Shield.....                                | 155 |
| CCC, China Compulsory Certification.....            | 115      | Shield connection, analog input.....       | 157 |
| CE label.....                                       | 114      | Shield connection, analog output.....      | 157 |
| Central supply.....                                 | 82       | Connection diagram.....                    | 123 |
| Certifications.....                                 | 114      | Connection points                          |     |
| Characteristic                                      |          | HCS01, overview.....                       | 124 |
| Fuses.....  | 93, 323  | On-board.....                              | 127 |
| China Compulsory Certification (CCC).....           | 115      | Optional.....                              | 159 |
| CN  |          | Contained substances                       |     |
| CANopen.....  | 170      | see "Significant components".....          | 313 |
| Combined encoder for SSI                            |          | Control cabinet                            |     |
| Encoder, 5 V supply voltage.....                    | 192      | Area A, free from interference.....        | 175 |
| Communication module                                |          | Area B, prone to interference.....         | 177 |
| CANopen - CN.....                                   | 170      | Area C, prone to interference.....         | 177 |
| Multi-Ethernet - ET.....                            | 144, 161 | Cooling.....                               | 56  |
| PROFIBUS PB, interface.....                         | 162      | Design.....                                | 56  |
| PROFIBUS PB, signal specification.....              | 214      | Interference areas.....                    | 173 |
| sercos III master.....                              | 144      | Control circuit                            |     |
| sercos III slave.....                               | 144      | For the mains connection.....              | 104 |
| Compatibility                                       |          | HCS01.....                                 | 104 |
| With foreign matters.....                           | 59       | Control lines                              |     |
| Components  |          | Cable, shield connection.....              | 156 |
| Combining.....                                      | 41       | Control panel                              |     |
| Mounting positions.....                             | 67       | ADVANCED control panel.....                | 231 |
| Supplied.....                                       | 107      | HAP01.....                                 | 20  |
| Supplying.....                                      | 107      | HAP01.1A.....                              | 231 |
| Condition as supplied.....                          | 117      | HAP01.1N.....                              | 230 |
| Conditions  |          | Standard control panel.....                | 230 |
| Ambient and operating conditions.....               | 54       | Type code.....                             | 20  |
| Configuration                                       |          | Type plate.....                            | 119 |
| Drive system.....                                   | 41       | Control voltage                            |     |
| Connection  |          | Connection point X13.....                  | 143 |
| 24V supply (X13).....                               | 143      | Continuous power.....                      | 73  |
| Analog input (X32).....                             | 148      | Data.....                                  | 232 |
| Analog inputs/outputs (X38).....                    | 166      | Determining the power requirements.....    | 69  |
| Bb relay contact (X47).....                         | 149      | For drive systems.....                     | 69  |
| Braking resistor (X9).....                          | 141      | HCS01.....                                 | 232 |
| Connection diagram.....                             | 123      | Installation.....                          | 73  |
| Connection points, overview.....                    | 124      | Loop-through contacts (X13).....           | 143 |
| Control voltage (X13).....                          | 143      | Looping through.....                       | 75  |
| DC bus (X77).....                                   | 151      | Peak current.....                          | 73  |
| Digital inputs, digital output (X31).....           | 147      | Project planning.....                      | 69  |
|   |          | Requirements on the power supply unit..... | 73  |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Supply with control voltage 24 V.....              | 69       |
| Cooling  |          |
| HCS01.....   | 64       |
| Corner-grounded delta mains.....                   | 81       |
| Coupling   |          |
| Axis coupling.....                                 | 105      |
| DC bus coupling.....                               | 105      |
| <b>D</b>   |          |
| DA   |          |
| Optional module, analog/digital I/O extension..... | 165, 166 |
| Data   |          |
| Ambient conditions.....                            | 54       |
| HCS01, braking resistor (external).....            | 301      |
| HCS01, braking resistor (integrated).....          | 242      |
| HCS01, control voltage.....                        | 232      |
| HCS01, cooling.....                                | 64       |
| HCS01, DC bus.....                                 | 240      |
| HCS01, dimensional drawings.....                   | 59       |
| HCS01, dimensions.....                             | 59       |
| HCS01, distances.....                              | 64       |
| HCS01, housing dimensions.....                     | 63       |
| HCS01, insulation.....                             | 63       |
| HCS01, inverter.....                               | 243      |
| HCS01, mains voltage.....                          | 233      |
| HCS01, mass.....                                   | 63       |
| HCS01, power dissipation.....                      | 64       |
| HCS01, temperatures.....                           | 64       |
| HCS01, UL ratings.....                             | 58       |
| Operating conditions.....                          | 54       |
| DC bus   |          |
| Connection point X77.....                          | 151      |
| Connector, accessories.....                        | 258      |
| Coupling.....                                      | 105      |
| Coupling, DC bus capacitor unit.....               | 111      |
| Data, HCS01.....                                   | 240      |
| DC bus capacitor unit, HLC.....                    | 309      |
| Group.....   | 105      |
| Declaration of conformity.....                     | 114      |
| Design   |          |
| HCS01.....   | 41       |
| Devices  |          |
| Mounting positions.....                            | 67       |
| Supplied.....                                      | 107      |
| Supplying.....                                     | 107      |
| Digital inputs                                     |          |
| Connection point X31.....                          | 147      |
| Connection point X37.....                          | 165      |
| Probe.....   | 147      |
| Technical data, safety technology L options        | 220      |
| Technical data, safety technology S options        | 221      |
| Technical data, type A (standard input).....       | 218      |
| Technical data, type B (probe).....                | 219      |
| Digital outputs                                    |          |
| Connection point X31.....                          | 147      |
| Connection point X37.....                          | 165      |

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| Technical data, safety technology L options | 223     |
| Technical data, safety technology S options | 224     |
| Technical data, standard output.....        | 222     |
| Dimensional drawing                         |         |
| HCS01.1E-W0003/5/6/8/9/13.....              | 60      |
| HCS01.1E-W0018/28.....                      | 61      |
| HCS01.1E-W0054.....                         | 62      |
| Dimensional drawings                        |         |
| HCS01.....                                  | 59      |
| Dimensioning                                |         |
| Line cross sections and fuses.....          | 87, 317 |
| Dimensions                                  |         |
| HCS01.1E-W0003/5/6/8/9/13.....              | 60      |
| HCS01.1E-W0018/28.....                      | 61      |
| HCS01.1E-W0054.....                         | 62      |
| Display elements                            |         |
| Multi-Ethernet, LEDs.....                   | 207     |
| Disposal.....                               | 313     |
| Distances                                   |         |
| HCS01.....                                  | 64      |
| Documentation                               |         |
| Additional documentations.....              | 25      |
| Cables.....                                 | 25      |
| Changes.....                                | 22      |
| Drive systems.....                          | 25      |
| Editions.....                               | 22      |
| Firmware.....                               | 26      |
| Motors.....                                 | 25      |
| Overview.....                               | 25      |
| Purpose.....                                | 22      |
| Reference documentations.....               | 25      |
| System components.....                      | 25      |
| Drive range                                 |         |
| Rexroth IndraDrive Cs.....                  | 9       |
| Drive system.....                           | 31      |
| Configuring.....                            | 41      |
| System structure.....                       | 16      |
| DST   |         |
| Autotransformers.....                       | 290     |
| <b>E</b>                                    |         |
| EC  |         |
| Standard encoder evaluation.....            | 181     |
| ECONOMY                                     |         |
| HCS01.....                                  | 12, 43  |
| Editions                                    |         |
| Documentation.....                          | 22      |
| Electric drive system.....                  | 31      |
| Electrical connection.....                  | 123     |
| Electrical project planning.....            | 68      |
| EM  |         |
| Encoder emulation.....                      | 159     |
| Encoder emulation, data.....                | 203     |
| EMC   |         |
| Limit value classes.....                    | 99      |
| Measures for design and installation.....   | 171     |
| Encoder                                     |         |

## Index

|   |              |                                  |         |
|---|--------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| 1Vpp, 5 V supply voltage.....   | 186          | Assigned HCS01 device types..... | 44      |
| 1Vpp, 12 V supply voltage.....  | 187          | Documentation.....               | 26      |
| 5 V power supply.....   | 195          | MPB-16VRS.....                   | 44      |
| 12 V power supply.....  | 195          | MPB-17VRS.....                   | 44      |
| Cable length.....   | 197          | MPB-18VRS.....                   | 44      |
| Combined encoder for SSI, 5 V supply<br>voltage.....                            | 192          | MPC-17VRS.....                   | 44      |
| Connection, X4.....   | 132          | MPC-18VRS.....                   | 44      |
| Connection, X8, encoder emulation.....  | 159          | MPE-16VRS.....                   | 44      |
| EC, standard encoder evaluation.....  | 181          | MPE-17VRS.....                   | 44      |
| Emulated encoder systems.....   | 159          | MPE-18VRS.....                   | 44      |
| EnDat 2.1, 5 V supply voltage.....  | 185          | Type plate.....                  | 119     |
| HIPERFACE®, 12 V supply voltage.....  | 184          | Types.....                       | 44      |
| Input circuit, resolver.....  | 199          | Variants.....                    | 46      |
| Input circuit, sine signals.....  | 199          | Foreign matters                  |         |
| Input circuit, square-wave signals.....   | 199          | Compatibility.....               | 59      |
| MSK/QSK encoder interface.....  | 183          | Functional equipment             |         |
| MSM, 5V supply voltage.....   | 181          | HCS01.....                       | 12, 43  |
| Optional, X8.....   | 159          | Functional features              |         |
| Power supply.....   | 195          | HCS01.....                       | 11      |
| Resolver encoder system without encod-<br>er data memory.....                   | 193          | Fuses                            |         |
| Resolver power supply.....  | 195          | Characteristic.....              | 93, 323 |
| RGS0001/K01, D-Sub connector for en-<br>coder cable and battery connection..... | 274          | Circuit breaker.....             | 93, 323 |
| Signal assignment to actual position value..                                    | 201          | Design.....                      | 93, 323 |
| SSI, 5 V supply voltage.....  | 190          | Dimensioning.....                | 87, 317 |
| SSI, 12 V supply voltage.....   | 191          | <b>G</b>                         |         |
| Standard encoder evaluation EC.....   | 181          | G1, G2, G3, G4, G5               |         |
| Supported encoder systems.....  | 15, 132, 181 | Mounting positions.....          | 67      |
| TTL, 5 V supply voltage.....  | 188          | Ground                           |         |
| TTL, 12 V supply voltage.....   | 189          | Connection.....                  | 158     |
| Encoder cable length.....   | 197          | Ground connection.....           | 158     |
| Encoder emulation   |              | Ground connections.....          | 178     |
| EM.....   | 159          | Group supply.....                | 83      |
| EM, data.....   | 203          | <b>H</b>                         |         |
| EnDat 2.1   |              | H4, H5                           |         |
| Encoder, 5 V supply voltage.....  | 185          | LED (CANopen).....               | 215     |
| Engineering interface   |              | H10, H11, H12, H13               |         |
| X26.....  | 146          | LEDs.....                        | 207     |
| Environmental protection.....   | 313          | H22                              |         |
| Equipment grounding conductor   |              | LED.....                         | 207     |
| Connection.....   | 127          | H24                              |         |
| ET  |              | LED.....                         | 207     |
| Multi-Ethernet, connection point.....   | 144          | H25, H26                         |         |
| Multi-Ethernet, LEDs.....   | 207          | LED (Safe Motion).....           | 216     |
| EtherCAT  |              | Hall sensor adapter box          |         |
| Multi-Ethernet, interface.....  | 144          | SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN.....           | 281     |
| External braking resistor   |              | Hall sensor box                  |         |
| Data.....   | 301          | SHL02.1.....                     | 194     |
| External wiring.....  | 93, 323      | HAP01                            |         |
| <b>F</b>  |              | Control panel.....               | 20      |
| Field wiring.....   | 93, 323      | HAP01.1A                         |         |
| File numbers  |              | Control panel.....               | 231     |
| UL.....   | 114          | HAP01.1N                         |         |
| Firmware  |              | Control panel.....               | 230     |
|   |              | HAS05.1-                         |         |
|   |              | 015, snap-on ferrite.....        | 287     |



|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| HAS09   |                           |
| Accessories (for mounting and installation).              | 251                       |
| Hazardous substances                                      | 313                       |
| HCS01   |                           |
| ADVANCED  | 12, 43                    |
| BASIC   | 12, 43                    |
| Block diagram   | 41                        |
| Braking resistor (external), data                         | 301                       |
| Braking resistor (integrated), data                       | 242                       |
| Brief description   | 41                        |
| Combination with MSM                                      | 47                        |
| Connection points, overview                               | 124                       |
| Control voltage, data                                     | 232                       |
| DC bus, data  | 240                       |
| Design (block diagram)                                    | 41                        |
| Dimensional drawings                                      | 59                        |
| Dimensions  | 59                        |
| Distances   | 64                        |
| ECONOMY   | 12, 43                    |
| Emulated encoder systems                                  | 159                       |
| Firmware  | 44                        |
| Functional equipment                                      | 12, 43                    |
| Functional features                                       | 11                        |
| Housing dimensions  | 63                        |
| Insulation  | 63                        |
| Inverter, data  | 243                       |
| Mains voltage, data                                       | 233                       |
| Mass  | 63                        |
| Mounting in the control cabinet                           | 121                       |
| MSM, selection table                                      | 47                        |
| On-board connection points                                | 127                       |
| Optional connection points                                | 159                       |
| Performance features                                      | 13                        |
| Power dissipation   | 64                        |
| Scope of supply   | 119                       |
| Select appropriate converter                              | 41                        |
| Sound pressure level                                      | 63                        |
| Temperatures  | 64                        |
| Type code   | 17                        |
| UL ratings  | 58                        |
| HCS01 converter   | 9                         |
| Helpdesk  | 315                       |
| HIPERFACE®  | 184                       |
| HLC   |                           |
| DC bus capacitor unit                                     | 309                       |
| Type code   | 309                       |
| HLR   |                           |
| Braking resistor (external)                               | 301                       |
| Snap-on ferrite, HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN                       | 287                       |
| Type code   | 301                       |
| HNL   |                           |
| Type code   | 297                       |
| Type plate  | 298                       |
| HNL01.1E  | 299                       |
| Technical data  | 299                       |
| Hotline   | 315                       |
| Housing dimensions  |                           |
| HCS01   | 63                        |
| I   |                           |
| Identification  |                           |
| Of the components   | 118                       |
| Inappropriate use   | 30                        |
| Consequences, exclusion of liability                      | 29                        |
| Individual components                                     |                           |
| Combining   | 41                        |
| Individual supply   | 82                        |
| IndraDrive Cs   |                           |
| Overview  | 9                         |
| Target applications                                       | 10                        |
| Input   |                           |
| Analog, X32   | 148                       |
| Digital, X31  | 147                       |
| Probe   | 147                       |
| Installation  |                           |
| 24V supply  | 73                        |
| Connection points   | 123                       |
| Control voltage supply                                    | 73                        |
| Electrical connection                                     | 123                       |
| EMC measures  | 171                       |
| Ground connections  | 178                       |
| Signal lines  | 179                       |
| Installation conditions                                   | 54                        |
| Installation methods                                      | 95, 325                   |
| Installation type   |                           |
| B1  | 87, 93, 317, 323          |
| B2  | 88, 93, 318, 323          |
| E   | 89, 91, 93, 319, 321, 323 |
| NFPA  | 93, 323                   |
| UL508A  | 93, 323                   |
| Insulation  |                           |
| HCS01   | 63                        |
| Insulation resistance testing                             | 117                       |
| Integrated braking resistor                               |                           |
| Data  | 242                       |
| Interference suppression measures                         |                           |
| For relays, contactors, switches, chokes, inductive loads | 180                       |
| Internal wiring   | 93, 323                   |
| Inverter, data  |                           |
| HCS01   | 243                       |
| IT mains type   | 79                        |
| L   |                           |
| L+, L-  |                           |
| DC bus  | 151                       |
| L3  |                           |
| Safe Torque Off   | 169                       |
| L4  |                           |
| Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control                       | 169                       |
| Leakage capacitance                                       |                           |
| Calculations  | 325                       |
| Determining   | 325                       |
| Motors  | 326                       |
| Power cables  | 328                       |
| Leakage currents  |                           |

## Index

|   |         |  |     |
|---|---------|--|-----|
| Cause.....                                  | 76      | Other loads.....   | 176 |
| LED   |         | Mains transformer  |     |
| Diagnostic LED, EtherCAT.....               | 211     | Dimensioning.....  | 95  |
| Diagnostic LED, EtherNet/IP.....            | 210     | Selecting.....   | 95  |
| Diagnostic LED, PROFINET IO.....            | 213     | Mains types.....   | 78  |
| Diagnostic LED, sercos III.....             | 212     | Mains voltage  |     |
| H4, H5 (CANopen).....                       | 215     | HCS01.....   | 233 |
| H10, H11, H12, H13.....                     | 207     | Mains-side phase current                                 |     |
| H22.....                                    | 207     | Calculating.....   | 85  |
| H24.....                                    | 207     | Mass   |     |
| H25, H26 (Safe Motion).....                 | 216     | HCS01.....   | 63  |
| NET ST.....                                 | 207     | Mechanical project planning.....                         | 59  |
| Port LED, EtherCAT.....                     | 208     | microSD memory card                                      |     |
| Port LED, EtherNet/IP.....                  | 208     | ADVANCED control panel.....                              | 231 |
| Port LED, PROFINET IO.....                  | 209     | PFM04.1.....   | 119 |
| Port LED, sercos III.....                   | 208     | Module bus   |     |
| Limit value classes                         |         | Connection point X47.....                                | 149 |
| EMC (table).....                            | 99      | Parameterization.....                                    | 112 |
| Line  |         | Motor  |     |
| Correction factor.....                      | 94, 324 | Cable lengths.....                                       | 53  |
| Cross sections, dimensioning.....           | 87, 317 | Cable, shield connection.....                            | 155 |
| Fuses, dimensioning.....                    | 87, 317 | Capacitance.....   | 326 |
| Listing                                     |         | Connection (X5).....                                     | 134 |
| C-UL-US.....                                | 114     | Connection motor encoder (X4).....                       | 132 |
| C-UR-US.....                                | 115     | Connection motor holding brake (X6).....                 | 138 |
| <b>M</b>                                    |         | Connection motor temperature monitor-<br>ing (X6).....   | 138 |
| Mains                                       |         | Documentation.....                                       | 25  |
| With grounded outer conductor.....          | 81      | Leakage capacitance.....                                 | 326 |
| Mains choke                                 |         | Motor holding brake.....                                 | 138 |
| Combining with mains filter.....            | 103     | Motor output (X5).....                                   | 134 |
| Determining.....                            | 102     | Motor temperature monitoring.....                        | 138 |
| Feeding.....                                | 299     | MSM, supported MSM motors.....                           | 47  |
| HNL01.1E.....                               | 299     | Supported motors.....                                    | 47  |
| Selection.....                              | 102     | Third-party motors.....                                  | 48  |
| Types.....                                  | 297     | Motor fan  |     |
| Mains connection                            |         | Mains filter.....  | 176 |
| Central supply.....                         | 82      | Mounting   |     |
| Circuit.....                                | 104     | HCS01 in the control cabinet.....                        | 121 |
| Control circuit.....                        | 104     | Mounting positions                                       |     |
| Group supply.....                           | 83      | Definitions.....   | 67  |
| Individual supply.....                      | 82      | MPB-16VRS.....   | 44  |
| Mains current.....                          | 85      | MPB-17VRS.....   | 44  |
| Parallel operation.....                     | 84      | MPB-18VRS.....   | 44  |
| Power.....                                  | 85      | MPC-17VRS.....   | 44  |
| Project planning.....                       | 75      | MPC-18VRS.....   | 44  |
| Transformer, mains filter, mains choke..... | 103     | MPE-16VRS.....   | 44  |
| Types.....                                  | 81      | MPE-17VRS.....   | 44  |
| X3.....                                     | 129     | MPE-18VRS.....   | 44  |
| Mains contactor                             |         | MSK/QSK encoder interface                                |     |
| Dimensioning.....                           | 102     | For S1/M1, S2/M2, S3/M3, S5/M5 encod-<br>er systems..... | 183 |
| Mains current.....                          | 85      | MSM  |     |
| Mains filter                                |         | Combination with HCS01.....                              | 47  |
| Combining with mains choke.....             | 103     | Encoder, 5V supply voltage.....                          | 181 |
| Dimensioning.....                           | 95      | Multi-Ethernet   |     |
| Motor fan.....                              | 176     | Display elements (LEDs).....                             | 207 |
| NFD, NFE.....                               | 292     | ET.....  | 144 |

|  |          |   |          |
|--|----------|---|----------|
| Optional.....                                | 161      | Calculating.....                                | 85       |
| X24 P2, X25 P1.....                          | 144      | Port LED  |          |
| <b>N</b>                                     |          | Displays.....                                   | 208      |
| NET ST                                       |          | Probe   |          |
| LED.....                                     | 207      | Technical data.....                             | 219      |
| NFD  |          | Probe input (X31).....                          | 147      |
| Data, electrical.....                        | 295      | Production processes.....                       | 313      |
| Data, mechanical.....                        | 293      | PROFIBUS  |          |
| Mains filter.....                            | 292      | Interface.....                                  | 162      |
| NFE  |          | Signal specification.....                       | 214      |
| Data, electrical.....                        | 295      | PROFINET  |          |
| Data, mechanical.....                        | 293      | Multi-Ethernet, interface.....                  | 144      |
| Mains filter.....                            | 292      | Project planning                                |          |
| <b>O</b>                                     |          | Electrical project planning.....                | 68       |
| On-board connection points                   |          | Mechanical project planning.....                | 59       |
| HCS01.....                                   | 127      | Protective extra-low voltage.....               | 35       |
| Operating conditions.....                    | 54       | <b>R</b>  |          |
| Operation at partial load.....               | 85       | RCCB.....                                       | 75       |
| Optional connection points.....              | 159      | RCD.....  | 75       |
| Optional encoder                             |          | Recycling.....                                  | 313      |
| X8.....                                      | 159      | Reference documentations.....                   | 25       |
| Optional module                              |          | Refresh   |          |
| CN, CANopen.....                             | 170      | Battery (SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY).....           | 263      |
| DA, analog/digital I/O extension.....        | 165, 166 | Relay contact                                   |          |
| EC, standard encoder evaluation.....         | 181      | Connection point X47.....                       | 149      |
| EM, encoder emulation.....                   | 159      | Control circuit for the mains connection.....   | 104      |
| ET, Multi-Ethernet.....                      | 161      | Technical data.....                             | 229      |
| L3, Safe Torque Off.....                     | 169      | Type 2.....                                     | 229      |
| L4, Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control..... | 169      | Residual-current-operated circuit breakers..... | 75       |
| PB, PROFIBUS, interface.....                 | 162      | Resolver  |          |
| PB, PROFIBUS, signal specification.....      | 214      | Encoder system without encoder data             |          |
| S, standard control panel.....               | 230      | memory.....                                     | 193      |
| S4, Safe Motion.....                         | 167      | Encoder, input circuit.....                     | 199      |
| Output, digital                              |          | Return of products.....                         | 313      |
| X31.....                                     | 147      | Rexroth IndraDrive Cs                           |          |
| Overall connection diagram.....              | 123      | Drive range.....                                | 9        |
| Overview                                     |          | Overview.....                                   | 9        |
| Accessories.....                             | 249      | System presentation.....                        | 9        |
| Additional components.....                   | 250      | Target applications.....                        | 10       |
| Cables.....                                  | 249      | <b>RGS0001/K01</b>                              |          |
| <b>P</b>                                     |          | D-Sub connector for encoder cable and           |          |
| P1, P2                                       |          | battery connection.....                         | 274      |
| Communication.....                           | 144      | RKB0011.....                                    | 145, 146 |
| Packaging.....                               | 313      | Cables.....                                     | 279      |
| Parallel operation.....                      | 84       | RKB0013.....                                    | 145, 146 |
| PB   |          | Cables.....                                     | 280      |
| Optional module, interface.....              | 162      | RKB0051.....                                    | 168      |
| Optional module, signal specification.....   | 214      | RKB0052.....                                    | 168      |
| PELV.....                                    | 35       | RKG0033.....                                    | 181, 260 |
| Performance features                         |          | RKG0034.....                                    | 260      |
| HCS01.....                                   | 13       | RKG0035.....                                    | 186      |
| PFM04.1                                      |          | RKG0036.....                                    | 185      |
| microSD memory card.....                     | 119      | RKG0041   |          |
| Phase current                                |          | Encoder cable for MSM motors with ab-           |          |
|  |          | solute value encoder M0.....                    | 268      |
|  |          | RKG0062.....                                    | 181, 267 |

## Index

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| RKG0063.....  | 267 |
| RKG0065   |     |
| Encoder cable for MSM motors with ab-<br>solute value encoder M5..... | 278 |
| RKG4200.....  | 183 |
| RLS0778/K06   |     |
| DC bus connector.....   | 258 |
| <b>S</b>  |     |
| S   |     |
| Optional module, standard control panel.....                          | 230 |
| S4  |     |
| Safe Motion.....  | 167 |
| Safe Brake Control  |     |
| X49.....  | 169 |
| Safe Motion   |     |
| LEDs (H25, H26).....  | 216 |
| S4.....   | 167 |
| X41.....  | 167 |
| Safe Motion Bus   |     |
| LEDs (H25, H26).....  | 216 |
| Safe Torque Off   |     |
| L3.....   | 169 |
| X49.....  | 169 |
| Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control                                   |     |
| L4.....   | 169 |
| Safety instructions for electric drives and<br>controls.....          | 31  |
| Safety technology   |     |
| L3 (Safe Torque Off).....   | 169 |
| L4 (Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control)....                          | 169 |
| S4 (Safe Motion).....   | 167 |
| Scope of supply   |     |
| HCS01.....  | 119 |
| sercos III  |     |
| Optional.....   | 161 |
| sercos III master   |     |
| CC.....   | 144 |
| sercos III slave  |     |
| S3.....   | 144 |
| Service hotline.....  | 315 |
| Shield  |     |
| Connection.....   | 155 |
| Control lines.....  | 156 |
| Motor cable.....  | 155 |
| Shield connection   |     |
| Analog input.....   | 157 |
| Analog output.....  | 157 |
| SHL02.1   |     |
| Hall sensor box.....  | 194 |
| SHL03.1-NNN-S-NNN   |     |
| Hall sensor adapter box.....  | 281 |
| Signal lines  |     |
| Installation.....   | 179 |
| Significant components.....   | 313 |
| Sine signals  |     |
| Encoder, input circuit.....   | 199 |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Snap-on ferrite                     |     |
| HAS05.1-015-NNN-NN.....             | 287 |
| Sound pressure level                |     |
| HCS01.....                          | 63  |
| Square-wave signals                 |     |
| Encoder, input circuit.....         | 199 |
| SSI                                 |     |
| Encoder, 5 V supply voltage.....    | 190 |
| Encoder, 12 V supply voltage.....   | 191 |
| Standard control panel.....         | 230 |
| Standard encoder evaluation EC..... | 181 |
| Standard motors                     |     |
| Voltage load.....                   | 247 |
| State-of-the-art.....               | 29  |
| Storing                             |     |
| Components.....                     | 120 |
| SUP-E01-MSM-BATTERYBOX              |     |
| Battery box.....                    | 259 |
| SUP-E02-MSM-BATTERYBOX              |     |
| Battery box.....                    | 266 |
| SUP-E03-DKC*CS-BATTERY.....         | 261 |
| Supplied components.....            | 107 |
| Supplied devices.....               | 107 |
| Supply                              |     |
| With control voltage 24 V.....      | 69  |
| with mains voltage.....             | 75  |
| Supplying components.....           | 107 |
| Supplying devices.....              | 107 |
| Support.....                        | 315 |
| System structure.....               | 16  |

**T**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Target applications                            |     |
| IndraDrive Cs.....                             | 10  |
| Technical data                                 |     |
| Analog input, current.....                     | 227 |
| Analog inputs, voltage.....                    | 226 |
| Analog output.....                             | 228 |
| Digital inputs, safety technology L options... | 220 |
| Digital inputs, safety technology S options..  | 221 |
| Digital inputs, type A (standard input).....   | 218 |
| Digital inputs, type B (probe).....            | 219 |
| Digital outputs, safety technology L options.  | 223 |
| Digital outputs, safety technology S options   | 224 |
| Digital outputs, standard output.....          | 222 |
| HCS01, power section.....                      | 232 |
| Relay contact.....                             | 229 |
| See also index entry Data.....                 | 181 |
| Testing  |     |
| Customer-side.....                             | 117 |
| Factory-side.....                              | 117 |
| Insulation resistance.....                     | 117 |
| Voltage testing.....                           | 117 |
| Third-party motors                             |     |
| At drive controllers.....                      | 48  |
| TN-C mains type.....                           | 79  |
| TN-S mains type.....                           | 78  |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Transformers.....  | 290      |
| Transporting   |          |
| Components.....  | 120      |
| TT system.....   | 80       |
| TTL  |          |
| Encoder, 5 V supply voltage.....                             | 188      |
| Encoder, 12 V supply voltage.....                            | 189      |
| Type code  |          |
| HAP01.....   | 20       |
| HCS01.....   | 17       |
| HLC.....   | 309      |
| HLR.....   | 301      |
| HNL.....   | 297      |
| Type plate   |          |
| Arrangement at the device.....                               | 118      |
| Control panel.....   | 119      |
| Device.....  | 118      |
| Firmware.....  | 119      |
| HNL.....   | 298      |
| <b>U</b>   |          |
| UL   |          |
| File numbers.....  | 114      |
| Listing.....   | 114, 115 |
| Ratings, HCS01.....  | 58       |
| Ungrounded mains.....  | 79       |
| Use  |          |
| Appropriate use.....   | 29       |
| Inappropriate use.....                                       | 30       |
| <b>V</b>   |          |
| Voltage testing.....   | 117      |
| <b>X</b>   |          |
| X3   |          |
| Mains connection.....  | 129      |
| X4   |          |
| Motor encoder.....   | 132      |
| X5   |          |
| Motor output.....  | 134      |
| X6   |          |
| Motor temperature monitoring and motor<br>holding brake..... | 138      |
| X8   |          |
| Encoder emulation.....                                       | 159      |
| Optional encoder.....  | 159      |
| X9   |          |
| Braking resistor.....  | 141      |
| X13  |          |
| Control voltage (24 V).....                                  | 143      |
| X22 P2, X23 P1   |          |
| Multi-Ethernet.....  | 161      |
| X24 P2, X25 P1   |          |
| Communication.....   | 144      |
| X26  |          |
| Engineering interface.....                                   | 146      |
| X30  |          |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| PROFIBUS PB.....   | 162 |
| X31  |     |
| Digital inputs, digital output.....                            | 147 |
| X32  |     |
| Analog input.....  | 148 |
| X37  |     |
| Digital inputs/outputs.....                                    | 165 |
| X38  |     |
| Analog inputs/outputs.....                                     | 166 |
| X41  |     |
| Optional safety technology Safe Motion.....                    | 167 |
| X42, X43   |     |
| Optional safety technology Safe Motion<br>(communication)..... | 168 |
| X47  |     |
| Bb relay contact, module bus.....                              | 149 |
| X49  |     |
| Safe Torque Off, Safe Brake Control.....                       | 169 |
| X61  |     |
| CANopen.....   | 170 |
| X77  |     |
| DC bus connection.....   | 151 |
| DC bus connector.....  | 258 |

## Notes

## Notes

**Bosch Rexroth AG**

Electric Drives and Controls

P.O. Box 13 57

97803 Lohr, Germany

Bgm.-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2

97816 Lohr, Germany

Phone +49 9352 18 0

Fax +49 9352 18 8400

[www.boschrexroth.com/electrics](http://www.boschrexroth.com/electrics)



R911322210